



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

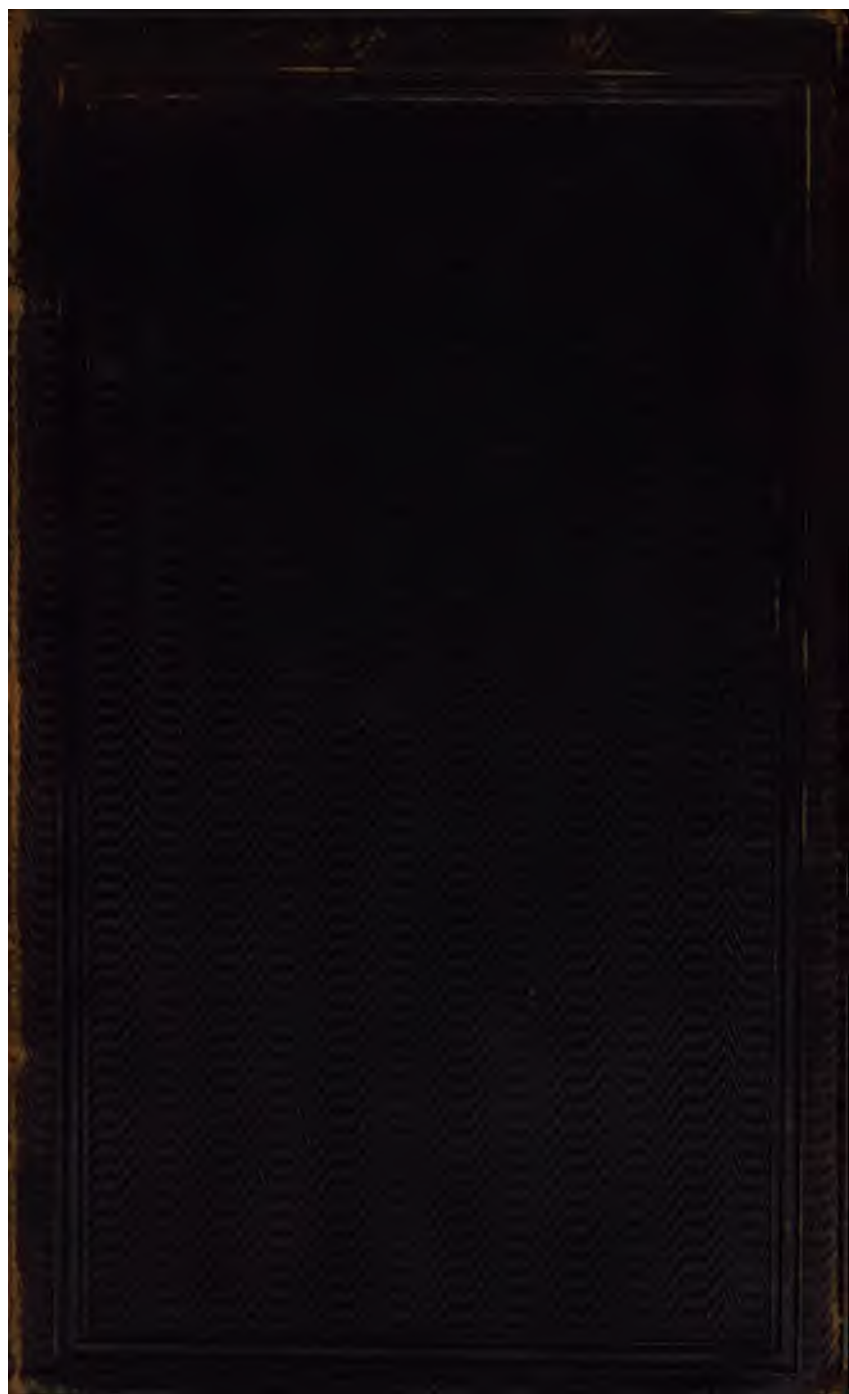
Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>



APPROVED ELEMENTARY SCHOOL-BOOKS.

I.

THE Rev. J. W. COLENSO's ARITHMETIC, designed for the use of Schools. Fcp. 8vo. 4s. 6d.—KEY, 6s.

II.

MR. THOMAS TATE's (of Battersea) TREATISE on the FIRST PRINCIPLES of ARITHMETIC. 12mo. 1s. 6d.

III.

MR. R. HILEY's ARITHMETICAL COMPANION: intended to perfect the Pupil by Miscellaneous Examples. 18mo. 1s. 6d.—KEY, 1s. 6d.

IV.

THE Rev. J. HUNTER's EXERCISES in the First FOUR RULES of ARITHMETIC. 12mo. price 6d.

V.

DR. J. THOMSON'S ELEMENTARY TREATISE on ALGEBRA, Theoretical and Practical. 12mo. 5s.—KEY, 4/6.

VI.

PROFESSOR YOUNG's ELEMENTARY TREATISE on ALGEBRA, Theoretical and Practical. 12mo. 6s.—KEY, by SPILLER, 6s.

VII.

ALGEBRA MADE EASY. By THOMAS TATE, Mathematical Master of the National Society's Training College, Battersea. 12mo. 2s.

VIII.

MR. TATE's PRINCIPLES of the DIFFERENTIAL and INTEGRAL CALCULUS simplified and applied. 12mo. 4s. 6d.

IX.

MR. TATE's PRINCIPLES of GEOMETRY, MEASURATION, LAND-SURVEYING, and LEVELLING. With 317 Woodcuts. 12mo. 3s. 6d.

X.

MR. TATE's EXERCISES on MECHANICS and NATURAL PHILOSOPHY; or, an Easy Introduction to Engineering. 12mo. with Woodcuts, 2s

LONDON: LONGMAN, BROWN, GREEN, AND LONGMANS.





600094040N

A
GRAMMAR
OF
THE FRENCH TONGUE.

Prepared by Authority,
FOR THE USE OF THE SENIOR AND JUNIOR DEPARTMENTS
OF
THE ROYAL MILITARY COLLEGE
AT SANDHURST.

BY G. CAMBIER,
BACHELOR OF ARTS IN THE UNIVERSITY OF FRANCE;
PROFESSOR OF FRENCH AT THE ROYAL MILITARY COLLEGE.

LONDON :
LONGMAN, BROWN, GREEN, AND LONGMANS.
1851.

303. C. 24.



LONDON:
SPOTTISWOODES and SHAW,
New-street-Square.

P R E F A C E.

It has been the object of the Author to make the following Grammar as compendious as possible.

With this view, no more exercises have been given than are judged necessary to teach the language grammatically to a pupil of moderate abilities and application.

If, through a deficiency in either of those qualities, the pupil should not appear thoroughly to understand the application of any particular rule, the instructor is requested to set him additional exercises in that rule, composed from memory by himself at the time, and to continue them steadily until he considers the learner may be safely permitted to proceed.

This method has the double advantage of preventing the pupil copying his work from a key, or from the exercises of another, and at the same time of enabling the instructor to adapt his exercises to the peculiar capacity or especial deficiency of each pupil.

The teacher is also earnestly requested to make use of the French language, as much as possible, in his instructions and explanations. It may seem difficult at first, but will daily become more easy, instructive, and agreeable.

It is, moreover, highly desirable, after a certain degree of progress has been made, that a small portion of nearly every study should be devoted to reading some good French author, or selection from his works, aloud ; translating, or not, as the teacher may deem to be most suitable for the class under instruction.

With the indispensable adjuncts of perseverance, good temper, and firmness, it is hoped that the instructor, by means of this Grammar, will be able to convey a knowledge of the French language in as short a time as is consistent with a thorough grounding in its true principles.

Royal Military College,
January 1. 1851.

CONTENTS.

PART I.

	PAGE
INTRODUCTION	1

OF THE PARTS OF SPEECH.

SECTION I.

CHAP. I. OF THE SUBSTANTIVE	3
Formation of the Plural	4
CHAP. II. OF THE ARTICLE	6
CHAP. III. OF THE ADJECTIVE	10
Of the Formation of the Feminine in Adjectives	11
Of the Formation of the Plural in Adjectives	15
Of Determinative Adjectives	17
Observation on Cardinal Numbers	17
Of Ordinal Numbers	18
Demonstrative Adjectives	20
Possessive Adjectives	21
Indefinite Adjectives	22
Of the Degrees of Signification of the Adjective	23
Agreement of the Adjective with the Substantive	28
CHAP. IV. OF THE PRONOUN	30
Personal Pronouns	30
Possessive Pronouns	33
Demonstrative Pronouns	34
Relative Pronouns	36
Absolute and Interrogative Pronouns	38
Indefinite Pronouns	39

SECTION II.

	PAGE
CHAP. V. OF THE VERB	43
Of the Subject	43
Of the Regimen	44
Of the different Sorts of Adjective Verbs	45
Of the Modifications of the Verb	46
Conjugation of the Auxiliary <i>Avoir</i>	49
Conjugation of the Auxiliary Verb <i>Etre</i>	59

§ I.

First Conjugation, in <i>er</i>	65
Observations on certain Verbs of the First Conjugation	71
Second Conjugation, in <i>ir</i>	73
Third Conjugation, in <i>oir</i>	77
Fourth Conjugation, in <i>re</i>	81

§ II.

Conjugation of the Passive Verbs	84
Conjugation of the Neuter Verbs	87
Conjugation of the Pronominal Verbs	91
Conjugation of the Impersonal Verbs	97
Conjugation of the Impersonal Verb <i>Y avoir</i>	99
Conjugation of the Impersonal Verb <i>Falloir</i>	100

§ III.

Of the irregular Verbs of the First Conjugation	102
Of the irregular Verbs of the Second Conjugation	105
Of the irregular Verbs of the Third Conjugation	113
Of the irregular Verbs of the Fourth Conjugation	118

SECTION III.

CHAP. VI. OF THE ADVERB	134
CHAP. VII. OF THE PREPOSITION	141
CHAP. VIII. OF THE CONJUNCTION	146
CHAP. IX. OF THE INTERJECTION	151

PART II.

SYNTAX.

SECTION I.

	PAGE
CHAP. I. OF THE SUBSTANTIVE	152
Of the Formation of the Plural of Compound Nouns	153
<i>De</i> and <i>à</i> between two Substantives	155
CHAP. II. OF THE ARTICLE	157
Nouns of Measure, Weight, &c.	158
Of the Definite Article, when used	159
When not to be used	161
The Partitive Article, <i>du, de la, de l', des</i>	164
CHAP. III. OF THE ADJECTIVE	165
Of the Qualificative Adjective	165
Adjectives of Dimension	166
Adjective and Article	167
Place of Adjectives	169
Regimen of Adjectives	172
Determinative Adjectives	174
Possessive Adjectives	176
Indefinite Adjectives	181
CHAP. IV. OF THE PRONOUN	186
Personal Pronouns	186
Pronoun <i>soi</i>	194
Pronoun <i>le</i>	197
Repetition of Personal Pronouns	198
Possessive Pronouns	201
Demonstrative Pronouns	202
<i>Ce qui, ce que, ce dont, ce à quoi</i>	204
<i>Celui de, celui que</i>	205
<i>Celui-ci, celui-là</i>	207
Relative Pronouns	208
<i>Que</i>	210
<i>Lequel, laquelle, lesquels, lesquelles</i>	211
<i>Quoi</i>	213
<i>Où, d'où, par où</i>	213
Absolute and Interrogative Pronouns	214
Indefinite Pronouns	216

SECTION II.

	PAGE
CHAP. V. OF THE VERB	226
Agreement of the Verb with the Subject	226
Collective Nouns	229
Place of the Subject with regard to the Verb	230
Government of the Verb	234
Use of the Auxiliary Verbs	236
Use of Moods and Tenses	238
Infinitive	238
Participle	240
Present Participle	241
Verbal Adjective	241
Past Participle	242
Agreement of the Past Participle with its Subject	243
Agreement of the Past Participle with its Regimen	245
On the Use of certain Participles	248
Indicative	253
Present	253
Imperfect	254
Past Definite	256
Past Indefinite	256
Past Anterior, and Pluperfect	258
Future Absolute and Anterior	259
Conditional Present and Past	261
Imperative	262
Subjunctive Present and Past	266
Imperfect and Pluperfect	268

SECTION III.

CHAP. VI. OF THE ADVERB	270
Use of the Negation	271
CHAP. VII. OF THE PREPOSITION	272
CHAP. VIII. OF THE CONJUNCTION	274
CHAP. IX. OF THE INTERJECTION	277
FREE EXERCISES	278

EXPLANATION

OF THE

ABBREVIATIONS USED IN THE EXERCISES.

m.	<i>stands for</i>	masculine.	
f.	"	feminine.	
s. or sing.	"	singular.	
pl.	"	plural.	
h m.	"	h mute.	
h asp.	"	h aspirated.	
pr.	"	preposition.	
art.	"	article.	
pron.	"	pronoun.	
inf. 1	"	infinitive present,	<i>as, aimer.</i>
inf. 2	"	past infinitive,	" avoir aimé.
inf. 3	"	present participle,	" aimant.
inf. 4	"	past participle,	" aimé.
ind. 1	"	present indicative,	" j'aime.
ind. 2	"	imperfect,	" j'aimais.
ind. 3	"	past definite,	" j'aimai.
ind. 4	"	past indefinite,	" j'ai aimé.
ind. 5	"	past anterior,	" j'eus aimé.
ind. 6	"	pluperfect,	" j'avais aimé.
ind. 7	"	future absolute,	" j'aimerai.
ind. 8	"	future anterior,	" j'aurai aimé.
cond. 1	"	conditional present,	" j'aimerais.
cond. 2	"	1st past conditional,	" j'aurais aimé.
cond. 3	"	2d past conditional,	" j'eusse aimé.
imper.	"	imperative,	" aime.
subj. 1	"	present subjunctive,	" que j'aime.
subj. 2	"	imperfect subjunctive,	" que j'aimasse.
subj. 3	"	past subjunctive,	" que j'aie aimé.
subj. 4	"	pluperfect subjunctive,	" que j'eusse aimé.

* in the Exercises denotes that the word under which it is placed is not expressed in French.

— denotes that the English word is spelt alike in French, at least the part under which this sign is placed.

= denotes that the French word differs from the English only by its termination.

In filling the Exercises, the order of the figures placed after the French words is to be observed.

In the Exercises, when several English words are included between a parenthesis, they must be translated only by the words placed under.

A
GRAMMAR
OF
THE FRENCH TONGUE.

PART I.

[Under First.]

INTRODUCTION.

FRENCH GRAMMAR is the art of speaking and writing that language correctly.

To speak and to write, words are employed.

Words are composed of letters.

There are two kinds of letters, vowels and consonants.

The vowels are, *a, e, i, o, u, y*. They are so called because, without the help of any other letter, they form a sound.

The sounds expressed by these vowels are not the only ones that exist in French. The alphabet not having particular characters to represent the other sounds, recourse has been had to certain combinations of letters; such are, *eu, ou, an, in, on, un*. Those combinations, though they have more than one letter, must be considered as so many vowels, since each of them represents a sound. *An, in, on, un*, are called nasal vowels, being pronounced through the nose.

The consonants are, *b, c, d, f, g, h, j, k, l, m, n, p, q, r, s, t, v, x, z*. They are so called because they cannot express a sound but by the help of vowels.

The vowels are either long or short.

The long vowels require more, the short vowels less, time in pronouncing, thus:—

<i>a</i> is long in	<i>pâte,</i>	dough,	and short in	<i>patte,</i>	paw.
<i>e</i> —	<i>bèche,</i>	spade,	—	<i>brèche,</i>	breach.
<i>i</i> —	<i>épître,</i>	epistle,	—	<i>petite,</i>	little.
<i>o</i> —	<i>hôte,</i>	host,	—	<i>mode,</i>	fashion.
<i>u</i> —	<i>flûte,</i>	flute,	—	<i>hutte,</i>	hut.
<i>eu</i> —	<i>jeûne,</i>	fast,	—	<i>jeune,</i>	young.
<i>ou</i> —	<i>croûte,</i>	crust,	—	<i>doute,</i>	doubt.

There are three kinds of *e*; the *e* mute, the *e* acute, and the *e* open.

The *e* mute, of which the sound is hardly heard, as in *me, de, livre, table*; and sometimes not at all, as in *je prie, paiement*.

The *e* closed, which is pronounced the mouth being almost closed, as in *aménité, rocher, nez*.

The *e* open, which is pronounced the mouth open, as in *succès, modèle, il appelle*.

The *y* is employed sometimes for two *ii*'s, and sometimes for one *i*; it is for that reason it is classed with the vowels. It is employed for two *ii*'s in the body of the word after a vowel: *pays, essuyer, moyen*. It is used for one *i* at the beginning and at the end of words: *yacht, dey*; and in the body of words after a consonant: *style, symétrie*.

The consonant *h* is either mute or aspirated; mute when it adds nothing to the pronunciation, as in *l'homme, l'histoire, l'humanité*, which are pronounced *l'omme, l'istoire, l'umanité*; aspirated when the vowel which follows it is pronounced with aspiration, that is, with the throat, *le hameau, la haine, les héros, mes hardes*.

One or several letters which are pronounced with a single emission of voice, form what is called a syllable; thus, *jour* has one syllable, *esprit* has two, and *vérité* three.

The syllables in which two vowels are distinctly heard by a single emission of the voice are called diphthongs; such are, *ia, ié, oi, ui*, etc.; *diacre, pied, loi, huile*.

OF THE PARTS OF SPEECH.

THERE are in French nine parts of speech, namely:

- | | | |
|-----------------|-------------|------------------|
| 1. Substantive, | 4. Pronoun. | 7. Preposition. |
| or noun. | 5. Verb. | 8. Conjunction. |
| 2. Article. | 6. Adverb. | 9. Interjection. |
| 3. Adjective. | | |
-

SECTION I.

CHAPTER I.

OF THE SUBSTANTIVE, OR NOUN.

THE substantive serves to name a person or thing; as, *ciel, enfant, arbre*.

There are two sorts of substantives, the proper substantive, and the common substantive.

The proper substantive is that which is applied to a particular person or thing; as, *Alexandre, Virgile, Paris, Vienne*.

The common substantive is that which belongs to a whole class of objects; as, *homme, livre, femme, brebis*.

Substantives have two properties, gender and number.

There are only two genders, the masculine and feminine.

The masculine represents the male kind, as *homme*, *lion*; and the feminine represents the female kind, as *femme*, *lionne*.

This distinction has been extended to all substantives; as, *un livre*, a book, is masculine; *une table*, a table, is feminine.

The French language does not admit of a neuter gender.

There are two numbers, the singular and the plural.

The singular expresses one single object, as *un homme*, *un livre*; the plural designates more objects than one, as *des hommes*, *des livres*.

Proper names have no plural; as, *Milton*, *Londres*, *Berlin*.

Formation of the Plural in Substantives.

GENERAL RULE.—The plural of substantives is formed by adding *an.s* to the singular.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
le roi,	<i>the king.</i>	les rois,	<i>the kings.</i>
la ville,	<i>the town.</i>	les villes,	<i>the towns.</i>
le moment,	<i>the moment.</i>	les moments,	<i>the moments.</i>
le verrou *,	<i>the bolt.</i>	les verrous,	<i>the bolts.</i>

Exceptions.

1. Substantives ending in the singular in *s*, *x*, *z*, do not change.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
le héros,	<i>the hero.</i>	les héros,	<i>the heroes.</i>
la voix,	<i>the voice.</i>	les voix,	<i>the voices.</i>
le nez,	<i>the nose.</i>	les nez,	<i>the noses.</i>

* Some substantives ending in *ou*, take *x* in their plural; as, *chou*, *caillon*, *bijou*, *genou*, *aisou*, *joujou*, *pou*.

2. Substantives ending in the singular in *au* and *eu* take an *s*.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
un jeu,	<i>a game.</i>	des jeux,	<i>games.</i>
un tableau,	<i>a picture.</i>	des tableaux,	<i>pictures.</i>

3. Substantives ending in *al*, or *ail*, change that termination into *aux*.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
l'animal,	<i>the animal.</i>	les animaux,	<i>animals.</i>
un cheval,	<i>a horse.</i>	les chevaux,	<i>horses.</i>
le travail*,	<i>work.</i>	les travaux,	<i>works.</i>

The following are irregular : —

ail,	<i>garlick.</i>	aux,	<i>heads of garlick.</i>
aieul,	<i>grandfather.</i>	ayeux,	<i>ancestors.</i>
ciel,	<i>heaven.</i>	cieux,	<i>heavens.</i>
œil,	<i>eye.</i>	yeux,	<i>eyes.</i>

EXERCISE.

The ship of the admiral; the bolt of the door; the ships of the
Le vaisseau de l' amiral le de la porte les des
 admirals; the fans of these ladies; the cross of the church; the
de ces la de l'
 helms of the ships; the horse of my father; the flowers of the gar-
des de mon
 dens; the palaces of the kings; the victories of the generals; the
les
 gods of the pagans; the corals of those seas; a nut; some nuts; a
ces une des un
 castle; some castles; a fire; fires; the presents of my parents; the
des un des mes
 horses of our stables; the playthings of our children; the bravery
de nos nos
 of our troops; the feathers of these birds; the works of those archi-
de nos ces ces

* Some substantives in *ail* follow the general rule and take *s*; such are, *attirail, détail, éventail, gouvernail, portail, sérail*, &c.

tects ; the heads of these nails ; the evils of this life ; the walnuts of
ces clou cette
 their orchards ; the woods of those countries.
leurs ces

CHAP. II.

OF THE ARTICLE.

THE article is a word placed before a noun to determine the extent of its signification. There is in French only one article, *le* before a noun masculine, *la* before a noun feminine, and *les* before plural nouns in both genders.

EXAMPLE.

Sing. le père, *the father.* la mère, *the mother.*
Plu. les fils, *the sons.* les filles, *the daughters.*

EXERCISE

The day and the night are equally necessary. The rose, the
m. et f. sont également nécessaires. f.
violet, the tulip, the narcissus, the ranunculus, are the delight of
f. f. m. f. sont délices f. pl. de
the sight. The king, the queen, and their children are arrived.
veu f. m. f. leurs enfant sont arrivés.
The sun, the moon, and the stars, are the glory of nature.
m. f. f. pl. sont f. art. f.

The article is subject to elision and contraction.

Elision of the article is the omitting of the *e* in *le*, of *a* in *la*, when these articles precede a noun beginning with a vowel or *h* mute.

EXAMPLE.

l'esprit are said instead of le esprit.
l'homme — le homme.
l'histoire — la histoire.

But in this case the place of the vowel suppressed is supplied by an apostrophe.

The elision of *e* occurs in many words; such as *le* (pronoun), *je*, *me*, *te*, *se*, *de*, *ce*, *ne*, *que*, and in the compounds of *que*, such as, *parceque*, *quoique*, *puisque*, etc.

The elision of *a*, besides the article, occurs in *la*, personal pronoun.

The elision of *i* occurs only in the conjunction *si*, if, before *il*, *ils*.

EXERCISE.

The soul; the friendship; the money; the history. Ho-
âme f. amitié f. argent m. histoire f. art.
 nesty, innocence, honour, and the love of virtue, are much
h m. art. art. h m. amour m. art. f. sont très
 esteemed. Summer, autumn, and winter are very
estimés. art. m. art. m. art. m. sont très
 changeable. The history of France is very interesting. Spain
variables. f. — est intéressante. art. Espagne
 is separated from France by the Pyrenees. The lustre of the stars.
est séparée de art. — par — pl. — m. étoiles pl.
 The harmony of nature.
f. h m. art. — f.

Contraction consists in the union of the articles *le*, *les*, with the prepositions *à*, *de*. Thus, instead of putting *de le* before a masculine singular beginning with a consonant or *h* aspirated, *du* must be used; instead of *à le*, *au* must be used; and before substantives plural in both genders, *de les* is changed into *des*, *à les* into *aux*. Thus:

du père is instead of de le père.	des pères is instead of de les pères.
au père — à le père.	aux pères — à les pères.
du héros — de le héros.	des mères — de les mères.
au héros — à le héros.	aux mères — à les mères.

EXERCISE.

The malice of the boys. Give the apple to the boy, and
 — f. *garçons pl. Donnez pomme f.*
 the orange to the girl. The moon is the cause of the eclipses of
 — f. *fille f. lune f. est — f. — pl.*

the sun. The admiral spoke to the king, to the queen, and to the
soleil m. parla m.
 princes. The rays of the sun, the warbling of birds, the
 — pl. *rayons pl. gazouillement m. art. pl.*
 murmuring of streams, the enamel of meadows, the coolness
 — re *art. ruisseau, émail m. art. prairie, fraîcheur f.*
 of woods, the fragrance of flowers, and the sweet smell of
art. bois parfum m. art. douce odeur f.
 plants, contribute greatly to the pleasure of the mind and
art. plante contribuent beaucoup
 to the health of the body.
santé f. corps m.

De and *à* are never contracted with *la* before a noun feminine singular beginning with a consonant.

De la reine, *of the queen.* A la reine, *to the queen.*

The contraction does not take place before any substantive singular beginning with a vowel or *h* mute.

EXAMPLES.

de l'esprit, <i>of the mind.</i>	de l'homme, <i>of man.</i>
à l'esprit, <i>to the mind.</i>	à l'honneur, <i>to honour.</i>
de l'âme, <i>of the soul.</i>	à l'histoire, <i>to the history.</i>

Contraction likewise does not take place when the adjective *tout* intervenes between *de* or *à* and the article.

EXAMPLES.

de tout le monde,	<i>of every body.</i>
de tous les hommes,	<i>of all men.</i>
de toutes les femmes,	<i>of all women.</i>
à toutes les maisons,	<i>to all houses.</i>

EXERCISE.

Education is to the mind what cleanliness is to the body.
art. — f. ce que art. propreté f.

Send that child to school. Revenge is the pleasure of a
Envoyez cet art. école f. art. Vengeance f. m.

weak mind. It is the will of the emperor. Italy is the
faible 2 esprit 1 C'est volonté f. — reur art. — lie

garden of Europe.* Prefer virtue to riches, friendship
 art. — f. *Préférez* art. f. art. *richesses* pl. art. *amitié*
 to money, and utility to pleasure. The history of man under
 art. *argent* art. — *té* art. art.
 all the circumstances of life is the study of the wise. Fire
toutes *circonstances* art. *vie* f. *étude* *sage* art. *Feu* m.
 of imagination, strength of mind, and firmness of soul,
 art. — f. art. *force* art. *esprit* m. art. *fermeté* f. art. *âme* f.
 are gifts of nature. More or less pain is the lot of
sont des dons art. — f. *Plus ou moins de peine* *partage* m.
 every body.
monde m.

The article, and the prepositions *à* and *de*, contracted or not, must be repeated before every substantive.

EXAMPLES.

La patience et la persévérance sont nécessaires. *Patience and perseverance are necessary.*

L'ignorance est la mère de l'erreur, de l'admiration, et des préventions de toute espèce. *Ignorance is the mother of error, admiration, and prejudices of every kind.*

EXERCISE.

I saw yesterday the king, queen, and princes. The desire of
Je vis hier art. art. art. *désir* m.
 glory, riches, power, and pleasure, is a disease of the mind.
 art. f. *pouvoir* m. *est une maladie* *âme*.
 Bring the knives and forks. The father, mother, and children
Apportez couteau fourchettes.
 are dead. White, red, and black, are three different colours.
sont morts art. *blanc rouge noir* *sont trois différentes* f.
 Peace and plenty make men happy. The plants of the
Paix f. *abondance* f. *rendent* art. *heureux.* *plante*
 gardens, the animals of the forests, the minerals of the earth,
jardin = = *terre* f.
 the meteors of the sky, must all concur to store the mind.
météores *ciel* *doivent tous concourir à enrichir*
 Salt, pepper, and mustard are on the tables.
art. sel m. *poivre* m. *moutarde* f. *sont sur* — pl.

Du, de la, de l', des, answering to the English participle some or any, expressed or understood, have been generally used.

EXAMPLES.

Je mange du pain,	<i>I eat bread.</i>
Prenez de la viande,	<i>Take some meat.</i>
Nous cueillons des pommes,	<i>We gather apples.</i>
Buvez du vin,	<i>Drink some wine.</i>
Ils vendent des fraises,	<i>They sell strawberries.</i>

EXERCISE.

Give us bread, meat, and water. Have you bought
Donnez nous pain m. pr. art. viande, pr. eau f. Avez vous acheté
 some paper, pens, and ink? I have given him
papier m. s. pr. art. plume pr. art. encre Je ai 2 donné 3 lui 1
 bread, money, and clothes. Buy tea and sugar. Bring
habits pl. Achetez thé m. sucre m. s. Apportez
 me some mustard. She has some pride. Offer him some meat.
moi moutarde f. s. Elle a orgueil m. Offrez lui
 Have you any sugar? Put some oil and vinegar to the
Avez vous sucre m. s. Mettez huile f. m. vinaigre m. sur
 salad. He has received some gold and silver. She has modesty
salade f. Il a reçu or m. argent m. Elle a = f.
 and prudence.
 — *f.*

Should the substantive be preceded by an adjective or an adverb of quantity, then *de* or *d'* alone is to be used.

EXAMPLES.

Give me some good bread,	<i>Donnez moi de bon pain.</i>
Give me much bread,	<i>Donnez moi beaucoup de pain.</i>

CHAP. III.

OF THE ADJECTIVE.

THE adjective expresses the quality of the substantive with which it is joined. There are two sorts of adjectives, the qualificative and the determinative.

Qualificative adjectives are added to the substantive to express its quality ; as, *bon, beau*.

Qualificative adjectives generally follow their respective substantives, and agree with them in gender and number.

Formation of the Feminine of French Adjectives.

RULE I. — All adjectives ending in the singular in *e* mute, do not change for the feminine.

EXAMPLES.

An amiable boy,	<i>Un garçon aimable.</i>
An amiable girl,	<i>Une fille aimable.</i>

RULE II. — When the adjective does not end in *e* mute, the *e* mute is added to form its feminine.

EXAMPLES.

M.	F.	
brutal,	brutale,	<i>brutal.</i>
prudent,	prudente,	<i>prudent.</i>
sensé,	sensée,	<i>sensible.</i>
instruit,	instruite,	<i>informed.</i>
poli,	polie,	<i>polite.</i>
tortu,	tortue,	<i>crooked.</i>

RULE III. — Adjectives ending in *el, eil, ien, on, et, as, os, ot, ais, ès, and ul*, form their feminine by doubling the last consonant and taking *e* mute.

EXAMPLES.

M.	F.	
cruel,	cruelle,	<i>cruel.</i>
pareil,	pareille,	<i>like.</i>
ancien,	ancienne,	<i>ancient.</i>
bon,	bonne,	<i>good.</i>
net,	nette,	<i>clean.</i>
gras,	grasse,	<i>fat.</i>
gros,	grosse,	<i>big.</i>
sot,	sotte,	<i>stupid.</i>
épais,	épaisse,	<i>thick.</i>
exprès,	expresse,	<i>express.</i>
nul,	nulle,	<i>none.</i>

RULE IV.—Adjectives ending in *f*, change this letter into *v*, and take *e* mute.

EXAMPLES.

M.	F.	
actif,	active,	<i>active.</i>
bref,	brève,	<i>short.</i>
naïf,	naïve,	<i>ingenuous.</i>
neuf,	neuve,	<i>new.</i>

RULE V.—Adjectives ending in *x*, change this letter into *s*, and take *e* mute.

EXAMPLES.

M.	F.	
généreux,	généreuse,	<i>generous.</i>
heureux;	heureuse,	<i>happy.</i>
jalous,	jalouse,	<i>jealous.</i>

EXERCISE.

A great garden. A great house. An attentive boy. A fat ox.
Un Une bœuf m.
 A good study. A cruel animal. The roads are dangerous.
étude f. — m. route f. pl. sont =
 A figurative sense. A constant resolution. An ambitious woman.
= 2 sens m. 1 — 2 — 1 = 2 1
 An elegant speech. A natural inclination. A good man. A good
— 2 discours m. 1 = 2 — f. 1
 woman. She is decent. This house is well situated. This story
Elle — Cette f. bien situé Cette histoire f.
 is very entertaining. The door is not open. The engagement
très amusant porte f. n'est pas ouvert action f.
 was warm. That man is very generous. His memory will be
fut vif. Cet très = Sa mémoire f. sera
 immortal. This street is too narrow. This road is not safe.
= tel Cette rue f. trop étroit Cette route f. n'est pas sûr
 It is an ancient custom. This room is dark. The grass
C'est = coutume f. Cette chambre f. obscur herbe f. h m.
 is very thick. This water is not clean. Your son is young and
Cette eau f. net Votre
 handsome. This book is new. My uncle is rich and generous.
beau Ce livre m. Mon
 The law is express upon that point. His conduct was brutal.
f. sur ce — m. Sa conduite f. fut —

His principal occupation. There is no truth in all that.
Sa ——— — f. Il n'y a nul vérité f. dans tout cela

Adjectives, or rather substantives, ending in *eur*, derived from verbs, generally change the *r* into *s*, and take *e* mute; some change *eur* into *rice*; in others *eur* is transformed into *ercesse*.

EXAMPLES.

M.	F.	
flatteur,	flatteuse,	<i>flatterer.</i>
parleur,	parleuse,	<i>talkative.</i>
menteur,	menteuse,	<i>liar.</i>
danseur,	danseuse,	<i>dancer.</i>
accusateur,	accusatrice,	<i>accuser.</i>
conducteur,	conductrice,	<i>conductor.</i>
acteur,	actrice,	<i>actor.</i>
admirateur,	admiratrice,	<i>admirer.</i>
enchanteur,	enchanteresse,	<i>enchanter.</i>
pêcheur,	pêcheresse,	<i>sinner.</i>
vengeur,	vengeresse,	<i>avenger.</i>
demandeur (law term),	demanderesse,	<i>plaintiff.</i>

The twelve following — *antérieur, citérieur, extérieur, intérieur, inférieur, meilleur, mineur, majeur, postérieur, prieur, supérieur, ultérieur*, take only *e* mute, and follow the second rule.

The following adjectives form their feminine by doubling the *l* in the masculine before a vowel:

M.	F.	
beau, bel,	belle,	<i>fine.</i>
vieux, vieil,	vieille,	<i>old.</i>
mou, mol,	molle,	<i>soft.</i>
nouveau, nouvel,	nouvelle,	<i>new.</i>
fou, fol,	folle,	<i>mad.</i>

EXERCISE.

It is a very silly story. The enchanting voice of that actress.
Ce 2 fol histoire f. 1 = 2 f. 1 cette = f.
 The superior power of that minister. He has a deceitful
= 2 pouvoir m. 1. ce = m. Il a trompeur 2
 face. He extended to us a protecting hand. That house is very
*— f. Il tendit 2 * nous 1 = 2 main f. 1 Cette maison f. très*

old. Your sister is a very good singer. The avenging
Votre sœur f. chanteur. vengeur 2
 thunderbolt smote that impious wretch. They are delusive
*foudre f. 1 frappa impie m. * Ce sont des trompeur 2*
 promises. My claims are superior. That old lady
promesses f. pl. 1 Mes prétentions sont = Cette dame
 is very kind.
bon

The following are entirely irregular :

M.	F.	
absous,	absoute,	<i>absolved.</i>
bénin,	bénigne,	<i>benign.</i>
blanc,	blanche,	<i>white.</i>
caduc,	caduque,	<i>decrepit.</i>
coi,	coite,	<i>still.</i>
dissons,	dissoute,	<i>dissolved.</i>
doux,	douce,	<i>sweet.</i>
favori,	favorite,	<i>favourite.</i>
faux,	fausse,	<i>false.</i>
frais,	fraîche,	<i>fresh.</i>
franc,	franche,	<i>frank.</i>
gentil,	gentille,	<i>gentle.</i>
Grec,	Grecque,	<i>Greek.</i>
jumeau,	jumelle,	<i>twin.</i>
long,	longue,	<i>long.</i>
malin,	maligne,	<i>malicious.</i>
mat,	matte,	<i>unpolished.</i>
public,	publique,	<i>public.</i>
roux,	rousse,	<i>red.</i>
sec,	sèche,	<i>dry.</i>
tiers,	tierce,	<i>third.</i>
traître,	traïtesse,	<i>treacherous.</i>
Turc,	Turque,	<i>Turkish.</i>
prince,	princesse,	<i>prince.</i>

M.		F.	
N. B. concret	} make	concrète	} follow the second rule, except in the additional accent.
discret		discrète	
indiscret		indiscrète	
inquiet		inquiète	
complet		complète	
incomplet		incomplète	
replet		replète	
suret		surète	
prêt		prête	

Préfix m. makes *préfixe* f., and follows the second rule.

The following nouns and adjectives undergo no change in the feminine :

châtain,	nut brown.	témoin,	witness.
dispos,	ready.	fat,	coxcomb.
auteur,	author.	peintre,	painter.
écrivain,	writer.	poète,	poet.
professeur,	professor.	imposteur,	impostor.
docteur,	doctor.		

EXERCISE.

His temper is mild. This colour is too red. She is as
*Son humeur f. doux Cette couleur f. trop rous **
 fresh as a rose. It is a fine statue. His answer is a mere
frais comme — f. Ce beau — f. Sa réponse f. franc
 evasion. That plant possesses a pernicious property. The
défaite Cette plante f. a une malin 2 qualité f. 1
 thing is public. The road is too long. His twin sister.
chose f. route f. trop Sa
 That young lady is sweet and handsome. That wax is very soft.
Cette demoiselle doux beau cire f. mou.
 The paint on that wainscot is not dry. My brother is generous
peinture f. sur ce lambris m. sec. Mon frère m. —
 and frank. Your sister is prudent and discreet. He gave us a very
Votre — discret. Il nous fit très 2
 frank answer. This is his favourite occupation. That rose is very
— 3 réponse f. 1 C'est son 2 — f. 1 —
 white. My mother is very uneasy. That edition is not complete.
blanc. Ma inquiet. — f. n'est pas complet.
 My aunts are quite ready.
Mes tante f. pl. toutes prêt

Of the Formation of the Plural in Adjectives.

GENERAL RULE. — All adjectives form their plural by the addition of *s* ; as, *grand*, *grands* ; *grande*, *grandes* ; *aimé*, *aimés* ; *aimée*, *aimées*.

Exceptions. — 1. Adjectives ending in *s*, *x*, do not change their termination in the plural masculine ; as, *gris*, *épais*, *heureux*, *doux*.

2. Adjectives ending in *au*, form their plural masculine by the addition of *x*; *beau*, *beaux*; *nouveau*, *nouveaux*.

3. Adjectives in *al*, form their plural masculine by changing this termination into *aux*; as, *égal*, *égaux*; *moral*, *moraux*; *original*, *originaux*; *trivial*, *triviaux*; *brutal*, *brutaux*, &c. Others take *s*, as, *fatal*, *fatals*; *final*, *finals*; *glacial*, *glacials*; *nasal*, *nasals*; *naval*, *navals*; *théâtral*, *théâtrals*.

Bénéficial, *canonial*, *diagonal*, *diamétral*, *expérimental*, *instrumental*, *médicinal*, *mental*, *patronal*, *virginal*, *vocal*, *zodiacal*, are not used in the plural masculine, because they accompany only feminine nouns; as, *ligne diagonale*, *physique expérimentale*, *musique vocale*.

Remark. — *Tout* makes in the pl. mas. *tous*.

EXERCISE.

My aunts are rich and generous. He has four white horses.
f. pl. = = a quatre 2 1

These books are new. Give me two small knives and two small
m. pl. neuf Donnez moi deux petit m. pl.

forks. The roads are dangerous. Your son is young and
fourchettes f. pl. f. pl. = Votre jeune

handsome. Your daughters are young and handsome. They are
Vos filles pl. beau. Ils

envious and jealous. All the judges are assembled. I saw five
= Tout pl. m. assemblé J'ai vu cinq

white houses. The book, paper, pencil, and penknife are excellen
2 maison 1 m. art. art. art. canif m. —

I have ten pretty pictures. All his friends have been very glad to
J'ai dix joli tableau ses ami ont été bien aise de

see him. The tall man, the little woman, and the pretty children
voir 2 le 1 grand joli

whom I met yesterday, looked very happy. Young ladies,
que je rencontrai hier semblaient Mesdemoiselles

be sincere and civil. These girls are docile and amiable. They
soyez pl. f. pl. f. Ces —

have fought in three naval battles. (There are) beautiful
ont combattu dans trois = 2 combat m. 1 Voilà de beau

jewels. (I am fond of) instrumental music.
 m. pl. *J'aime* — 2 art. f. s. 1

Of Determinative Adjectives.

Determinative adjectives are joined to substantives to express certain manners of being, and to determine the idea which they add to it. When I say *ma maison, cette plume*, *ma* attaches to *maison* an idea of possession; *cette* attaches to *plume* an idea of indication.

There are four sorts of determinative adjectives: the numeral adjectives, the demonstrative adjectives, the possessive adjectives, and the indefinite adjectives.

Numeral Adjectives.

Numeral adjectives determine the signification of substantives, by adding to them an idea of number or order. They are divided into cardinal and ordinal. The cardinal are used to express the number of persons or things; they are called cardinal, because they serve to form the other numbers.

CARDINAL NUMBERS

1. un, <i>m. une, f.</i>	16. seize.
2. deux.	17. dix-sept.
3. trois.	18. dix-huit.
4. quatre.	19. dix-neuf.
5. cinq.	20. vingt.
6. six.	21. vingt-et-un.
7. sept.	22. vingt-deux.
8. huit.	23. vingt-trois.
9. neuf.	24. vingt-quatre.
10. dix.	25. vingt-cinq.
11. onze.	26. vingt-six.
12. douze.	27. vingt-sept.
13. treize.	28. vingt-huit.
14. quatorze.	29. vingt-neuf.
15. quinze.	30. trente.

31. trente-et-un.	80. quatre-vingt.
32. trente-deux.	81. quatre-vingt-un.
40. quarante.	82. quatre-vingt-deux.
41. quarante-et-un.	90. quatre-vingt-dix.
42. quarante-deux.	91. quatre-vingt-onze.
50. cinquante.	92. quatre-vingt-douze.
60. soixante.	100. cent.
70. soixante-dix.	101. cent-un.
71. soixante-et-onze.	1000. mille.
72. soixante-douze.	2000. deux mille.
73. soixante-treize.	

Observations on Cardinal Numbers.

Quatre-vingt eighty, and *cent* a hundred, in the plural, take an *s* when followed by a substantive; as, eighty men, *quatre-vingts hommes*; two hundred soldiers, *deux cents soldats*; but when followed by another number, they do not take *s*: two hundred and eighty-six soldiers, *deux cent quatre-vingt-six soldats*.

Mille, thousand, never takes *s*; it is spelt *mil* when it is used for the date of the year: thus we write, *l'an mil-huit-cent cinquante*, the year one thousand eight hundred and fifty.

Cent and *mille*, followed by a number, are never preceded by the word *un*, nor followed by the conjunction *et*: we say, *cent cinquante* for one hundred and fifty; *mille trente-quatre*, for one thousand and thirty-four.

Of Ordinal Numbers.

Ordinal numbers mark the order, rank, and disposition of things. They are formed from the cardinal by adding *ième* to the termination of those that end with a consonant, except *f*, which is changed into *vième*: as, *huit*, *huitième*; *neuf*, *neuvième*; and by suppressing *e* mute in those which end with it, and putting in its place *ième*: as, *quatre*, *quatrième*; *quinze*, *quinzième*.

Cinq takes *u* before *ième*, *cinquième*.

Premier, first, is used instead of *unième*, when it is not preceded by another number; but after *vingt*, *trente*, *quarante*, *cinquante*, *unième* is used: thus, *vingt-et-unième*, *trente-et-unième*.

ORDINAL NUMBERS.

1 ^{er} premier.	6 ^e sixième.
2 ^d second, or deuxième.	7 ^e septième.
3 ^e troisième.	8 ^e huitième.
4 ^e quatrième.	9 ^e neuvième.
5 ^e cinquième.	10 ^e dixième.

The ordinal numbers take the mark of the plural when they refer to a noun plural: as, the first essays, *les premiers essais*. Ordinal numbers, used in English with the article after the christian name of a sovereign, are expressed in French by the cardinal, leaving out the article: as, William the Fourth, *Guillaume Quatre*; Charles the Twelfth, *Charles Douze*; except, however, the first, which is translated by *premier*: as, George the First, *George Premier*.

For dates, the ordinal numbers are likewise expressed in French by the cardinal, except again *le premier*: The 4th of November is translated by *le 4 de Novembre*; but the 1st of October by *le premier d'Octobre*.

EXERCISE.

The army of our allies was composed of a hundred thousand
armée f. alliés était composé
 foot, and twenty thousand horse. They took fif-
hommes d'infanterie cavalerie. firent
 teen hundred prisoners, and killed four thousand men. The
prisonniers tuèrent
 battle (was fought) in one thousand eight hundred and fourteen, at
se livra en
 three o'clock in the morning. If I had two hundred guineas,
heure pl. du matin Si j'avais guinée pl.
 I would lend you eighty. I saw one hundred and fifty men
je vous en prêteraïs j'ai vu

assembled before the palace. The artillery amounts to one hundred
devant monte à
 and twenty-six men. George the Fourth was crowned (in the year)
couronné l'an
 one thousand eight hundred and twenty-one.

On the eleventh of June I received twelve letters, but the eleventh
** Juin j'ai reçu mais*
 (has given me) more pleasure than the others. Charles the Fifth,
m'a fait plus de que autre

King of France, conquered the greatest part of that kingdom.
conquit plus grande royaume m.

William, surnamed the Conqueror, King of England and Duke of
Guillaume surnommé

Normandy, was one of the greatest generals of the eleventh
—die fut des plus grands

century. On the eighteenth of February, one thousand four hun-
*siècle m. **

dred and seventy-eight, the Duke of Clarence, brother to King
du

Edward the Fourth, was drowned in a butt of Malmsey wine.
Edouard noyé dans tonneau m. Malvoisie

Louis the Sixteenth, who was beheaded on the twenty-first of
*qui décapité **

January, one thousand seven hundred and ninety-three, was the

grandson of Louis the Fifteenth. Dann retreated during the night,
petit fils — se retira pendant f.

having lost in killed and wounded, nine thousand men, and in
ayant perdu en tués blessés

prisoners eight thousand, besides six generals, two hundred and
prisonniers outre

sixteen officers, fifty cannon, and thirty standards.
drapeau.

Demonstrative Adjectives.

Demonstrative adjectives denote the signification of substantives by adding to them an idea of indication. They are, *ce, cet, cette, ces.*

<i>ce</i> before a consonant,	<i>ce</i> <i>soldat.</i>
<i>ce</i> — an <i>h</i> aspirated,	<i>ce</i> <i>héros.</i>

Sing. m. *cet* before a vowel, *cet enfant.*
cet — an *h* mute, *cet homme.*
Sing. f. *cette* before any feminine noun, *cette femme.*
Plu. *ces* before all plural substantives, *ces livres.*

EXERCISE.

This portrait is fine. The flowers of that nosegay are very fine.
 — m. f. pl. *bouquet m. très beau*
 The eloquence of that orator is very persuasive. Those books are
 — f. = m. — m. pl.
 very entertaining. That apple is not ripe. This wine is good.
amusant pomme f. mûr vin m.
 That beer is bad. These liquors are excellent. This man
bière f. = f. pl. —
 has nothing in common with that hero. The tears of that child
n'a rien de = avec h asp. larmes pl. m.
 have moved me. This long-restrained hatred broke out, and
m'ont touché. 1 longtemps 3 contenu f. 2 éclata
 was the unhappy source of those dreadful events.
malheureux — f. terrible événement pl.

Ci and *là* are often added to the noun, either to point it out more distinctly, or speak of it more emphatically: *cet homme-là*, that man; *ces poires-ci*, these pears.

Possessive Adjectives.

These adjectives determine the signification of substantives by adding to them an idea of possession. They are:

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural in both Genders.</i>	
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>		
mon,	ma,	mes,	<i>my.</i>
ton,	ta,	tes,	<i>thy.</i>
son,	sa,	ses,	<i>his, her, its.</i>
notre	notre,	nos,	<i>our.</i>
votre	votre,	vos,	<i>your.</i>
leur	leur,	leurs,	<i>their.</i>

They are repeated in French before every substantive, and agree with it in gender and number.

Instead of *ma, ta, sa*, before a noun feminine, beginning with a vowel or *h* mute, we use *mon, ton, son*: thus, *mon âme* for *ma âme*, *ton humeur* for *ta humeur*, *son amitié* for *sa amitié*.

EXERCISE.

My father, mother, and sisters are in the country. Thy
à campagne f. s.
wit, thy talents, and thy honesty are rare. Thy ambition
esprit m. — m. pl. honnêteté h m. — pl. — f.
is too great. Your pencil, slate, and pens are upon the table.
trop crayon, ardoise sur — f.
Their amiable qualities. Our family is very numerous. Every
= pl. Chaque
country has its customs, laws, and prejudices. Our friends are too
pays coutume pl.
indulgent. My ambition is the only cause of my imprudence.
— — — seul — f. — f.
Give me my dictionary and grammar. She has lost her gloves and
= m. f. perdu m.
fan. Have you found your pen? I have seen your father, mother,
m. trouvé f. J'ai vu
brothers, and sisters. Your horses and carriage are beautiful.
voiture f. beau.
Our constancy and our efforts will (at last) surmount all ob-
= f. — m. * enfin surmonteront art.
stacles. His wit, his talents, his honesty, and his (good
— m. pl. esprit m. — m. honnêteté h m. bon-
nature) make him beloved by every body.
homie f. font 2 le 1 aimer de

N.B. The possessive adjectives agree in French with the object possessed, and not with the possessor, as in English, for which reason they are to be repeated before every noun.

Indefinite Adjectives.

These adjectives determine the signification of substantives by adding to them an idea of generality. They are:

chaque,	each.	tout,	every, all.
nul,	no.	quelque,	some, any.
aucun,	none.	plusieurs,	several.
même,	same.	quel,	what.
tel,	such.	quelconque,	any, whatever.

EXERCISE.

Each country has its customs. No man is perfect. They are
pays coutumes pl. n'est parfait. Ce sont
 the same men, the same policy, and the same measures. Every
pl. politique f. s. f. pl.
 man is mortal. Each science has its principles. They are of the
— f. = m. pl.
 same age and of the same height. Each language has its peculiar
— m. taille f. langue particulier 2
 idioms. Such a scheme cannot succeed. Several reasons
= pl. m. 1 2 1 plan m. ne saurait réussir
 determined him.
l'ont déterminé

Of the Degrees of Signification of the Adjective.

Grammarians commonly reckon three degrees of signification: the positive, the comparative, and the superlative.

The positive is the adjective expressing the quality of a substantive, without decrease or diminution; as, an ambitious man, *un homme ambitieux*.

EXERCISE.

Scipio was respectful to his mother, liberal to his sisters, good to
Scipion était ——— tuteur envers ———
 his servants, just and affable to every body. Brave men are
domestique ——— 2 art. 1
 generally humane and merciful; while men (of base
= = miséricordieux tandis que art. d'un esprit
 and low mind) are usually insolent and tyrannical. A child
bas et rampant ordinairement ——— tyrannique m.
 gentle, amiable, and studious, is beloved by every body.
doux aimable = aimé de

The comparative expresses a comparison between two or more persons or things. When two things

are compared, one is either superior, inferior, or equal to the other : hence three sorts of comparatives ; of superiority, inferiority, and equality.

The comparative of superiority is formed by putting the adverb *plus* before an adjective, or *plus de* before a substantive, and *que* after them.

EXAMPLES.

La rose est plus belle que la violette. *The rose is more beautiful than the violet.*

Il a plus de livres que sa sœur. *He has more books than his sister.*

EXERCISE.

London is more populous and larger than Paris. Nothing is
Londres *peuplé* *grand* — *rien* *n'est*
 pleasanter to the mind than the light of truth ; nothing is more
agréable *lumière f.* *art. vérité f.*

lovely than virtue, and nothing is more desirable than wisdom.
aimable *art. vertu f.* — *art. sagesse f.*

We have more pictures and books than your friend. Virtue is
Nous avons *tableau m.* *ami art. f.*

more precious than riches.
 = *art. richesses pl.*

The comparative of inferiority is formed by putting *moins* before an adjective, or *moins de* before a substantive, and *que* after them.

EXAMPLES.

La violette est moins brillante que le lis. *The violet is less brilliant than the lily.*

Elle a moins d'orgueil que son frère. *She has less pride than her brother.*

EXERCISE.

Charles is less polite and less obliging than his sisters. Your
 — = *geant*

cousin is less learned than you. Those people have less generosity
 — *f.* *instruit* *gens* =

than their neighbours. Shipwreck and death are less fatal than
voisin pl. m. *art. naufrage m.* *art. f.* *funeste*

the pleasures which attack virtue. William is more esteemed
qui attaquent art. f. Guillaume estimé
 and beloved than John.
aimé Jean

The comparative of equality is formed by placing *aussi* in the affirmative, and *si* in the negative sentences before an adjective or adverb, and *que* after it.

EXAMPLES.

La tulipe est aussi belle que *The tulip is as beautiful as the*
 la rose. *rose.*
 Paris n'est pas si grand que *Paris is not so large as Lon-*
 Londres. *don.*

Before a substantive, the comparative of equality is formed by putting *autant de* before it, and *que* after it.

EXAMPLE.

Elle a autant de plumes que *She has as many pens as her*
 son frère. *brother.*

EXERCISE.

Alexander was as ambitious as Cæsar. We have as many books
—dre = César
 as your brothers, and they are as learned as we. This young lady
savant nous
 has as much beauty as kindness. You are not so rich as your cousin.
beauté bonté n'êtes
 They are as happy as their friends. Their sons show as much
m. heureux ami m. pl. montrent
 docility as their daughters. The love of our neighbour is as
*= amour * art. prochain m.*
 necessary in society for the happiness of life, as in Christianity
—ire art. = f. bonheur m. art. vie f. art. = nisme m.
 for eternal salvation.
—el 2 art. salut 1

The three following adjectives, *meilleur*, better; *pire*, worse; *moindre*, less, are comparatives in themselves.

Meilleur, better, is the comparative of *bon*, good, and is used instead of *plus bon*, which is never said.

Pire, worse, is the comparative of *mauvais*, and is used instead of *plus mauvais*, which is also said.

Moindre, less or smaller, is the comparative of *petit*, and is used instead of *plus petit*, which is also employed.

They are not to be confounded with the following adverbs, *mieux*, *pis*, *moins*, which are generally rendered by the same English words, *better*, *worse*, *less*.

Mieux, better, is the comparative of *bien*, and is used for *plus bien*, which is never said.

Pis, worse, is the comparative of *mal*, and is used for *plus mal*, which is likewise said.

Moins, less, is the comparative of *peu*, little, and is used instead of *plus peu*, which is never said.

EXERCISE.

That fruit is good, but this is better. His condition is bad, but
Ce m. là mais celui-ci — f.

it has been worse. My expense is small, but yours is smaller.
elle a été dépense f. la vôtre petit

He behaves well, but she behaves still better. He was unwell, but
Il se conduit elle encore Il se portait mal

he is worse than ever. I speak little, you speak still less. This
jamais parle adv. parlez

column is less than the other in height and thickness. Your style
colonne f. autre en hauteur en grosseur — m.

is better than that of his brother. The remedy is worse than the
celui —de m.

disease.

mal m.

Remark. — *By*, after a comparative, is expressed by *de*.

EXAMPLE.

He is taller by the whole head. *Il est plus grand de toute la tête.*

The adjective is in the superlative degree, when it expresses the quality of a substantive in a very high,

or in the highest state : hence there are two sorts of superlatives, the absolute and the relative.

The superlative absolute is formed by putting *très, fort, bien, infiniment, extrêmement*, before its adjective. It is called absolute, because it does not express any relation to other objects.

EXAMPLES.

Paris est une très belle ville.
Dieu est infiniment bon.

*Paris is a very fine city.
God is infinitely good.*

EXERCISE.

My uncle has a very fine country-house, and very spacious
beau campagne f. vaste
gardens. You are very good, but your brother is very wicked.
méchant

God is a being infinitely great and perfect. The style of Fénelon
être m. parfait — m. —

is very rich and very harmonious, but it is sometimes prolix ; that of
= quelquefois prolire

Bossuet is extremely sublime, but it is sometimes harsh and
dur

unpolished. I am your most humble and obedient servant. That
rude très — obéissant = m.

man is extremely learned.
savant

N.B. The adverb is to be repeated before every adjective.

The superlative relative is formed by prefixing the articles *le, la, les*, or the possessive adjectives *mon, ma, mes*, &c. &c., to the comparatives of superiority or inferiority. It is called relative, because it expresses a relation to other objects.

EXAMPLES.

Londres est la plus grande des
villes.

London is the largest of cities.

C'est mon plus grand ennemi.

He is my greatest enemy.

N. B. *Plus* and *moins*, with the article or possessive adjective, are repeated before every adjective.

EXERCISE.

China is the greatest empire in the world. The reign of Louis
La Chine — in. *du monde* m. *règne* m. —
 the Fourteenth was one of the longest, and one of the most glorious
fut =
 recorded in history. The most terrible and most stormy sea is
rapportés art. = 2 f. 1
 less dangerous than this deceitful court. The city of Troy was
 = *trompeur* 2 *cour* f. 1 *ville* f. *Troie*
 formerly the most famous in Asia Minor. I met yesterday
autrefois = *de* art. f. *Mineur* *J'ai rencontré* *hier*
 in the park one of my best friends. The Emperor Antoninus
dans *parc* m. *ami* m. = = *nin*
 is considered one of the greatest princes who ever reigned.
considéré — *qui aient jamais* *régné*
 The finest privilege of kings is to be useful to unfortunate men.
 — m. s. art. *d'être utile* art. *malheureux*
 The greatest punishment for the wicked is remorse of
punition f. *de* *mechant* m. pl. art. *remords* s.
 conscience.
 art. — f.

Agreement of the Adjective with the Substantive.

RULE I. — The adjective always agrees in gender and number with the substantive to which it relates.

EXAMPLES.

Le bon père.	<i>The good father.</i>
La bonne mère.	<i>The good mother.</i>
De beaux jardins.	<i>Fine gardens.</i>
De belles fleurs.	<i>Fine flowers.</i>

Bon is masculine singular, because *père* is masculine and singular; *belles* is feminine and plural, because *fleurs* is feminine plural.

RULE II. — When the adjective relates to two

substantives singular of the same gender, it must be put in the plural, and agree with them in gender.

EXAMPLE.

Le riche et le pauvre sont *The rich and the poor are equal*
égaux après la mort. *after death.*

RULE III.—When the two substantives, to which the adjective relates, are of different genders, the adjective is put in the masculine plural.

EXAMPLE.

Mon frère et ma sœur sont *My brother and sister are happy.*
heureux.

EXERCISE.

The brother, sister, nephew, and niece are all dead. The victory
neveu mort. = f.
which Cæsar obtained in the plains of Pharsalia, was fatal to his
que Cæsar gagna plaine f. s. Pharsale —
country, pernicious to the Romans, and disastrous to human
patrie f. = Romains désastreux pour = 2
nature. Your brother and sisters are prudent and wise. A
art. f. l sage.
pure stream rolls its limpid water through the midst of
clair ruisseau m. roule limpide cristal m. à milieu
meadows enamelled with flowers. Great and extensive projects,
prairie f. émaillé de fleur Des 2 3 projet m. pl. l
joined to a wise execution, constitute the great minister. Pilpay
joint sage — f. font = m. —
and Confucius are very celebrated among the nations of Asia.
— célèbre parmi peuplem. pl. art. Asie
Ignorance and self-love are equally presumptuous. My
art. — f. art. amour-propre m. présomptueux
son and daughter were very attentive to the instructions of their
ont été = —
masters. Glory and virtue are solid, sure, and lasting. These
art. = f. art. f. solide sûr durable.
hills are covered with trees loaded with fruit already ripe.
coteau m. couvert de arbre m. chargé de m. pl. déjà mûr

CHAP. IV.

OF THE PRONOUN.

THE pronoun is a word used instead of a noun.

There are six kinds of pronouns: as, the personal, the possessive, the demonstrative, the relative, the interrogative, and the indefinite.

Of the Personal Pronouns.

Personal pronouns are used for the names of persons and things. There are three persons: the first who speaks, the second who is spoken to, and the third is the person or thing spoken of.

PRONOUNS OF THE FIRST PERSON.

Sing.
Je, me, moi,
à moi, de moi.

Plural.
Nous,
à nous, de nous.

EXAMPLES.

Je chante, *I sing.*
Il me donne, *he gives me.*
Donnez-moi, *give me.*

Nous chantons, *we sing.*
Il nous blesse, *he hurts us.*
Il nous parle, *he speaks to us.*

PRONOUNS OF THE SECOND PERSON.

Sing.
Tu, te, toi,
à toi, de toi.

Plural.
Vous,
à vous, de vous.

EXAMPLES.

Tu chantes, *thou singest.*
Il te voit, *he sees thee.*
Il te parle, *he speaks to thee.*

Vous chantez, *you sing.*
Il vous voit, *he sees you.*
Il vous parle, *he speaks to you.*

These pronouns are both masculine and feminine, that is, of the same gender as the person which they represent.

In general, *je, me, tu, te* are put before the verb; *moi, toi* after it; *nous, vous*, before, but sometimes likewise after it.

Remark.—Politeness has led to the use of the plural *vous*, instead of the singular *tu*: as, *vous êtes bien bon*, you are very good, for *tu es bien bon*.

EXERCISE.

I frequently meet you at the exchange. I (am reading) the
 = 3 rencontre 2 1 à bourse f. lis
 history of Charles the Twelfth. You speak too fast; I (do not
 — f. — parlez trop vite ne 1
 understand) you. We have told the truth. Give me some money.
 comprends pas 3 2 avons dit vérité f.
 I shall be very much obliged to you. You like the town, I prefer
 serai 2 bien 3 obligé 4 * 1. aimez ville f. —
 the country. I do not believe it. Teach me French; give
 campagne f. * ne 1 crois pas 3 le 2 Enseignez le français
 me a lesson. If we desire to be happy, we must not deviate
 leçon f. desirons d'être ne devons pas nous écarter
 from the path of virtue. Thou readest very well; dost thou
 de sentier m. art. f. lis * 3
 admire her? How good you are to have thought of us. Will
 — res 2 la 1 Que 3 1 êtes 2 d'avoir pensé à
 you go to the play (to-night)? No, I (am going) into the
 aller à spectacle m. ce soir vais à
 country. I (shall write) to you in two or three days. Speak to
 écrirai 2 * 1 ou
 me; I (am listening) to you. How amiable you are!
 écoute 2 * 1 Que 3 1 êtes 2

PRONOUNS OF THE THIRD PERSON.

Sing. Masc. Il, le, lui; *he, him, it, to him.*

Plur. Masc. Ils, les, leur, eux; *they, them, to them.*

Sing. Fem. Elle, la, lui; *she, her, to her.*

Plur. Fem. Elles, les, leur, elles; *they, them, to them.*

Remark.—The personal pronouns *le, la, les*, always accompany a verb: as, *je le connais, je la vois, je les estime.*

All the personal pronouns, *je, tu, il, elle, nous, vous,*

ils, elles, when subjects, are placed after the verb in interrogations: as,

Dois-je payer? *Must I pay?* Chante-t-il? *Does he sing?*
Viendrez-vous? *Will you come?* Travaillent-elles? *Do they work?*

Most of these pronouns, when objects of the verb, precede it, except in the imperative affirmative.

EXERCISE.

My father has forbidden me to speak to him. The eagle has
a 2 *défendu* 3 1 *de parler* 2 * *lui* 1. *aigle* m.
a very piercing eye; he looks at the sun without lowering his
la *perçant* *vue* f. *regarde* * *soleil* m. *sans* *baisser* *les*
eye-lids; he inhabits the cold countries; he builds his nest on
paupières *habite* *froid* 2 *pays* m. 1. *bâtit* *nid* m. à
the top of the highest trees. They make us love virtue more
sommet 2 *arbre* m. 1 *font* 2 1 *aimer* art. f.
by their example than by their words. I speak well of you; speak
leurs *exemples* *parole* pl. *parle* *parlez*
ill of me if you please. Did they speak of her? I (do not know)
voulez. * 2 *parlèrent* 1 *ne connais pas* 2
them. They often speak of me, but I never speak of them.
1 f. 2 *parlent* 1' *mais* *ne* 1 *jamais* 2 1 f. pl.

REFLECTED PRONOUNS OF THE THIRD PERSON.

Masc. and Fem.

<i>Sing.</i> Soi, se.	<i>Plur.</i> Se.
Oneself, itself, himself, herself	Themselves.

Remark.—*Se* is placed before a verb and *soi* after a preposition.

There are two personal relative pronouns, *en* and *y*.

En supplies the place of the pronouns *de lui*, of him; *d'elle*, of her; *d'eux*, of them; *d'elles*, of them; *de cela*, of it; and of the adverbs *d'ici*, hence, *de là*, thence.

Y supplies the place of the pronouns *à lui*, to him; *à elle*, to her; *à eux*, to them; *à elles*, to them;

à cela, to it; and of the adverbs *ici*, here, and *là*, there.

Remark. — *En* and *y* are always placed before the verb, except with the imperative affirmative.

EXERCISE.

This lady praises herself too much. That man ruins himself.
loue trop perd
 Innocence always finds the means to justify itself. She
 art. — 2 trouve 1 moyen s. de =
 always speaks of herself. People should (very seldom) speak of
 2 1 On doit rarement
 themselves. We must take upon ourselves the care of our own
 sing. On doit prendre sur sing. soin m. ses propre
 affairs. I am very glad of it. (These are) beautiful oranges,
 affaire f. pl. bien aise Voilà de beau — f.
 will you give me some? See them, I consent to it. These
 voulez donner en Voyez consens 2 1
 arguments are cogent, I (see no) reply to them. That is a
 — pl. ne vois point de réplique 2 1 Ce
 delicate affair; the success of it is doubtful. We (are setting off)
 — 2 = 1 f. succès m. douteux partons
 from Paris as you are entering it. He is an honest man, trust to
 comme y entrez Ce honnête fiez-vous
 him. That man pleases you, you speak of him often. I aspire to
 plaît parlez souvent. —
 it. Go there.
 Allez

Of the Possessive Pronouns.

Possessive pronouns relate to some noun mentioned before, adding to it an idea of possession. They agree in gender and number with the noun to which they refer. They are:

Sing.		Plural.	
M.	F.	M.	F.
le mien, la mienne;		les miens, les miennes,	<i>mine.</i>
le tien, la tienne;		les tiens, les tiennes,	<i>thine.</i>
le sien, la sienne;		les siens, les siennes,	<i>his, hers, its.</i>

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>
le nôtre, la nôtre;		les nôtres, les nôtres,	<i>ours.</i>
le vôtre, la vôtre;		les vôtres, les vôtres,	<i>yours.</i>
le leur, la leur;		les leurs, les leurs,	<i>theirs.</i>

Remark. — When through politeness *vous* is used for *tu*, then *votre*, *vos* must take the place of *ton*, *ta*, *tes*; and *le vôtre*, *la vôtre*, *les vôtres* be used for *le tien*, *la tienne*, *les tiens*, *les tiennes*.

EXERCISE.

Her house is more convenient than ours, but yours is not so
maison f. *commode* *si*
 well situate as theirs. Their friends and ours went yesterday to
situé *ami m. pl.* *ont été hier*
 Windsor. I have learnt my lesson, but my sister (has not learnt)
 — *appris* *leçon* *n'a pas appris*
 hers. Your religion orders you to kill me, but mine commands
 — *f.* *de tuer* *commande*
 me to forgive you. Your garden is larger than mine, but my
pardonnez *jardin m.* *grand*
 house is larger than yours. His conduct is blamable, yours is
maison f. *conduite f.* —
 praiseworthy. All the pictures which we expected from Rome
louable *tableaux m. pl.* *que attendions* —
 are arrived; there are some that are a little damaged; but yours,
arrivés *il y en a* *qui* *peu endommagés*
 his, and mine are in good condition. You have opened your heart
état m. *avez ouvert*
 to me with that noble frankness which so well becomes an honest
 — *franchise f.* *2* *3* *sied 1* *à*
 man; this confidence well deserves mine. Take away your pencils,
confiance f. *2* *mérite 1* *Prenez* *crayon m.*
 his and hers. My daughter will return from school at Christmas;
reviendra *art. école* *Noël*
 yours will stay another year.
y restera encore une année

Of the Demonstrative Pronouns.

The demonstrative pronouns are those which recall the idea of substantives, by adding to them an idea of indication of demonstration. They are:

Masc. Celui, ceux ; celui-ci, ceux-ci ; celui-là, ceux-là.
this, these ; this, these ; that those.

Fem. Celle, celles ; celle-ci, celles-ci ; celle-là, celles-là.

They agree in gender and number with the noun to which they refer.

Remark.—Do not confound *ce* demonstrative pronoun, with *ce* demonstrative adjective. The former is always joined with the verb *être*, or followed by the pronouns *qui, que, quoi, dont* : *ce sont les Romains, ce qui plaît, ce dont je parle, ce à quoi je pense*. The latter is always followed by a substantive : *ce discours, ce livre*.

EXERCISE.

This is for me, and that for you ; this is low and mean, but that
vil bas
 is grand and sublime. Which of these two houses (do you prefer) ?
Laquelle préférez-vous
 This (will cost) you five hundred and twenty pounds, that, seven
coûtera 2 1 livre pl.
 hundred. (There are) two snuff-boxes ; this is (a gold one), that
Voilà tabatières f. d'or
 (is only) gilt. The sight of the mind is more extensive than that
n'est que doré. vue f. étendu
 of the body. The pleasures of the wise resemble in nothing
sage ressemblent 2 3 1 rien 4
 those of a dissipated man. (Here are) certainly two charming
à dissipé 2 1 Voici = beau
 prospects ; this has something (in it) more cheerful, but
*perspectives f. quelque chose de * riant*
 many people think that more striking and more
bien de art. personne f. pl. trouvent imposant
 majestic. That is a very good idea ; those are my sentiments.
majestueux
 The body perishes, the soul is immortal : yet all our cares are for
périt =
 that, while we neglect this. These books are better than
m. tandis que négligeons f.
 those which I have sold. The injuries which we receive from
que j'ai vendus outrage m. pl. que recevons

a man in a passion are not so great as those which the same
*en * colère 2 ne 1 pas que*
 man commits (in cold blood). What you say is true.
commet de sang froid dites vrai.

Of the Relative Pronouns.

The relative pronouns are those which relate to a preceding noun or pronoun, called the antecedent. In the phrase, *l'homme qui joue*, the man who plays, *qui* relates to the substantive *homme*; *l'homme* is therefore the antecedent to the pronoun relative *qui*.

The pronouns are *qui*, *que*, *dont*, *quoi*, *lequel*, *laquelle*, *lesquels*, *lesquelles*.

Qui, *que*, *dont* are of both genders and numbers.

Lequel is a compound of *quel* and the article *le*, *la*, *les*, with which it unites in the following manner:

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
lequel, laquelle,	lesquels, lesquelles, <i>which</i> .
duquel, de laquelle,	desquels, desquelles, <i>of which</i> .
auquel, à laquelle,	auxquels, auxquelles, <i>to which</i> .

This pronoun always agrees in gender and number with its antecedent. *Quoi*, which sometimes supplies its place, is always governed by a preposition.

EXERCISE.

The woman whom I see. The book which is on the table. Cicero
vois. sur Ciceron
 was one of those who were sacrificed to the vengeance of the
fut furent sacrifiés — f.
 triumphs. The bird that sings on that tree is very pretty. The
chante sur joli
 lady of whom you speak is very handsome. The person to whom
parlez
 I wrote last month has answered me this morning. The
j'écrivis art. dernier 2 mois m. 2 a répondu matin m.
 God whom we love and worship. I have seen the house of which you
aimons adorons ai vu

speak. The man who caresses and flatters you is the most
parlez caresse flatte

dangerous being whom I know. I know the man of whom your
 = 2 art. être m. 1 *connaisse connais*

brother complains. God, whose decrees are eternal, and whose
se plaint =

works we admire. The glory to which heroes sacrifice is
 art. ouvrage 3 1 *admirons 2 = f. sacrifiant*

often a false glory. The canal of Languedoc runs across a river,
m. du — passe sur rivière f.

over which a bridge is built in the form of an aqueduct, under which
*sus pont m. bâti en * = aqueduc m.*

the river continues its course. It is a project to which he has
cours m. s. projet m. a

devoted much time.
dévoué beaucoup de temps.

Que is also common to persons and things, and is of both genders and numbers: as, *les dames que vous voyez, les livres que vous lisez.*

The adverb of place *où* is likewise employed as a relative pronoun for *dans lequel, dans laquelle, auquel, à laquelle, auxquels, auxquelles.*

EXAMPLES.

Voilà le but où il tend. That is the object he has in view.
Ce sont des affaires où je suis intéressé. Those are affairs in which I am concerned.

Remark.—*Où* admits the prepositions *de* and *par*.

EXAMPLES.

Voilà une chose d'où dépend le bonheur public. That is an affair on which the public happiness depends.
Tels sont les lieux par où il a passé. These are the places through which he has passed.

EXERCISE.

A power which terror and force have founded cannot be of long
puissance f. art. = art. — ont fondé f. ne peut être
 duration. Titus spent eighty millions on the public games
durée f. — dépensa à 2 jeux m. pl. 1

which he once gave to the Roman people. The books which
une fois 2 donna 1 Romain 2 m. 1 pl.
 you read are good, but difficult to understand. It is we whom they
lisez difficile comprendre l'on
 persecute with unexampled rage. The state of misery
poursuit avec une sans exemple 2 fureur f. 1 état
 to which he was reduced has touched me (to the quick). The town
réduit a touché au vif
 to which he is gone is precisely the same place through which we
allé = — f.
 went (in coming up) to London. The prison in which they
passâmes en venant — f. on
 used to confine the prisoners, has been demolished. (This is)
avait coutume de renfermer = été détruit f. Voici
 the door through which the thieves entered the house. The
voleur pl. entrèrent dans f.
 different countries through which he has passed have furnished his
pays m. pl. par passé ont fourni à
 pencil with romantic and picturesque scenes. The mountains
pinceau s. de art. = 2 pittoresque 3 — 1 montagne f. pl.
 from whence gold (is extracted) are not in general fruitful.
*d'où 1 art. or 3 tire 2 * en — infertile pl.*

Remark.—Relative pronouns are often understood in English; but *qui* and *que* are never omitted in French.

Of the Absolute and Interrogative Pronouns.

They are *qui*, who, whom; *que*, what; *quoi*, what; *quel*, which; *lequel*, which.

Qui signifies *quel homme*, what man; *quelle personne*, what person.

Que signifies *quelle chose*, what thing.

Quoi is used after prepositions, and also with adjectives.

What, which, joined to a noun, is rendered by *quel, quels, quelle, quelles*.

On, quiconque, personne, rien, quelqu'un, chacun, autrui, l'un l'autre, l'un et l'autre, l'un ou l'autre, ni l'un ni l'autre, qui que, quoi que, quoi que ce soit qui, quoi que ce soit que, tout ce qui, tout ce que ; plusieurs, nul, nulle.

EXAMPLES.

On frappe à la porte.	<i>Somebody knocks at the door.</i>
On pense et l'on dit tout haut.	<i>People think and say openly.</i>
Chacun s'en plaint.	<i>Every one complains of him.</i>
Rien ne lui plaît.	<i>Nothing pleases him.</i>
Pas un ne le dit.	<i>Not one says so.</i>
Je vous prenais pour un autre.	<i>I took you for another.</i>
Je ne vis jamais rien de tel.	<i>I never saw anything like it.</i>
Tout disparaît devant Dieu.	<i>Everything vanishes before God.</i>
Qui que tu sois.	<i>Whoever thou mayst be.</i>
Quoi que vous disiez.	<i>Whatever you may say.</i>
Tout savant qu'il est.	<i>However learned he may be.</i>

EXERCISE.

They say that the French will not succeed in Spain. No
dit ne réussiront pas Espagne
 one in the world is free from faults. Do not speak ill of
*m. ne exempt faute pl. * ne parlez pas mal*
 other people, if you will have nobody speak ill of you. Let every
autrui voulez que parle Que
 one meddle with his own business. The seasons follow each
se mêle de propre affaire pl. saisons f. se suivent
 other without interruption. Yesterday I expected my two best
sans attendais
 friends, but neither came. Let every soldier keep his post,
n'est venu Que se tiennent à poste m.
 to avoid any surprise from the enemy. As nobody speaks to
pour éviter tout — f. ennemi s. Comme parle
 you, you ought not to speak to anybody. In whatever you
*devez 2 ne 1 **
 do, be guided by honour and probity; and in whatever you
faites soyez guidé art. = art. = f. tout ce que
 say (never deviate) from the path of truth.
dites ne vous écartez jamais sentier m. art. vérité f.

Nothing is more dangerous for a young man than bad
 = art. mauvais
 company. Whatever happens to him, he is always the same.
 compagnie f. arrive *
 Several say so, and several deny it. Somebody (told me so).
 disent 2 le 1 nient 2 le 1 me l'a dit
 They both relate the same story, although neither believes it.
 racontent histoire f. s. quoique ne la croit

On.—All indefinite and general expressions of reports: such as, *one says, people say, we say, it is said, it is reported, they, man, woman, &c.*, are rendered in French by the pronoun *on*, with the verb in the third person singular of the active voice.

Remark.—Instead of *et on, ou on, si on*, it is better for euphony to part these words with an *l*, thus: *et l'on, ou l'on, si l'on*, when the next word does not begin with *l*; and instead of *les habitudes qu'on contracte, ce après quoi on court*, it is better to say *les habitudes que l'on contracte, &c.*

Quelqu'un.—*Somebody* and *anybody* are both expressed by *quelqu'un*, s. mas. *Some, any, or few*, followed by *of*, are expressed by *quelqu'un, quelqu'une, quelques uns, quelques unes*, according to the gender and number of the substantive to which they refer.

Chacun.—*Every one* and *every body* are both expressed by *chacun*, always masculine, unless *every one* relate to a feminine noun expressed before.

Autrui.—*Others, other people*, used in an indefinite sense after a preposition, with reference to persons, is expressed by *autrui*, indeclinable.

Personne.—*Nobody* is expressed by *personne* singular masculine, and requires *ne* before the verb.

Rien.—*Nothing* is expressed by *rien*, with *ne* before the verb when used with a negative.

L'un l'autre, l'un et l'autre, l'un ou l'autre, ni l'un

ni l'autre. — *One another, each other*, are both expressed by *l'un l'autre* mas., *l'une l'autre* fem., when speaking only of two; and by *les uns les autres, les unes les autres*, when speaking of more than two.

Both is expressed by *l'un et l'autre*; *either* by *l'un ou l'autre*; and *neither* by *ni l'un ni l'autre*: this last requires *ne* before the verb.

Quiconque, qui que ce soit qui (whoever, whosoever), are said of persons.

Qui que, qui que ce soit qui or *que* (whoever, whomsoever), are said of persons; both require the verb to be in the subj. When followed by the verb, to be in the first and second person singular or plural. *Whoever, whomsoever*, are expressed by *qui que*.

Quoi que and *quoi que ce soit qui* or *que* (whatever), are used without distinction for things, and govern also the subjunctive.

Tout ce qui. — *Whatever*, signifying all that, every thing that, is expressed by *tout ce qui* and *tout ce que*, masculine and singular.

Plusieurs (many, several) is always plural, and of both genders.

Nul, aucun, pas un (none, not one) require *ne* before the verb; they make, in the feminine, *nulle, aucune, pas une*.

Tel. — *Such*, taken in an indefinite sense, is expressed by *tel*, indeclinable.

Tout (all, every thing) is masculine singular.

Observe, when the words *such* and *all* come before a substantive, they are both adjectives, and expressed as follows: *such*, by *tel, tels, telle, telles*; and *all*, by *tout, tous, toute, toutes*, according to the gender and number of the substantive to which they refer.

SECTION II.

CHAP. V.

OF THE VERB.

THE verb is a word which expresses affirmation; when I say, *Le soleil est brillant*, I affirm that the quality marked by the adjective *brillant* belongs to the sun, and the word *est*, which expresses that affirmation, is a verb. There is in reality only one verb, which is the verb *être*, for it is the only one which expresses affirmation. *Aimer, rendre, dormir, lire, recevoir*, &c., are truly verbs only because they contain in themselves the verb *être*: indeed, *aimer* means to be loving; *rendre*, to be rendering; *dormir*, to be sleeping; *lire*, to be reading.

When the verb presents itself under its simple form, under the form which is its own, as in *je suis, j'étais, je fus, je serai*, it is called Verb Substantive, for then it subsists by itself.

When it presents itself under a compound form, uniting the verb *être* and a quality which has reference to an action or to a state, it is called Verb Adjective; such are *j'étudie, j'écris, je languis*, &c., which are for *je suis étudiant, je suis écrivant, je suis languissant*.

Of the Subject.

The subject is the object of the affirmation expressed by the verb; it is the word which represents the person or the thing which does the action of the verb. It answers to the question, *qui est-ce qui?* who is it? for persons; and *qu'est-ce que?* what is it? for things: as, *J'aime Dieu, Vous honorez le*

mérite, La modestie plaît, I love God, You honour merit, Modesty pleases. Qui est-ce qui aime Dieu ? Je ou moi ; Qui est-ce qui honore le mérite ? Vous ; Qu'est-ce qui plaît ? La modestie ; therefore je, vous, and la modestie are the subjects of the verbs aimer, honorer, plaître.

Of the Regimen.

The regimen is the word which completes the idea begun by another word. When I say, *l'amour de la vertu, fidèle au roi, chérir la gloire, combattre pour l'honneur ; de la vertu* completes the idea begun by *l'amour* ; *au roi* completes the idea begun by *fidèle* ; *la gloire* the idea begun by *chérir* ; and *pour l'honneur* the idea begun by *combattre* : thus, *de la vertu, au roi, la gloire, pour l'honneur*, are the regimens of the words *amour, fidèle, chérir, combattre*. They are called regimens, on account of the kind of dominion that the word which they complete exercises over them.

Some verbs have two regimens : the regimen direct, and the regimen indirect.

The regimen direct is that which completes the signification of the verb, without the help of any other word. It answers to the question *qui ?* whom ? for persons, and *quoi ?* what ? for things : *J'estime les gens vertueux, I esteem virtuous people ; Je chéris l'étude, I love study. J'estime qui ? les gens vertueux ; Je chéris quoi ? l'étude. Les gens vertueux and l'étude* are then the direct regimens of the verbs *estimer* and *chérir*.

The indirect regimen is that which completes the signification of the verb with the help of certain words called prepositions, such as *à, de, pour, avec, dans, &c.* It answers to one of the questions *à qui ?*

to whom? *de qui?* of whom? *pour qui?* for whom? *avec qui?* with whom, &c., for persons; and to one of these, *à quoi?* to what? *de quoi?* of what? *pour quoi?* for what? *avec quoi?* with what? &c., for things. *Il parle à Pierre*, he speaks to Peter; *il répond de vous*, he answers of you, &c. *Il parle à qui? à Pierre; il répond de qui? de vous: à Pierre, de vous*, are then the indirect regimens of the verbs *parler*, *répondre*.

Of the different Sorts of Adjective Verbs.

There are five sorts of adjective verbs: the active verb, the passive verb, the neuter verb, the pronominal verb, and the impersonal verb.

The active verb expresses an action done by the subject, and has a direct regimen; *J'aime mon père*, I love my father; *J'écris une lettre*, I write a letter. A mechanical way of knowing this verb is to consider whether the word *quelqu'un*, somebody, or *quelquechose*, something, can be put after it. Thus *estimer*, *chanter*, are active verbs, because we can say *j'estime quelqu'un, je chante quelquechose*.

The passive verb is the opposite of the active verb; it expresses an action received, suffered by the subject, and is formed from the active verb, of which the regimen direct is taken to make it the subject of the passive verb: *Mon père est aimé de moi*, My father is beloved by me; *Une lettre est écrite par moi*, A letter is written by me.

The neuter verb expresses, like the active verb, an action done by the subject; but it differs from it in not having a direct regimen: *Je vais en Italie*, I am going to Italy; *Je travaille avec ardeur*, I work with ardour. It is known when it is impossible to put after it *quelqu'un* or *quelquechose*. *Je plais quel-*

qu'un, je languis quelquechose, are not said in French ; they are then neuter verbs.

The pronominal verb is conjugated with two pronouns of the same person, as, *je me, tu te, il se, elle se, nous nous, vous vous, ils se, elles se ; je me rappelle, tu te proposes, il se repent, elle se flatte, nous nous parlons, vous vous taisez, ils se louent, elles se disent*.

Some verbs are essentially pronominal, such are, *se repentir, s'abstenir, s'emparer, s'en aller* ; for *je repens, j'abstiens, j'empare* are never used.

The impersonal verb is only employed in all its tenses in the third person of the singular, and has always for its subject the vague word *il*: *il faut, il y a, il importe, il pleut*.

Of the Modifications of the Verb.

We thus call certain changes of forms or terminations which the verb assumes. These modifications are four in number, viz., the number, person, mood, and tense.

The number is the form which the verb takes to indicate its relation with unity or plurality : *je chante, nous chantons ; tu marches, vous marchez ; il finit, ils finissent*.

The person is the form which the verb takes to indicate that the subject is in the first, in the second, or in the third person : as, *j'aimai, tu aimas, il aima*.

Mood means manner ; thus the mood is the form assumed by the verb to indicate in what manner the affirmation marked by the verb is presented : *je vais, va, que j'allasse, aller*.

There are five moods, the infinitive, the indicative, the conditional, the imperative, and the subjunctive.

The infinitive presents the affirmation in a vague manner, without designation of number or person: *Il est doux de remplir ses devoirs; On peut être héros sans ravager la terre.*

The indicative presents the affirmation in a manner positive and absolute: as, *Je remplis mes devoirs, Je voyagerai.*

The conditional presents it under the idea of a condition: *Vous rempliriez vos devoirs, si vous étiez raisonnable; Je m'arrêteraïs sur la grandeur et la noblesse de sa maison, si sa vie avait moins d'éclat.*

The imperative presents it under the idea of will, command, exhortation, desire: *Remplissez vos devoirs; Aimez qu'on vous conseille, et non pas qu'on vous loue.*

The subjunctive presents it in a subordinate and dependent manner: *Je désire que vous remplissiez vos devoirs; Obéis, si tu veux qu'on t'obéisse un jour.*

The tense is the form taken by the verb, to mark what part of duration the affirmation expressed by the verb answers.

The duration admits only of the parts or periods, the instant of speech, that which precedes it, and that which follows; hence three tenses: the present, the past, and the future. These have been subdivided; there are several past, and two future tenses.

To express these different tenses, sometimes simple forms are used, as, *je marche*, I walk; *je lisais*, I was reading; and sometimes compound forms, as, *j'ai marché*, I have walked; *j'avais lu*, I had read; *je serais estimé*, I should be esteemed: hence two sorts of tenses, the simple tenses, and the compound tenses.

The simple tenses are those which borrow none of the tenses of the auxiliary verbs *avoir* and *être*, as, *je chante, je finissais, je reçus*, &c.

The compound tenses are those which are formed by means of a tense of the auxiliary verbs and the participle past of another verb : as, *j'ai chanté, j'avais fini, tu seras reçu, il était parti, &c.*

Remark.—The compound tenses take the auxiliary *avoir* —

1. In active verbs : *j'ai écrit, nous avons lu.*
2. In most neuter verbs : *j'ai dormi, il a nui.*
3. In certain impersonal verbs : *il a fallu, il a tonné.*

The compound tenses take the auxiliary *être* —

1. In passive verbs : *je suis estimé, ils seront aimés.*
2. In most impersonal verbs : *il est résulté, il est arrivé des événements.*
3. In some neuter verbs : as, *elle est tombée, tu es allé.*
4. In pronominal verbs : *je me suis flatté, ils s'étaient présentés.*

To conjugate a verb, is to write or to rehearse it with all its inflections of moods, tenses, numbers, and persons.

There are four conjugations, which are distinguished by the terminations of the infinitive present.

The first has the present of the infinitive ending in *er* ; *parler, aimer, chanter.*

The second has the present of the infinitive ending in *ir* ; *finir, sentir, ouvrir, tenir, courir.*

The third has the present of the infinitive ending in *oir* ; *recevoir, devoir.*

The fourth has the present of the infinitive ending in *re* ; *rendre, plaire, réduire, joindre, plaindre, peindre.*

We shall begin with the conjugation of the auxiliary verbs *avoir* and *être*, as they serve to conjugate all others in their compound tenses.

Conjugation of the Auxiliary Verb AVOIR, to have.

INFINITIVE.

Simple Tenses.	Compound Tenses.
PRESENT.	PAST.
Avoir, <i>to have.</i>	Avoir eu, <i>to have had.</i>

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.	PAST.
Ayant, <i>having.</i>	Ayant eu, <i>having had.</i>
	PAST.
	Eu, <i>m. eue, f. had.</i>

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.	PAST INDEFINITE, or Compound of the Present.
J'ai, <i>I have.</i>	J'ai eu, <i>I have had.</i>
tu as, <i>thou hast.</i>	tu as eu, <i>thou hast had.</i>
il, or elle a, <i>he, or she has.</i>	il a eu, <i>he has had.</i>
nous avons, <i>we have.</i>	nous avons eu, <i>we have had.</i>
vous avez, <i>you have.</i>	vous avez eu, <i>you have had.</i>
ils, or elles ont, <i>they have.</i>	ils ont eu, <i>they have had.</i>

Remark. — In the following exercises, the substantives being taken in a partitive sense, *du, de la, de l', des*, are to be used according to the gender and number of the substantive.

EXERCISE.

PRESENT. — I have pens.	Thou hast books.	He has money.
<i>plume</i>	<i>livre</i>	<i>argent</i>
She has modesty.	We have company.	You have bread and butter.
— <i>tie f.</i>	— <i>gnie f.</i>	<i>beurre m.</i>
They have honesty.	They have virtues.	
<i>m. honnêteté f. h m.</i>	<i>f. vertu</i>	

D.

*Simple Tenses.***IMPERFECT.**

J'avais,	<i>I had.</i>
tu avais,	<i>thou hadst.</i>
il avait,	<i>he had.</i>
nous avions,	<i>we had.</i>
vous aviez,	<i>you had.</i>
ils avaient,	<i>they had.</i>

PAST DEFINITE.

J'eus,	<i>I had.</i>
tu eus,	<i>thou hadst.</i>
il eut,	<i>he had.</i>
nous eûmes,	<i>we had.</i>
vous eûtes,	<i>you had.</i>
ils eurent,	<i>they had.</i>

*Compound Tenses.***PLUPERFECT, or Compound of the Imperfect.**

J'avais eu,	<i>I had had.</i>
tu avais eu,	<i>thou hadst had.</i>
il avait eu,	<i>he had had.</i>
nous avions eu,	<i>we had had.</i>
vous aviez eu,	<i>you had had.</i>
ils avaient eu,	<i>they had had.</i>

PAST ANTERIOR, or Compound of the Past Definite.

J'eus eu,	<i>I had had.</i>
tu eus eu,	<i>thou hadst had.</i>
il eut eu,	<i>he had had.</i>
nous eûmes eu,	<i>we had had.</i>
vous eûtes eu,	<i>you had had.</i>
ils eurent eu,	<i>they had had.</i>

EXERCISE.

PAST INDEFINITE. — I have had riches. Thou hast had
richesse pl.

pleasure. He has had patience. She has had sweetness. We have
plaisir m. — *f.* *douceur f.*

had apples. You have had sentiments. They have had friendship.
pomme — *m.* *amitié f.*

They have had sensibility.
f. — *lité f.*

IMPERFECT. — I had oranges. Thou hadst ambition. He had
— *f.*

wealth. She had seniority. We had pears. You had wine.
richesse pl. = *f.* *poire f.* *vin m.*

They had cares. They had graces.
m. *soin f.* —

PLUPERFECT. — I had had flowers. Thou hadst had beer. He
fleur . *bière f.*

had had cheese. We had had walnuts. You had had apricots.
fromage m. *noix* *abricot*

They had had figs. They had had medlars.
m. *figue f.* *néfle*

PAST DEFINITE. — I had cherries. Thou hadst plums. He
cerise *prune*

*Simple Tenses.**Compound Tenses.*

FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

J'aurai, *I shall or will have.*
 tu auras, *thou shalt or wilt have.*
 il aura, *he will have.*
 nous aurons, *we shall have.*
 vous aurez, *you will have.*
 ils auront, *they will have.*

J'aurai eu, *I shall have had.*
 tu auras eu, *thou wilt have had.*
 il aura eu, *he will have had.*
 nous aurons eu, *we shall have had.*
 vous aurez eu, *you will have had.*
 ils auront eu, *they will have had.*

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

PAST, or Compound of the Present.

J'aurais, *I should, could, or would have.*
 tu aurais, *thou wouldst have.*
 il aurait, *he would have.*
 nous aurions, *we should have.*
 vous auriez, *you would have.*
 ils auraient, *they would have.*

J'aurais eu, *I should have had.*
 tu aurais eu, *thou wouldst have had.*
 il aurait eu, *he would have had.*
 nous aurions eu, *we should have had.*
 vous auriez eu, *you would have had.*
 ils auraient eu, *they would have had.*

EXERCISE.

had currants. She had strawberries. We had almonds. You had
groseille fraise amande f.
 grapes. They had pine-apples. They had raspberries.
raisin m. ananas f. framboise

PAST ANTERIOR. — I had had exquisite melons. Thou hadst had
exquis 2 — 1
 ready money. She had had uncommon graces. We had had
comptant 2 1 rare 2 1
 idle scholars. You had had very ripe grapes. They had had
paresseux 2 élève 1 2 3 1
 very black ink.
2 3 encre f. 1

FUTURE ABS. — I shall have studious scholars. Thou wilt
= 2 1
 have useless cares. He will have ridiculous ideas. We will have
2 soin 1 = 2 idée 1
 horrid pains. You will have true and real pleasures. They
horrible 2 peine 1 2 3 1
 will have ambitious officers.
= 2 officier 1

Compound Tense.

SECOND CONDITIONAL PAST.

J'eusse eu, *I should have had.*
tu eusses eu, *thou wouldst have had.*
il eût eu, *he would have had.*
nous eussions eu, *we would have had.*
vous eussiez eu, *you would have had.*
ils eussent eu. *they would have had.*

IMPERATIVE.

Sing. Aie, have thou. *Plur.* Ayons, let us have.
 ayez, have (ye).

Remark.—If the adjective precedes the substantive, then *de* or *d'* only is to be used.

EXERCISE.

FUTURE ANTERIOR.—I shall have had beautiful flowers. Thou wilt have had good paper, good pens, and good ink. He will have had excellent fruit. We shall have delicious pears. You will have

m. pl.	2	1
--------	---	---

had large houses. They will have had fine clothes.
grand f. habit m.

CONDITIONAL PRESENT. — I should have precious jewels. Thou
 wouldst have good friends. He would have fine carriages. We
 should have immense treasures. You would have long conversations.
 They would have bad excuses.

Remark. — The preceding remark holds good likewise after a word expressing quantity, such as *beaucoup*, much, great deal, great many; *peu*, little, few; *plus*, more; *moins*, less; *trop*, too many, too much; *autant*, as much, &c., except, however, *bien*, much, many, which requires *du, de la, de l', des*.

CONDITIONAL PAST.—I should have a great deal of money. Thou wouldst have had many precious stones. She would have *pierre f.*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Simple Tenses.

PRESENT, or FUTURE.

Que	That
J'aie,	<i>I may have.</i>
tu aies,	<i>thou mayst have.</i>
il ait,	<i>he may have.</i>
nous ayons,	<i>we may have.</i>
vous ayez	<i>you may have.</i>
ils aient,	<i>they may have.</i>

Compound Tenses.

PAST, or Compound of the Present.

Que	That
J'aie eu,	<i>I may have had.</i>
tu aies eu,	<i>thou mayst have had.</i>
il ait eu,	<i>he may have had.</i>
nous ayons eu,	<i>we may have had.</i>
vous ayez eu,	<i>you may have had.</i>
ils aient eu,	<i>they may have had.</i>

EXERCISE.

had many new ribands. You would have had too many books.
neuf ruban m.

We should have had few attentive pupils. They would have had
élève m.

many kind friends.
bon m.

IMPERATIVE. — Have patience and indulgence. Have more
 — f. — f.
 generosity. Let us have at least gratitude and sincerity. Let us
 = *au moins* — f. = f.
 have more charity towards the poor. Have ye more complaisance,
 = *envers* *pauvre* pl. —
 attention, and politeness.
 — pl. — *tesse*

SUBJ. PRESENT. — That I may have sincere friends. That
 thou mayst have elevated sentiments. That he may have great
élevé — m.

riches. That we may have good houses and elegant furniture.
 f. — *meuble* pl.

That you may have faithful servants. That they may have more
fidèle 2 *domestique* 1

courage and magnanimity.
 — =

PAST. — That I may have had a sword, a musket, and pistols.
épée f. fusil m. pistolet
 That thou mayst have had more taste for study. That he may
goût art. étude

Simple Tenses.

IMPERFECT.

Que	That
J'eusse,	<i>I might have.</i>
tu eusses,	<i>thou mightst have.</i>
il eût,	<i>he might have.</i>
nous eussions,	<i>we might have.</i>
vous eussiez,	<i>you might have.</i>
ils eussent,	<i>they might have.</i>

Compound Tenses.

PLUPERFECT, or Compound of the Imperfect.

Que	That
J'eusse eu, <i>I might have had.</i>	
tu eusses eu, <i>thou mightst have had.</i>	
il eût eu, <i>he might have had.</i>	
nous eussions eu, <i>we might have had.</i>	
vous eussiez eu, <i>you might have had.</i>	
ils eussent eu, <i>they might have had.</i>	

The same Verb conjugated negatively.

To conjugate a verb negatively, we place *ne* before, and *pas* or *point* after it, in simple tenses ; but in the

EXERCISE.

have had more pleasure. That we may have had finer weather.
temps s.

That you may have had a very pleasant journey. That they may
bon voyage m.

have had a (more regular) conduct.

1 3 = 2

IMPERFECT. — That I might have much fruit. That thou mightst
pl.

have a knife, a spoon, and a fork. That he might have a dictionary
cuiller f. = m.

and a grammar. That we might have many respectable
= f.

acquaintances. That you might have a new hat and white
connaissance pl. chapeau m.

gloves. That they might have pretty gowns and elegant sashes.
gant m. f. robe f. ceinture f.

PLUPERFECT. — That I might have had impartial judges. That
= juge

thou mightst have had more generous enemies. That he might
 have had a better watch. That we might have had wind, rain, and
montre f.

snow. That you might have had able officers and brave soldiers.
 That they might have had the reward of their long services.
récompense f. — m.

compound tenses *ne* is placed before the auxiliary, and *pas* or *point* after it.

PRESENT.

Je n'ai pas, *I have not.*
 tu n'as pas, *thou hast not.*
 il n'a pas, *he has not.*
 nous n'avons pas, *we have not.*
 vous n'avez pas, *you have not.*
 ils n'ont pas, *they have not.*

PAST INDEFINITE.

Je n'ai pas eu, *I have not had.*
 tu n'as pas eu, *thou hast not had.*
 il n'a pas eu, *he has not had.*
 nous n'avons pas eu, *we have not had.*
 vous n'avez pas eu, *you have not had.*
 ils n'ont pas eu, *they have not had.*

Remark.—When the verb is in the negative, *de* or *d'* alone is used before the substantive, according as it begins with a consonant or a vowel.

EXERCISE.

PRESENT.—I have no good horses. They have no valuable books.
précieux

PAST INDEFINITE.—Thou hast had no generosity. You have had no pens.

IMPERFECT.—She had no simplicity of nature. They had not a beautiful park.
parc m.

PLUPERFECT.—He had had no constancy. We had had no fine houses.
= f.

PAST DEFINITE.—I had no carpets. We had no rich presents.
tapis —m.

PAST ANTERIOR.—Thou hadst had no great riches. You had had no civility.
=

FUTURE ABSOLUTE.—She shall have no fine dresses. They shall have no money.
robe f.

FUTURE ANTERIOR.—I shall not have had sufficient discretion.
assez de —

They will not have had formidable enemies.

2 ennemi pl. 1

CONDITIONAL PRESENT.—He should not have a large garden.
You should not have an able general.

habile —

PAST.—We would not have had white curtains. They would
2 rideau 1
not have had a fine nosegay.

bouquet m.

IMPERATIVE.—Have no pride. Let us not have (such ridiculous)
si — 2
ideas.

1

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.—That I may have no friends. That
you may have no great success.

succès

PAST.—That thou mayst have had no bloody war. That
sanguant 2 guerre f. 1
you may have had no great buildings.

bâtimens

IMPERFECT.—That she might have no piety or devotion. That
piété —
they might have no candour or honesty.

PLUPERFECT.—That he might have had no good advice. That
avis pl. m.
you might not have had continual fears.

= 2 crainte f. 1

The same Verb conjugated interrogatively.

To conjugate the verb interrogatively, the personal pronoun, accompanied by a hyphen (-) is placed after the verb in the simple tenses, and between the auxiliary and the participle in the compound tenses; and when the third person singular of the verb ends with a vowel, for euphony a *t* is added between it and the pronoun, preceded and followed by a hyphen, thus (-*t*-).

PRESENT.

Ai-je ?	<i>have I ?</i>
as-tu ?	<i>hast thou ?</i>
a-t-il ?	<i>has he ?</i>
avons-nous ?	<i>have we ?</i>
avez-vous ?	<i>have ye ?</i>
ont-ils ?	<i>have they ?</i>

PAST INDEFINITE.

Ai-je eu ?	<i>have I had ?</i>
as-tu eu ?	<i>hast thou had ?</i>
a-t-il eu ?	<i>has he had ?</i>
avons-nous eu ?	<i>have we had ?</i>
avez-vous eu ?	<i>have ye had ?</i>
ont-ils eu ?	<i>have they had ?</i>

EXERCISE.

INDICATIVE PRESENT. — Have I peaches? Have you a good
pêche

dog?

PAST INDEFINITE. — Hast thou had knives and forks? Has he
had wealth?

bien m. s.

IMPERFECT. — Had we good admirals? Had they prudence?

amiral

f.

PLUPERFECT. — Had she had silk, cotton, and thread? Had we

fil m.

had shoes and boots?

soulier botte

PAST DEFINITE. — Had he honesty and discretion? Had they

f.

convenient houses?

commode 2 f. 1

PAST ANTERIOR. — Had we had good advice and wise counsellors?

avis m. pl.

conseiller

Had they had excellent fruit?

m. pl.

FUTURE ABSOLUTE. — Shall I have gold, silver, and platina?

m.

m.

m.

Shall we have good wine and good meat?

viande f.

FUTURE ANTERIOR. — Will she have a prize? Will they have a
pleasant ball?

bal m.

CONDITIONAL PRESENT. — Shouldst thou have attentive boys and

4

1

2

girls? Should we have pins, needles, and scissors?

3

épingle aiguille

ciseaux

CONDITIONAL PAST. — Should he have had rare and odoriferous
 plants? Should they have had extensive fields and vast
plante f. 1 *étendu 2 champ m. 1 immense*
 meadows?
prairie f.

The same Verb interrogatively and negatively.

In sentences of this form, observe the different rules that are prefixed to the exercises on the verb; and in sentences simply interrogative, always place *ne* at the beginning of the sentences, and *pas*, or *point*, after the personal pronoun, whether in the simple or compound tenses.

PRESENT.

PAST INDEFINITE.

N'ai-je pas?	have I not?	N'ai-je pas eu?	have I	} not had?
n'as-tu pas?	hast thou not?	n'as-tu pas eu?	hast thou	
n'a-t-il pas?	has he not?	n'a-t-il pas eu?	has he	
n'avons-nous pas?	have we not?	n'avons-nous pas eu?	have we	
n'avez-vous pas?	have you not?	n'avez-vous pas eu?	have you	
n'ont-il pas?	have they not?	n'ont-ils pas eu?	have they	

EXERCISE.

INDICATIVE PRESENT.—Have I no books? Have they no ambitious
 2

relations?
parent m. 1

PAST INDEFINITE.—Has he not had happy moments? Have
heureux —
 they not had ripe oranges?
 — f.

IMPERFECT.—Had he not better examples? Had they not very
exemple m.
 unjust enemies?

PLUPERFECT. — Had I not had excellent views and ideas?
 3 art. vue f 1 f 2
 Had we not had rich clothes?
habit m.
 PAST DEFINITE. — Had I not a skilful gardener? Had you not
habile jardinier m.
 a very zealous minister?
 2 3 1

PAST ANTERIOR. — Hadst thou not had perfidious friends?
 = 2 1
 Had we not had brilliant diamonds?
 2 *diamant m.* 1

FUTURE ABSOLUTE. — Wilt thou not have more discretion?
 Will they not have a more regular conduct?
réglé 2 1

FUTURE ANTERIOR. — Shall I not have had a furnished house?
meublé 2 1
 Shall we not have had disciplined troops?
 2 1 f.

CONDITIONAL PRESENT. — Should she not have clear and just
 2 3
 ideas? Would you not have other resources?
 1 *ressource f.*

CONDITIONAL PAST. — Should he not have had great success in
succès m. pl.
 his studies? Should they not have had obliging friends?
étude *obligeant* 2 1

Conjugation of the Auxiliary Verb ÊTRE, to be.

INFINITIVE.

Simple Tenses.

Compound Tenses.

PRESENT.

PAST.

Être, to be.

Avoir été, to have been.

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.

PAST.

Étant, being.

Ayant été, having been.

PAST.
 Été, been.

INDICATIVE.

Simple Tenses.

PRESENT.

Je suis,	<i>I am.</i>
tu es,	<i>thou art.</i>
il or elle est,	<i>he or she is.</i>
nous sommes,	<i>we are.</i>
vous êtes,	<i>you are.</i>
ils or elles sont,	<i>they are.</i>

IMPERFECT.

J'étais,	<i>I was.</i>
tu étais,	<i>thou wast.</i>
il était,	<i>he was.</i>
nous étions,	<i>we were.</i>
vous étiez,	<i>you were.</i>
ils étaient,	<i>they were.</i>

Compound Tenses.

PAST INDEFINITE.

J'ai été,	<i>I have been.</i>
tu as été,	<i>thou hast been.</i>
il a été,	<i>he has been.</i>
nous avons été,	<i>we have been.</i>
vous avez été,	<i>you have been.</i>
ils ont été,	<i>they have been.</i>

PLUPERFECT.

J'avais été,	<i>I have been.</i>
tu avais été,	<i>thou hast been.</i>
il avait été,	<i>he has been.</i>
nous avions été,	<i>we have been.</i>
vous aviez été,	<i>you have been.</i>
ils avaient été,	<i>they have been.</i>

Remark.—Whenever, in interrogative sentences, a substantive is the subject, it is to be placed at the head of the sentence, adding a pronoun for the interrogation immediately after the verb; as, *Mon père est-il arrivé?* Is my father arrived?

EXERCISE.

PRESENT. — I am very sick. Thou art young. He is unhappy. She is unhappy. Are we laborious? Are you not too condescending? They are lazy.

malade *jeune* *mal-heureux*
complaisant *paresseux.*

PAST INDEFINITE. — I have been pleased. Thou hast not been rewarded. Has your brother been diligent? We have been faithful. You have been ungrateful. Have your sisters been jealous?

satisfait
récompensé
fidèle *ingrat*

IMPERFECT. — I was his intimate friend. Wast thou studious? Was he firm and courageous? Were not these men cruel? Were

—me *m.* *—*
ferme

*Simple Tenses.**Compound Tenses.*

PAST DEFINITE.

PAST ANTERIOR.

Je fus, *I was.*
 tu fus, *thou wast.*
 il fut, *he was.*
 nous fûmes, *we were.*
 vous fûtes, *you were.*
 ils furent, *they were.*

J'eus été, *I had been.*
 tu eus été, *thou hadst been.*
 il eut été, *he had been.*
 nous eûmes été, *we had been.*
 vous eûtes été, *you had been.*
 ils eurent été, *they had been.*

FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

Je serai, *I shall or will be.*
 tu seras, *thou wilt be.*
 il sera, *he will be.*
 nous serons, *we shall be.*
 vous serez, *you will be.*
 ils seront, *they will be.*

J'aurai été, *I shall or will*
 tu auras été, *thou wilt*
 il aura été, *he will*
 nous aurons été, *we shall*
 vous aurez été, *you will*
 ils auront été, *they will.*

} *have been.*

EXERCISE.

we prudent and discreet? You were very poor. Were not these
 = *discret* *pauvre pl.*
 children troublesome?
importun

PLUPERFECT.—Had I been always steady. Hadst thou been very
posé
 charitable? Had that man been benevolent? Had we not been too
bienfaisant
 impatient? You had been too slow. Had not his cousins been
lent *cousine f.*
 very industrious?
 =

PAST DEFINITE.—Was I not unhappy? Thou wast not sufficiently
assez
 prudent. Was she constant? Were we not too obstinate? You
entêté
 were too inconsistent in your behaviour. Were not the princes
inconséquent *conduite*
 ready in time?
prêt à

FUTURE ABSOLUTE.—Shall I be as learned as your brother?
savant
 Wilt thou be more prudent (for the future)? To-morrow his
à l'avenir *Demain*

CONDITIONAL.

Simple Tenses.

Compound Tenses.

PRESENT.

PAST.

Je serais	<i>I should, would,</i> <i>or could be.</i>	J'aurais été,	<i>I should, would,</i> <i>or could</i>	} <i>have been.</i>
tu serais,	<i>thou wouldst be.</i>	tu aurais été,	<i>thou wouldst</i>	
il serait,	<i>he would be.</i>	il aurait été,	<i>he would</i>	
nous serions,	<i>we should be.</i>	nous aurions été,	<i>we should</i>	
vous seriez,	<i>you would be.</i>	vous auriez été,	<i>you would</i>	
ils seraient,	<i>they would be.</i>	ils auraient été,	<i>they would</i>	

SECOND CONDITIONAL PAST.

J'eusse été.
tu eusses été.
il eût été.

nous eussions été.
vous eussiez été.
ils eussent été.

EXERCISE.

brother will be at home till (twelve o'clock). He will be a brave
chez lui jusqu'à midi
soldier. We will be faithful to our country. Will you not be
patrie
more humane and more generous? Will not your scholars be more
attentive than last month?
mois m.

FUTURE ANTERIOR. — Shall I have been too severe? Thou
will have been too obstinate. Will not your aunt have been too
opiniâtre tante
capricious? We shall have been very eager. You will have been
empressé
very dexterous. Will not your brothers have been as generous
adroit
as your father?

CONDITIONAL PRESENT. — I should be ready to start with you.
partir
Thou wouldst be very ridiculous. He would be very polite.
Should we be always incorrigible? You would not be so distrustful.
défiant
The soldiers would not be so irregular in their conduct.

IMPERATIVE.

No first Person Sing.

Sois,	<i>Be thou.</i>
soyons,	<i>let us be.</i>
soyez,	<i>be ye.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE.

*Simple Tenses.**Compound Tenses.*

PRESENT.

PAST.

Que	That	Que	That	} <i>have been.</i>
Je sois,	<i>I may or can be.</i>	J'aie été,	<i>I may or can</i>	
tu sois,	<i>thou mayst be.</i>	tu aies été,	<i>thou mayst</i>	
il soit,	<i>he may be.</i>	il ait été,	<i>he may</i>	
nous soyons,	<i>we may be.</i>	nous ayons été,	<i>we may</i>	
vous soyez,	<i>you may be.</i>	vous ayez été,	<i>you may</i>	
ils soient.	<i>they may be.</i>	ils aient été,	<i>they may</i>	

EXERCISE.

IMPERATIVE. — Be sincere and civil. Let us be reserved. Be
réserve
 (ye) economical and temperate. Be (ye) kind and indulgent.
économe sobre doux —

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT. — That I may be so impatient. That
 thou mayst not be so credulous. That he may be more careful.
 = *soigneux*
 They wish that we may be more temperate. Is it possible that
On désire sobre —
 you may be so uneasy? (It is feared) that these men may be
inquiet On craint ne
 guilty.
coupable.

PAST. — Is it possible that I should have been so hasty and so
emporté
 rash? It is not possible that thou couldst have been so unpolite.
téméraire impoli
 That she should have been so fickle. That we should have been
volage

*Simple Tenses.**Compound Tenses.***IMPERFECT.****PLUPERFECT.**

Que	That	Que	That	} <i>have been.</i>
Je fusse,	<i>I might or could be.</i>	J'eusse été,	<i>I might or could</i>	
tu fusses,	<i>thou mightst b</i>	tu eusses été,	<i>thou mightst</i>	
il fût,	<i>he might be.</i>	il eût été,	<i>he might</i>	
nous fussions,	<i>we might be.</i>	nous eussions été,	<i>we might</i>	
vous fussiez,	<i>you might be.</i>	vous eussiez été,	<i>you might</i>	
ils fussent,	<i>they might be.</i>	ils eussent été,	<i>they might</i>	

EXERCISE.

more active and industrious. That you should not have been so

diligent. That these men should have been so unreasonable.
dérailsonnable

IMPERFECT. — That I should not be careful and steady. That
posé

thou shouldst be avaricious. That this general should be cruel. It
avare

is not possible that I should be so arrogant. They wish that you
On désire

should be victorious. That our soldiers should not be so cruel.

PLUPERFECT. — That I might not have been so poor. That
thou mightst have been more grateful. That she might have
reconnaissant

been more attentive to her duty. That we might not have
devoir m. pl.

been so addicted to pleasure. They wish that you might
livré à art. plaisir m. pl.

have been more circumspect. They wish that they might have
circonspect

been more cordial.
sincère

Remark. — Adverbs, with few exceptions, must be placed after the verb in simple tenses, and between the auxiliary and the participle in compound tenses, when this adverb is only a single word.

§ I.

CONJUGATION OF ACTIVE VERBS.

First Conjugation, in ER.

INFINITIVE.

Simple Tenses.

Compound Tenses.

PRESENT.

PAST.

Aimer, to love.

Avoir aimé, to have loved.

PARTICIPLES

PRESENT.

PAST.

Aimant, *loving.*

Ayant aimé, *having loved.*

PAST. Aimé *m.*, Aimée *f.*, loved.

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

PAST INDEFINITE.

J'aime, *I love.*
tu aimes, *thou lovest.*
il aime, *he loves.*
nous aimons, *we love.*
vous aimez, *you love.*
ils aiment, *they love.*

J'ai aimé, *I have loved.*
tu as aimé, *thou hast loved.*
il a aimé, *he has loved.*
nous avons aimé, *we have loved.*
vous avez aimé, *you have loved.*
ils ont aimé, *they have loved.*

EXERCISE.

PRESENT.—I blame his rash conduct. I never play. Dost
téméraire 2 1 f. *ne joue jamais* *
 thou not irritate thy father? How much does your brother give
irriter *Combien* * *donner*
 for his board? We adore God the creator of the universe. We
pension f. * = =
 do not neglect (any thing) to please you. You always borrow,
 * *négliger* *rien* *pour* *emprunter*
 you never lend. Why do you not grant him that favour?
prêter *Pourquoi* * *accorder* = f.
 They attack the enemy.
attaquer

PAST INDEFINITE. — I have forgotten to bring your penknife.
oublier d'apporter canif
 Hast thou examined that affair? He has not yet spoken to us.
examiné encore parler
 We have protected innocence. We have spoken (a long while)
protéger art. — long-temps

Simple Tenses.

FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

J'aimerai, *I shall or will love.*
 tu aimeras, *thou wilt love.*
 il aimera, *he will love.*
 nous aimerons, *we shall love.*
 vous aimerez, *you will love.*
 ils aimeront, *they will love.*

Compound Tenses.

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

J'aurai aimé, *I shall or will*
 tu auras aimé, *thou wilt*
 il aura aimé, *he will*
 nous aurons aimé, *we shall*
 vous aurez aimé, *you will*
 ils auront aimé, *they will*

}
 have loved.

EXERCISE.

PAST DEFINITE. — I bought yesterday the works of Boileau.
acheter hier ouvrages
 Thou forgottest an essential circumstance. Having said these
oublier = 2 f. 1 dit
 words, he leaned on the hilt of his sword the hand which had
appuyer garde f. f.
 gained so many battles. We rejected his unreasonable proposals.
tant de rejeter proposition f.
 We satisfied our master by our efforts and application. Did
*contenter maître — pron. — f. **
 you consider the question such as it was proposed. They did not
considérer — f. tel qu'elle proposé
 generously reward their faithful servants.
= récompenser domestiques

PAST ANTERIOR. — I had soon prepared my letters. Thou hadst
préparé
 soon spent all thy money. Had not Cæsar soon overcome all the
dépenser César surmonter
 obstacles of his situation? We had not dined soon enough to
— m. — f. dîner 2 1 pour
 go out. Had you not very soon called your friend to your assistance?
sortir bientôt appeler — f.
 In (a very short time) our brave soldiers had dispersed the army
très peu de temps disperser
 of the rebels.
rebelle

FUTURE ABSOLUTE. — I will buy a watch the first time I go
acheter montre f. fois f. irai
 to London. I am sure thou wilt not neglect thy duty. Will the
sûr négliger devoir m.
 minister declare war against that nation? What shall we give
= m. art. à — f.

CONDITIONAL.

Simple Tenses.

Compound Tenses.

PRESENT.

PAST.

J'aimerais, <i>I should, would, or could love.</i>	J'aurais aimé, <i>I should, could, or would</i>	} <i>have loved.</i>
tu aimerais, <i>thou wouldst love.</i>	tu aurais aimé, <i>thou wouldst</i>	
il aimerait, <i>he would love.</i>	il aurait aimé, <i>he would</i>	
nous aimerions, <i>we should love.</i>	nous aurions aimé, <i>we should</i>	
vous aimeriez, <i>you would love.</i>	vous auriez aimé, <i>you should</i>	
ils aimeraient, <i>they would love.</i>	ils auraient aimé, <i>they would</i>	

SECOND CONDITIONAL PAST.

J'eusse aimé.	nous eussions aimé.
tu eusses aimé.	vous eussiez aimé.
il eût aimé.	ils eussent aimé.

EXERCISE.

him for his trouble? Next Sunday she will breakfast
peine f. Prochain 2 Dimanche 1 déjeuner
 with us. Shall we complete that long work by next month? I
achever m. pour 2 m. 1
 hope you will undeceive my sister. They will not defer
espérer que dé tromper différer
 the punishment of those robbers.
punition f. brigand m.

FUTURE ANTERIOR. — (Wait for) me. I shall have dined
Attendez

very soon. I hope that thou shalt soon have finished thy work.
bientôt que achever

Will not my mother have comforted that afflicted family? We
soulager affligé famille f.

shall have consulted our lawyer. You will have meditated your
consulter avocat méditer

answer. Will not our gallant generals have triumphed over our
réponse f. brave = triompher de
 enemies?

CONDITIONAL PRESENT. — I could lend them money if they were
prêter si

not so idle. I am sure thou wouldst marry her if she were
 paresseux. épouser était

rich. With prudence he would avoid so great a danger.
de art. — f. éviter 2 3 1 — m. 4

IMPERATIVE.

Aime,
aimons,
aimez,

*Love (thou).
let us love.
love (ye).*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Simple Tenses.

PRESENT, or FUTURE.

Que *That*
J'aime, *I may or can love.*
tu aimes, *thou mayst love.*
il aime, *he may love.*
nous aimions, *we may love.*
vous aimiez, *you may love.*
ils aiment, *they may love.*

Compound Tenses.

PAST.

Que *That*
J'aie aimé, *I may or can*
tu aies aimé, *thou mayst*
il ait aimé, *he may*
nous ayons aimé, *we may*
vous ayez aimé, *you may*
ils aient aimé, *they may*

} *have loved.*

EXERCISE.

We should humble such a ridiculous pride. Would you pay
humilier si 3 1 = 4 orgueil m. 2 payer
his debts? I do not think so. Would they not despise
*dettes * ne pas 3 penser 2 le 1 mépriser*
that bad company.
compagne f.

PAST. — Could I not have assisted those poor people? Thou
assister gens pl.
wouldst have torn his insolent letter. He would have unravelled
déchirer — = f. démêler
the clue of that intrigue. We would not have imitated his
fil m. — f. imiter
example. You would not have praised his pride and incivility.
exemple m. louer orgueil pron. = f.
Would those men have reformed their conduct?
réformer f.

IMPERATIVE. — Bridle my horse, and bring him to me.
Brider amener

Seal these letters. Sacrifice thy interest to the public
Cucheter Sacrifier intérêt m. 2
good. Let us carry those peaches to Mrs. D. Appease his
bien m. 1 porter Apaiser
anger by your submission.
colère f. soumission f.

Simple Tenses.

IMPERFECT.

Que

That

J'aimasse, *I might or could love.*tu aimasses, *thou mightst love.*il aimât, *he might love.*nous aimassions, *we might love.*vous aimassiez, *you might love.*ils aimassent, *they might love.*

Compound Tenses.

PLUPERFECT.

Que

That

J'eusse aimé, *I might or could*tu eusses aimé, *thou mightst*il eût aimé, *he might*nous eussions aimé, *we might*vous eussiez aimé, *you might*ils eussent aimé, *they might*

} have loved.

EXERCISE.

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT. — That I may give this plaything to
donner *joujou* m.your little sister. That thou mayst propose a salutary advice.
= 2 *avis* m. lThat he may admire the beauty of that landscape. That we may
paysage m.think of your misfortunes. That you may hunt in the forest.
penser à *malheur* *chasser* *forêt* f.That they may forget their poor relations.
oublier *parent* m.PAST. — That I may have exercised my talent. That thou
exercer — m.mayst have denied so evident a fact. That he may not have
nier — 3 l *fait* m. 2executed his commands. That we may have blamed a conduct so
executer = *dément*prudent and so wise. That you may have worked more diligently.
— *travailler* = *gemment*That they may not have taken their sisters to the concert.
mener — m.IMPERFECT. — That I might change my opinion. That thou
changer — f.mightst not fall into their hands. That he might reinforce his
tomber *renforcer*party. That we might begin that charming history. That you
parti m. *charmant* f.might not protect that bad man. That they might triumph
protéger *méchant*

over such great difficulties.

de *si* = f. pl.PLUPERFECT. — That I might have inspected all the troops of
troupe f.

Thus are conjugated the verbs *chanter, danser, donner, demander, sauter, frapper, parler, aborder, marcher, chercher, former, autoriser, flatter, &c.*

Observations on certain Verbs of the First Conjugation.

1. In verbs ending in *ger*, the *e* is preserved in those tenses where *g* is followed by the vowels *a* or *o*, in order to preserve to this letter its soft sound ; as, *jugeant, je mangeais, il partagea.*

2. In verbs ending in *cer*, for the same reason, a cedilla is put under *c* when followed by *a* or *o* ; as, *il menaça, nous plaçons, effaçant.*

3. Verbs in *er*, which have the final syllable of the infinitive preceded by *é* close, as in *considérer, régler*, change that *é* close into *è* open, before a mute syllable ; as in *céler, je cèle ; répéter, je répèterai.*

4. Verbs in *er*, which have the final syllable of the infinitive preceded by *e* mute, as *lever, mener*, change that *e* mute into *è* open before a mute syllable ; as, *lever, je lève, je lèverai ; semer, tu sèmes, il sèmerait, que tu sèmes.*

EXERCISE.

the garrison.	That thou mightst have profited by all	
garrison f.		<i>profiter de</i> art.
circumstances.	That he might so have thought of my affair.	
f.		<i>penser à</i> f.
That we might have contemplated the beauties of that picture.		
	<i>contempler</i>	<i>tableau m.</i>
That you would have burnt your house, to save yourself the		
	<i>brûler</i>	<i>pour vous épargner</i>
trouble to (set it in order).	That they should have struck their	
peine f. de	<i>ranger</i>	<i>frapper</i>
enemies with fear.		
	<i>de crainte</i>	

5. Verbs ending in the infinitive by *eler* or *eter*, as, *appeler, niveler, jeter, projeter*, double the consonants *l* and *t* before *e* mute: *j'appelle, tu appelleras; qu'il jette, il jetterait*. But write with one *l* or one *t*: *nous appelons, vous appelez; il jeta, ils jetèrent*.

Remark. — This observation does not apply to the verbs *céler, révéler, empiéter, végéter*, &c., as they end by *éler, éter*, and not by *eler, eter*.

6. Verbs having their present participle in *iant*, as, *priant, liant, niant*, take two *i*'s in the first and second person plural of the imperfect of the indicative, and of the present of the subjunctive; as, *nous priions, vous priiez; que nous liions, que vous liiez*, from *prier, lier*, &c.

7. Verbs having the participle present in *yant*, as *payer, ployer, appuyer*, &c., take a *y* and *i* in the first and second person plural of the imperfect of the indicative, and of the present of the subjunctive; as, *nous payions, vous payiez; que nous payions, que vous payiez*. These verbs change also *y* into *i* before *e* mute; as, *je ploie, tu essuies, ils essaient; j'appuierai, tu paierais*, &c.

8. Verbs ending in the infinitive by *éer*, as *créer, agréer*, have two *e*'s throughout the conjugation: *je crée, je créerai, nous créerons*, except before the vowels *a, i, o*: *je créai, nous créons, vous créiez*. The participle past feminine of such verbs have three *e*'s, *créée, une proposition agréée*, &c.

9. The first person singular of the present of the indicative changes *e* mute into close *é* in interrogative sentences. This remark is also applied to some verbs of the second conjugation ending in *vrir, lir, frir*; as, *aimé-je? négligé-je? parlé-je? offert-je? ouvert-je? cueillé-je?*

10. The second person singular of the present of

the indicative always ends with *s*, *tu aimes*, except some irregular verbs of the third conjugation, which take *x*.

Second Conjugation, in IR.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.

Finir, *to finish.*

PAST.

Avoir fini, *to have finished.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.

Finissant, *finishing.*

PAST.

Ayant fini, *having finished.*

PAST.

Fini *m.*, finie *f.*, *finished.*

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

Je finis,
tu finis,
il finit,
nous finissons,
vous finissez,
ils finissent,

I finish.

PAST INDEFINITE.

J'ai fini,
tu as fini,
il a fini,
nous avons fini,
vous avez fini,
ils ont fini,

I have finished.

EXERCISE.

PRESENT INDICATIVE. — I always finish my work before the
avant
 others. Dost thou succeed in thy undertaking? He chooses this
réussir entreprise f. choisir
 picture. Do we not furnish arms against ourselves? Do you not
fournir arms contre
 pity his sorrows? They cure the diseases of the body, and
compâtr à mal guérir maladie f. corps
 not those of the mind.

IMPERFECT. — I was building my house, when you demolished
 * bâtir démolir

IMPERFECT.

Je finissais, *I did finish.*
 tu finissais,
 il finissait,
 nous finissions,
 vous finissiez,
 ils finissaient,

PLUPERFECT.

J'avais fini, *I had finished.*
 tu avais fini,
 il avait fini,
 nous avions fini,
 vous aviez fini,
 ils avaient fini,

PAST DEFINITE.

Je finis, *I finished.*
 tu finis,
 il finit,
 nous finîmes,
 vous finîtes,
 ils finirent,

PAST ANTERIOR.

J'eus fini, *I had finished.*
 tu eus fini,
 il eut fini,
 nous eûmes fini,
 vous eûtes fini,
 ils eurent fini,

EXERCISE.

yours. Didst thou warn thy friend of his danger? He did build
avertir
 the fortifications of our town. We did fortify his soul against
prémunir
 the dangers of seduction. You did banish the wicked from your
 — art. — f. *bannir méchant pl.*
 society. The mountains and valleys resounded with their cries.
 = f. *retentir de cri*

PAST DEFINITE. — I often warned my cousin of the bad state of
avertir — m. *é'tat m.*
 his affairs. Thou didst disobey thy master. Did not your brother
désobéir à
 fulfil his promise? We leaped over the ditch, and seized the
remplir promesse f. franchir fossé m. saisir
 guilty. Why did you not applaud that pretty actress? They
coupable m. s. applaudir à joli
 invaded their country.
envahir pays

FUTURE ABSOLUTE. — I shall finish my work to-night. When
ce soir m.
 wilt thou banish all these thoughts from thy mind? This tree will
bannir pensée f.
 soon blossom. He will not sully the splendour of his life by an
fleurir ternir éclat m. vie f.

FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

Je finirai, *I shall finish.*
 tu finiras,
 il finira,
 nous finirons,
 vous finirez,
 ils finiront,

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

J'aurai fini, *I shall have finished.*
 tu auras fini,
 il aura fini,
 nous aurons fini,
 vous aurez fini,
 ils auront fini,

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

Je finirais, *I should finish.*
 tu finirais,
 il finirait,
 nous finirions,
 vous finiriez,
 ils finiraient,

PAST.

J'aurais fini, *I should have finished.*
 tu aurais fini,
 il aurait fini,
 nous aurions fini,
 vous auriez fini,
 ils auraient fini,

SECOND CONDITIONAL PAST.

J'eusse fini, Tu eusses fini, &c.

IMPERATIVE.

Finis, *finish thou.*
 finissons, *let us finish.*
 finissez, *finish ye.*

EXERCISE.

unworthy action. We shall succeed (in spite of) him. You will
indigne — f. réussir malgré
 enjoy good health. The soldiers will not disobey the
jour d'une santé f. désobéir à
 commands of their generals.
ordre =

CONDITIONAL PRESENT. — I would not betray your interests.
trahir

Thou wouldst enrich thy country by thy discovery. Would she
enrichir découverte f.

not blush if she acted so? We would not punish them if
rougir agir ind. 2 punir

they were diligent. You would weaken your party by your
ind. 2 — affaiblir m.

rashness. Would they act so if they reflected on the consequences
réfléchir ind. 2 — f.

of their proceedings?
procédé

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT, or FUTURE.		PAST.	
Que	That	Que	That
je finisse,	<i>I may finish.</i>	j'aie fini,	<i>I may have finished.</i>
tu finisses,		tu aies fini,	
il finisse,		il ait fini,	
nous finissions,		nous ayons fini,	
vous finissiez,		vous ayez fini,	
ils finissent,		ils aient fini,	
IMPERFECT.		PLUPERFECT.	
Que je finisse,	<i>That I might</i>	Que j'eusse fini,	<i>That I might have</i>
que tu finisses,	<i>finish.</i>	que tu eusses fini,	<i>finished.</i>
qu'il finît,		qu'il eût fini,	
que nous finissions,		que nous eussions fini,	
que vous finissiez,		que vous eussiez fini,	
qu'ils finissent,		qu'ils eussent fini,	

EXERCISE.

IMPERATIVE. — Punish thy scholars for their inattention. Let us
de —
 establish wise laws. Let us rebuild our farm. Let us reflect
établir de art. 2 loi 1 rebâtir ferme
 on what we have to do. Do not divulge your secrets to every
sur ce que faire découvrir —
 body.

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT. — That I may embellish my country-
embellir maison de
 seat. That thou mayst soften thy enemies. That he may
campagne fléchir
 never blemish his reputation. That we may not perish from hunger
flétrir périr faim
 and misery. That you may enrich your family. That they may
 never sully the glory of their brilliant exploits.
 — m.

IMPERFECT. — That I might cherish my country and friends.
pron.
 That thou mightst weaken the force of their arguments. That she
 — m.
 might soften that unfeeling heart. That we might reflect on the
adoucir insensible 2 m. 1 sur
 shortness of life. That you might refresh your memory. That
bréveté f. art. rafraîchir
 they might shudder with horror.
frémir de —

Thus are conjugated *avertir, guérir, choisir, unir, ternir, embellir, adoucir, punir, enrichir, &c.*

Third Conjugation, in OIR.

INFINITIVE.

Simple Tenses.

Compound Tenses.

PRESENT.

PAST.

Recevoir, *to receive.*

Avoir reçu, *to have received.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.

PAST.

Recevant, *receiving.*

Ayant reçu, *having received.*

PAST.

Reçu *m.*, reçue *f.*, *received.*

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

PAST INDEFINITE.

I receive.

We receive.

Je reçois,

nous recevons,

J'ai reçu,

I have received.

tu reçois,

vous recevez,

tu as reçu,

thou hast received.

il reçoit,

ils reçoivent.

il a reçu,

he has received.

EXERCISE.

INDICATIVE PRESENT. — I entertain great hopes from his
concevoir de *espérance f.*
 conduct. Thou perceivest now how that has happened.
f. apercevoir maintenant comment est arrivé
 He perceives the summit of the Alps covered with perpetual
sommet m. Alpes pl. couvert de éternel 2
 snow. We owe him a large sum of money. You entertain
neige f. pl. 1 devoir gros somme f. concevoir
 a hatred for persons who deserve our friendship. You
de art. haine f. de art. = mériter amitié
 owe ten pounds to your tailor. They perceive the masts of the
livre tailleur mât
 ships.

IMPERFECT.

I did receive. *We did receive.*
 Je recevais, nous recevions,
 tu recevais, vous receviez,
 il recevait, ils recevaient.

PLUPERFECT.

I had received.
 J'avais reçu, *I had received.*
 tu avais reçu,
 il avait reçu, &c.

PAST DEFINITE.

I received.
 Je reçus,
 tu reçus,
 il reçut,
 nous reçûmes,
 vous reçûtes,
 ils reçurent,

PAST ANTERIOR.

I had received.
 J'eus reçu,
 tu eus reçu,
 il eut reçu,
 nous eûmes reçu,
 vous eûtes reçu,
 ils eurent reçu,

FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

I shall receive. *We shall receive.*
 Je recevrai, nous recevrons,
 tu recevras, vous recevrez,
 il recevra, ils recevront.

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

I shall have received.
 J'aura reçu, *I shall have received.*
 tu auras reçu,
 il aura reçu, &c.

EXERCISE.

IMPERFECT. — Did not your brother receive that money last
 Thursday? I did receive great attentions. Didst thou owe
 jeudi 1 de — devoir
 him more? We received their compliments with contempt. Did
 mépris
 you not owe him two thousand pounds? They received his
 tiresome visits because they were obliged (to do so).
 ennuyeux art. ind. 2. 2 3 y 1

PAST DEFINITE. — I received a visit from your sister. Didst
 thou receive great civilities in his family? He received, yesterday,
 with great pleasure, the books you sent him. We
 que envoyer ind. 3. 2 lui 1
 conceived a great horror for his conduct. You did not receive your
 income. Those tyrants did not conceive all the blackness of their
 revenu pl. tyrans noirceur f.
 crimes.

FUTURE ABSOLUTE. — I shall still owe you eighty pounds, when
 I shall have paid you twenty. Wilt thou receive a letter from
 1 ind. 8. 3 2
 France? He will owe me two hundred pounds at the death of his
 2 1 mort f.
 mother. We will entertain a bad opinion of you if you persist in
 f. persister ind. 1 à

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

*I should receive.**We should receive.*Je recevrais,
tu recevrais,
il recevrait,nous recevriions,
vous recevriez,
ils recevraient.

PAST.

*J'aurais reçu,**I should have received.*tu aurais reçu,
il aurait reçu, &c.

IMPERATIVE.

Reçois,
recevons,
recevez,*Receive thou.
let us receive.
receive ye.*

EXERCISE.

frequenting such people. I hope you will receive all my letters
fréquenter de gens f. pl. que
 during my absence. Will they conceive a new project?
f.

CONDITIONAL PRESENT.—I would receive his advice. Thou
 shouldst receive that man more cordially. She should write to her
devoir inf. l. devoir écrire
 brother. We should receive your friends and theirs. You ought
devoir
 to write your exercises more carefully. They would receive your
 *
 presents with joy.

IMPERATIVE.—Receive this small present as a token of my
marque f.
 friendship. Receive my thanks for all thy kindness. Let us
remercement bonté f. pl.
 conceive the importance of our duties. Receive that stranger with
devoir m. étranger
 affection. Do not deceive your friends.

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.—That I may receive this mark of your
marque f.
 confidence and esteem. That thou mayst perceive the defects of
confiance pron. défaut
 that work. That he may owe nothing. That we may conceive
2 ne l rien 3
 an idea which perhaps the author himself does not conceive. That
*que auteur m. **

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT, or FUTURE.

That I may receive.
 Que je reçoive, que nous recevions,
 que tu reçoives, que vous receviez,
 qu'il recoive, qu'ils reçoivent.

PAST.

That I may have received.
 Que j'aie reçu,
 que tu aies reçu,
 qu'il ait reçu, &c.

IMPERFECT.

That I might receive.
 Que je reçusse, que nous reçussions,
 que tu reçusses, que vous reçussiez,
 qu'il reçût, qu'ils reçussent.

PLUPERFECT.

That I might have received.
 Que j'eusse reçu,
 que tu eusses reçu,
 qu'il eût reçu, &c.

EXERCISE.

you may not collect unjust taxes. That they may receive
percevoir de art. 2 — 1
 their company with cordiality.

IMPERFECT. — That I might conceive the horror of his condition.
 h m. f.

That thou mightst receive the interest of that money. That he
 might not deceive his friends by fine promises. That we might
promesse

receive magnificent presents. That you might conceive the
de = que

depth of his plan. That they might perceive the castle
profondeur f. m.

(from such a distance).
de si loin

Remarks.—In verbs ending in *cevoir*, the *c*, to preserve its soft sound, takes a cedilla when followed by *o* or *u*.

Devoir and *redevoir* take a circumflex accent in participle masculine singular: *dû* and *redû*.

Conjugate like *recevoir* the following: *apercevoir*, *concevoir*, *percevoir*, *devoir*, *redevoir*, and *décevoir*.

Fourth Conjugation, in RE.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.

Rendre, *to render.*

PAST.

Avoir rendu, *to have rendered.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.

Rendant, *rendering.*

PAST.

Ayant rendu, *having rendered.*

PAST.

Rendu *m.*, rendue *f.*, *rendered.*

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

I render.
Je rends,
tu rends,
il rend,*We render.*
nous rendons,
vous rendez,
ils rendent.

PAST INDEFINITE.

I have rendered.
J'ai rendu,
tu as rendu,
il a rendu, &c.

IMPERFECT.

I did render.
Je rendais,
tu rendais,
il rendait,*We did render.*
nous rendions,
vous rendiez,
ils rendaient.

PLUPERFECT.

I had rendered.
J'avais rendu,
tu avais rendu,
il avait rendu, &c.

EXERCISE.

INDICATIVE PRESENT.—I do not mean to wrong him.
*prétendre * faire tort 2 lui 1*
 Thou suspendest thy work. He waits his return with impa-
suspendre retour m.
 tience. We hear a great noise in the street. You defend
entendre bruit m. rue f.
 your country. They sell bad fruit. Do they unbend their bows?
pl. détendre arc

IMPERFECT.—Did I not interrupt him while he was answering
interrompre pendant que ind. 2

PAST DEFINITE.

<i>I rendered.</i>	<i>We rendered.</i>
<i>Je rendis,</i>	<i>nous rendîmes,</i>
<i>tu rendis,</i>	<i>vous rendîtes,</i>
<i>il rendit,</i>	<i>ils rendirent.</i>

PAST ANTERIOR.

<i>I had rendered.</i>
<i>J'eus rendu,</i>
<i>tu eus rendu,</i>
<i>il eut rendu, &c.</i>

FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

<i>I shall render.</i>	
<i>Je rendrai,</i>	<i>nous rendrons,</i>
<i>tu rendras,</i>	<i>vous rendrez,</i>
<i>il rendra,</i>	<i>ils rendront.</i>

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

<i>I shall have rendered.</i>
<i>J'aurai rendu,</i>
<i>tu auras rendu,</i>
<i>il aura rendu, &c.</i>

EXERCISE.

them? Thou didst not spread this linen upon the grass. That dog
étendre toile herbe
 did bite everybody. We did spread terror (everywhere). Were
mordre répandre art. partout
 you not losing your time? Did they corrupt our manners?
corrompre mœurs

PAST DEFINITE. — I waited in vain the arrival of the mail. I
=vée malle f.
 sold my house to your uncle. (As soon as) I had received my
Dès que
 money, I returned them what they had lent me. The assembly sus-
rendre ind. 6
 pended the sitting. We melted the lead. Did not the children
séance f. plomb m.
 (come down) at the first summons?
descendre à ordre m. s.

FUTURE ABSOLUTE. — I will answer you in few words. I shall
répondre en peu de
 shear my flock in the month of May. We shall lose
tondre troupeau m. à Mai perdre
 twenty-six pounds. You will sell your house for fourteen hundred
 and eighty pounds. They will confound his pride.
confondre

CONDITIONAL PRESENT. — I would render justice to everybody.
 Thou wouldst defend an honest man (at the hazard) of thy life.
au risque
 Would he suspend the election? Should we sell our liberty?

CONDITIONAL

PRESENT.

I should render.

Je rendrais, nous rendrions,
tu rendrais, vous rendriez,
il rendrait, ils rendraient.

PAST.

I should have rendered.

**J'aurais rendu,
tu aurais rendu,
il aurait rendu, &c.**

IMPERATIVE.

**Rends,
rendons,
rendez,**

*Render thou.
let us render.
'render ye.*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT, or FUTURE.

That I may render.

Que je rende, que nous rendions,
que tu rendes, que vous rendiez,
qu'il rende, qu'ils rendent.

PAST.

That I may have rendered.

Que j'aie rendu,
que tu aies rendu,
qu'il ait rendu, &c.

EXERCISE.

(How much) would you sell it to him? They would condescend
combien 3 1 2 *condescendre*
 to his desires.
désir

IMPERATIVE.—Hear their justification. Let us expect our
8. *attendre*

happiness from ourselves. Answer their letter. Let us give in
bonheur *Répondre à* *rendre*

our accounts faithfully. Hear the voice of the Lord. Ye
compte *pl.* *Seigneur* *

sovereigns, make the people happy.
souverain rendre pl.

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT. — Speak loud, that I may hear you. That thou mayst wait his return with patience. That he may not waste his time about trifles. That we may not confound these

perdre à des bagatelles

notions one with another. That they may sell their corn at a
l'une l'autre *blé à*

fair price.
juste 2 1

IMPERFECT.

That I might render.

Que je rendisse, que nous rendissions,
 que tu rendisses, que vous rendissiez,
 qu'il rendit, qu'ils rendissent.

PLUPERFECT.

That I might have rendered.

Que j'eusse rendu,
 que tu eusses rendu,
 qu'il eût rendu, &c.

EXERCISE.

IMPERFECT.—That I might diffuse joy among these children.
répandre art. parmi
 That thou mightst hear the music of the new opera. That he
 — m.
 might recompose a work so full of errors. That we might suspend
refondre
 our judgment. That you might defend your absent friends.
jugement
 That they might throw the graces of expression into their
répandre — art. — dans
 speeches.
discours

Conjugate in the same manner, *attendre, entendre, suspendre, vendre, défendre, confondre, répandre, tondre, mordre, tordre, &c.*

[Upper First.]

§ II.

CONJUGATION OF THE PASSIVE VERBS.

There is but one mode of conjugating passive verbs; it is by adding to the verb *être*, through all the moods and tenses, the participle past of the verb active, which then must agree in gender and number with the subject.

Passive verbs require the prepositions *de* or *par*,

generally *de* after those verbs which express a moral action, and *par* after those which express a physical one.

EXAMPLES.

Un enfant sage est aimé de tout le monde. La poudre à canon fut inventée par Berthold Schwartz.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.

M. F.
Etre aimé, or aimée, *to be loved.*

PAST.

M. F.
Avoir été aimé, or aimée.

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.

Etant aimé, or aimée, *being loved.*

PAST.

Ayant été aimé, or aimée.

PAST.

Été aimé, or aimée.

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

I am loved.
Je suis aimé, or aimée.
tu es aimé.
il est aimé.
nous sommes aimés, or aimées.
vous êtes aimés.
ils sont aimés.

PAST INDEFINITE.

I have been loved.
J'ai été aimé, or aimée.
tu as été aimé.
ils a été aimé.
nous avons été aimés, or aimées.
vous avez été aimés.
ils ont été aimés.

IMPERFECT.

I was loved.
J'étais aimé. Nous étions aimés.

PLUPERFECT.

I had been loved.
J'avais été aimé. Nous avions été aimé.

PAST DEFINITE.

I was loved.
Je fus aimé. Nous fûmes aimés.

PAST ANTERIOR.

I had been loved.
J'eus été aimé. Nous eûmes été aimés.

FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

*I shall be loved.*Je serai aimé. Nous serons
aimés.

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

*I shall have been loved.*J'aurai été aimé. Nous aurons
été aimés.

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

*I should be loved.*Je serais aimé. Nous serions
aimés.

PAST.

*I should have been loved.*J'aurais été aimé. Nous aurions
été aimés.

SECOND CONDITIONAL PAST.

J'eusse été aimé.

IMPERATIVE.

Sois aimé,
soyons aimés,
soyez aimés,*Be thou loved.
let us be loved.
be ye loved.*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT, or FUTURE.

*That I may be loved.*Que je sois aimé. Que nous soy-
ons aimés.

PAST.

*That I may have been loved.*Que j'aie été aimé. Que nous ayons
été aimés.

IMPERFECT.

*That I might be loved.*Que je fusse aimé. Que nous fus-
sions aimés.

PLUPERFECT.

*That I might have been loved.*Que j'eusse été aimé. Que nous eussions
été aimés.

EXERCISE ON THE PASSIVE VERBS.

My brother is loved. My sisters were loved and esteemed. My
ind. 2brothers have been punished. Your mother and sister will be
received kindly. These houses have been sold. These children
*avec bonté*are (too much) praised. He is not expected. Are they not
*trop ouer attendre*expected? Had not those actors been applauded? Will not a
ind. 6polite, mild, and learned young lady be admired by every body?
demoiselle

How many countries, unknown to the ancients, have been
que de *inconnu*
 discovered by modern navigators? You will only be beloved,
découvert art. 2 = 1 *ne*
 esteemed, and courted by men (in proportion as) you join
rechercher *que* *autant que* *joindrez*
 the qualities of the heart to those of the mind. The battle of
 = f. f. pl.
 Dunbar was fought on the third of September, one thousand six
 — ind. 3 *livrer* * =
 hundred and fifty. Napoleon Bonaparte was crowned Emperor
 ind. 3 *couronner*
 of the French by Pope Pius the Seventh on the second of
 art. *Pie* *
 December, one thousand eight hundred and four.
 =

CONJUGATION OF THE NEUTER VERBS.

Neuter verbs are those which are neither active nor passive. Some express a state; as, *je languis*, I languish; *j'existe*, I exist; *je dors*, I sleep. Others are followed by a substantive, as regimen; but that substantive is always governed by a preposition, chiefly *à* and *de*.

The simple tenses of the neuter verbs are in every respect conjugated according to the models of the four regular conjugations. With respect to their compound tenses, some, such as *succéder*, *paraître*, *bondir*, take the auxiliary *avoir*; others take *être*, as *tomber*, *partir*, *mourir*, *naître*, &c.

Some neuter verbs require *à*, others *de*, before their regimen.

EXAMPLES.

Vous plaisez à cette dame.
Il médit de tout le monde.

You please that lady.
He slanders every body.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.

Partir, to set out.

PAST.

Être parti, or partie.

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.

Partant.

PAST.

Étant parti, or partie.

PART.

Parti^m, partie^f.

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

Je pars. nous partons.
 tu pars. vous partez.
 il part. ils partent.

PAST INDEFINITE.

Je suis parti, nous sommes
 or partie. partis.
 tu es parti. vous êtes partis.
 il est parti. ils sont partis, or
 elles sont parties.

IMPERFECT.

Je partais. Nous partions. J'étais parti. Nous étions partis.

PLUPERFECT.

PAST DEFINITE.

Je partis. Nous partîmes. Je fus parti. Nous fûmes partis.

PAST ANTERIOR.

FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

Je partirai. Nous partirons. Je serai parti. Nous serons partis.

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

Je partirais. Nous partirions. Je serais parti. Nous serions partis.

PAST.

SECOND CONDITIONAL PAST.

Je fusse parti. Nous fussions partis.

IMPERATIVE.

2^d. pers. sing. Pars.
 1st pers. pl. partons.
 2^d. pers. pl. partez.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT, or FUTURE.

PAST.

Que je parte. Que nous partions. Que je sois parti. Que nous soyons partis.

IMPERFECT.

PLUPERFECT.

Que je partis. Que nous partis-
sions. Que je fusse parti. Que nous fus-
sions partis.

Remark. — The participle past of those neuter verbs which take *être* for auxiliary, agrees in gender and number with the subject of the verb.

EXERCISE ON THE NEUTER VERBS.

The ancient philosophers enjoyed great consideration. Have
= m. *jour de une* f.
you thought of my affair? I (am dependant on) my uncle. They
dépendre de
have escaped the danger. He fell from his horse, but happily
échapper à ind. 4 *
he received only a slight contusion on the knee. This sentiment
ind. 4. *ne que léger* f. à *genou* m.
has pleased the king and all the nation. His work has pleased
plu à à
every body, because it unites to real utility the charms
à *une* 2 = f. 1 *agrément* m. pl.
of style, and the beauties of sentiment. Every kind of excess
art. m. sing. art. pl.
(is hurtful) to health. Our misfortunes have sprung from our
nuit art. *santé* f. *malheur* m. *sont nés*
dissensions. Socrates did not applaud the follies of young
Socrate *applaudir à* art.
Alcibiades. Do not insult the misery even of an enemy. Think
Alcibiade à *même*
of me.
à

Conjugate in the same manner the verbs *arriver*,
tomber, *aller*, *déchoir*, *mourir*, *naître*, *sortir*, *venir*,
devenir, *revenir*, *parvenir*, &c.

The following neuter verbs require the preposition *à* after them : —

applaudir à,	to applaud.	penser à,	to think of.
compâtrer à,	to pity.	plaire à,	to please.
consentir à,	to consent.	répondre à,	to answer.
contrevenir à,	to infringe.	renoncier à,	to renounce.
contribuer à,	to contribute.	rémédier à,	to remedy.
déplaire à,	to displease.	ressembler à,	to resemble.
désobéir à,	to disobey.	résister à,	to resist.
nuire à,	to hurt.	songer à,	to think of.
obéir à,	to obey.	succéder à,	to succeed.
parvenir à,	to attain.	survivre à,	to survive.

The following require the preposition *de* : —

jouir de,	to enjoy.	dépendre de,	to depend on.
mourir de,	to die of.	médire de,	to slander.
se tromper de,	to mistake.	se méfier de,	to distrust.
se repentir de,	to repent.	se plaindre de,	to complain of.
se moquer de,	to laugh at.	avoir besoin de,	to want, &c.

The following, *insulter*, to insult ; *persuader*, to persuade ; *rêver*, to dream ; *travailler*, to work, are sometimes used without a preposition ; they, however, generally require *à*.

OF THE PRONOMINAL VERBS.

Pronominal or reflective verbs are those which are conjugated through their moods and tenses with a double personal pronoun of the same person, one the subject, and the other the regimen of the verb.

In their simple tenses, they follow the conjugation to which they belong by their termination. In the compound they take the auxiliary *être*, which is put in the same tense as the verb *avoir*, in the compound tenses of the four regular conjugations.

INFINITIVE.

*Simple Tenses.**Compound Tenses.*

PRESENT.

PAST.

Se flatter, *to flatter oneself.* S'être flatté, or flattée, *to have flattered oneself.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.

PAST.

Se flattant, *flattering oneself.* S'étant flatté, or flattée, *having flattered oneself.*

PAST.

Flatté *m.*, flattée *f.*, *flattered.*

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

PAST INDEFINITE.

I flatter myself.

I have flattered myself.

Je me flatte.

Je me suis flatté, or flattée.

tu te flattes.

tu t'es flatté.

il or elle se flatte.

il or elle s'est flatté, or flattée.

nous nous flattons.

nous nous sommes flattés, or flattées.

vous vous flattez.

vous vous êtes flattés.

ils se flattent.

ils se sont flattés.

EXERCISE.

INDICATIVE PRESENT. — I generally rise early. Dost thou apply to study? He stoops down (to pick up) his glove. We grow cold (in the open air). You (go to bed) before your brother. They mean to travel in the spring.

se lever de bonne heure
s'appliquer art. *se baisser pour ramasser*
gant m. se refroidir à l'air se coucher avant
se proposer de voyager à m.

PAST INDEFINITE. — I have inquired after you and your sister. Didst thou not lose thyself in the wood? She has (fainted away). We have trusted to your father. He says you have not been

s'informer de pr.
s'égarer s'évanouir
se fier dit que se porter

IMPERFECT.

I did flatter myself.

Je me flattais.
tu te flattais.
il se flattait.
nous nous flattions.
vous vous flattiez.
ils se flattaient.

PLUPERFECT.

I had flattered myself.

Je m'étais flatté, or flattée.
tu t'étais
il s'était
nous nous étions flattés, or flattées.
vous vous étiez
ils s'étaient

PAST DEFINITE.

I flattered myself.

Je me flattai.
tu te flattas.
il se flatta.
nous nous flattâmes.
vous vous flattâtes.
ils se flattèrent.

PAST ANTERIOR.

I had flattered myself.

Je me fus flatté, or flattée.
tu te fus
il se fut
nous nous fûmes flattés, or flattées.
vous vous fûtes
ils se furent

EXERCISE.

well while you were in the country. Have they not laughed
pendant que à campagne f. se moquer
at me?
de

IMPERFECT. — I was riding on horseback in the park when I
se promener à cheval lorsque
met him. Didst thou not imagine that he would succeed so
ind. 4 *s'imaginer réussir*
well? Did he not make himself more miserable every day? We
se rendre malheureux
did not enrich ourselves at his expense. Did you rise in summer
s'enrichir dépens pl. se lever en
at five o'clock? They perceived you were laughing at them.
heures s'apercevoir que se moquer de

PLUPERFECT. — I had flattered myself that I would receive some
good news from Berlin. Had he not intended to write to him?
nouvelle f. pl. se proposer de écrire
Didst thou not confide too inconsiderately in that man? We
se confier légèrement à
had perceived the trick, but it was too late. Had you not
s'apercevoir de tour m. tard
(found fault) without good ground? These flowers have
se formaliser raison f. pl.
(faded away).
se flétrir

FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

I shall flatter myself.
 Je me flatterai.
 tu te flatteras.
 il se flattera.
 nous nous flatterons.
 vous vous flatterez.
 ils se flatteront.

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

I shall have flattered myself.
 Je me serai flatté, or flattée.
 tu te seras
 il se sera
 nous nous serons flattés, or flattées.
 vous vous serez
 ils se seront

EXERCISE.

PAST DEFINITE. — I nursed myself (too much). Why didst
s'écouter trop pourquoi
 thou despair without reason? He tormented himself about
se désespérer se torturer pour
 that affair. We were much amused last night. Did you applaud
s'amuser hier soir s'applaudir
 yourselves of your follies? Our troops behaved very well in
folie troupe se comporter
 that action.

PAST ANTERIOR. — When I had walked enough, I (sat down)
lorsque se promener m'assis
 at the foot of a tree. When thou hadst amused thyself sufficiently
s'amuser
 at his expense, didst thou not leave him quiet? When he had
 m. pl. *laisser ind. 3 tranquille*
 rejoiced sufficiently, he (went away). (As soon as) we discovered
se réjouir s'en alla Dès que s'apercevoir
 that they sought to deceive us, (we were) on our guard.
on chercher ind. 2 tromper nous nous tinmes f. pl.
 What did you when you saw yourselves thus forsaken.
*fités se trouver * abandonné pl.*
 When they had dressed themselves, they (set out).
*s'habiller * partir ind. 3*

FUTURE ABSOLUTE. — I shall seize upon his fortune. Thou wilt
s'emparer de f.
 ruin thyself if thou continuest to gamble. Will he not perceive
*se ruiner * continuer jouer s'apercevoir*
 it when he comes into the room? We will grow rich by
en entrer ind. 7 dans chambre f. s'enrichir
 our industry. We shall (grow bold). Will you betray yourself?
= f. s'enhardir se trahir
 The troops will surrender if they are not relieved.
se rendre secours f. pl.

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

I should flatter myself.

Je me flatterais.

tu te flatterais.

il se flatterait.

nous nous flatterions.

vous vous flatteriez.

ils se flatteraient.

PAST.

I should have flattered myself.

Je me serais flatté, or flattée.

tu te serais

il se serait

nous nous serions flattés, or flattées.

vous vous seriez

ils se seraient

SECOND CONDITIONAL PAST.

Je me fusse flatté, or flattée.

tu te fusses

il se fût

nous nous fussions flattés, or flattées.

vous vous fussiez

ils se fussent

EXERCISE.

FUTURE ANTERIOR. — When I have walked five or six minutes
ind. 8in the garden I shall rest myself. Wilt thou not have degraded
se reposer * *s'avilir*thyself in his eyes? He will have devoted himself to the happiness
* *à* *se dévouer* *of his friends. You will have fancied that he was right. We
s'imaginer *avait raison*shall not have fatigued ourselves. They will have (been proud) of
se fatiguer * *s'enorgueillir*this trifling advantage.
*faible avantage m.*CONDITIONAL PRESENT. — If I were in your place I would not
ind. 2 *à**vex* myself. Thou wouldst (grow rich) if thou wert in-
se tourmenter * *s'enrichir* ind. 2dustrious. He would interfere in that affair. We would embark
se mêler de *s'embarquer*(this day) if the weather (would permit). Why would you expose
aujourd'hui *temps* *permettait* *s'exposer*yourselves to their fury? They would agree ver^w well if they
* *fureur* *s'accorder*were not so proud.
ind. 2 *fier*CONDITIONAL PAST. — I should have degraded myself in the
se dégrader *

IMPERATIVE.

NEGATIVE.

Flatte-tu, *Flatter thyself.*
 flattons-nous, *let us flatter ourselves.*
 flattez-vous, *flatter yourselves.*

Ne te flatte pas.
 ne nous flattons pas.
 ne vous flattez pas.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT, or FUTURE.

That I may flatter myself.
 Que je me flatte.
 Que tu te flattes.
 Qu'il se flatte.
 Que nous nous flattions.
 Que vous vous flattiez.
 Qu'ils se flattent.

PAST.

That I may have flattered myself.
 Que je me sois flatté, or flattée.
 Que tu te sois
 Qu'il se soit
 Que nous nous soyons flattés, or flattées.
 Que vous vous soyez
 Qu'ils se soient

EXERCISE.

public opinion if I had acted so. Thou wouldst have
 2 — f. 1 agir ind. 6 ainsi
 (been drowned). He would have devoted himself entirely to the
 se noyer se dévouer *
 service of his country. We would have walked this morning in
 — m. pays m.
 the park. You would never have (fallen out) for so (small a matter).
 se brouiller peu de chose
 Would our sailors have behaved with more resolution?
 marins se comporter —

IMPERATIVE. — Rest thyself, my friend. Get up. I give
 se reposer * se lever
 thee leave to (go out), but do not overheat thyself. Let us
 permission de sortir s'échauffer *
 endeavour to please our master. Let us amuse ourselves in the
 s'efforcer de à *
 garden. Do not trust his promises. Do not fatigue yourself too
 se fier à promesse se fatiguer *
 much.

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT. — I must apply to the study of the
 il faut que s'appliquer
 French language. That thou mayst perceive his designs. He
 2 langue f. 1 s'apercevoir de dessein

IMPERFECT.

That I might flatter myself.
 Que je me flattasse.
 Que tu te flattasses.
 Qu'il se flattât.
 Que nous nous flattassions.
 Que vous vous flattassiez.
 Qu'ils se flattassent.

PLUPERFECT.

That I might have flattered myself.
 Que je me fusse flatté, or flattée.
 Que tu te fusses
 Qu'il se fût
 Que nous nous fussions flattés, or flattées.
 Que vous vous fussiez
 Qu'ils se fussent

EXERCISE.

must rise at an earlier hour. It is essential that we (may take)
que de meilleur heure f. = se rendre
 an exact account of our actions. We wish that you (may be)
2 compte m. l. — souhaiter se porter
 better. They wish that you may not (be employed) about trifles.
mieux on s'occuper de bagatelle
 I fear lest they may (go out) of the right way.
crains que se détourner droit chemin

PAST. — That I may have (been deceived) so grossly. That she
se tromper
 may have decided to stay. That we may have (had relaxation)
se décider rester se délasser
 from the fatigue of the journey. We wonder that your brothers
— f. voyage m. on s'étonne
 may have exposed themselves so rashly.
*s'exposer **

IMPERFECT. — They wished that I might yield to his reasons.
on voulait se rendre raison
 They required that thou mightst decide immediately. They wished
on exigeait se décider on voudrait
 that he might not ruin himself. Was it necessary that we might
*se ruiner **
 (be degraded) in our own eyes? That you might (be proud) of
s'avilir à propre s'enorgueillir
 your success. Did they not wish them (to make more
on désirer ind. 2 que ils se hâter d'a-
 haste)?
vantage

PLUPERFECT. — Could they have wished that I might have
voulu

meddled with his affairs? Would you have wished that he should
se mêler de *voulu*
 have ruined himself in the opinion of his friends? They would
se perdre *
 not have wished that we might have revenged ourselves. We had
se venger *
 feared that they might have lost themselves in the forest.
craint *s'égarer* *

Conjugate in the same manner the verbs *s'estimer*,
se repentir, *se promener*, *se résoudre*, *se plaindre*, *se*
reconnaître, *s'écrier*, *s'entendre*, *s'attendre*, *s'enrhumer*,
se tenir, *s'apercevoir*, &c.

Pronominal verbs are conjugated negatively and
 interrogatively, like the regular conjugations.

NEGATIVELY.

<i>Present.</i>	Je ne me flatte pas. Nous ne nous flattons pas.
<i>Past Indef.</i>	Je ne me suis pas flatté. Nous ne nous sommes pas flattés.

INTERROGATIVELY.

<i>Present.</i>	Me flatté-je ? nous flattons-nous ?
<i>Past Indef.</i>	Me suis-je flatté ? nous sommes-nous flattés ?

NEGATIVELY AND INTERROGATIVELY.

<i>Present.</i>	Ne me flatté-je pas ? ne nous flattons-nous pas ?
<i>Past Indef.</i>	ne me suis-je pas flatté ? ne nous sommes-nous pas flattés.

OF THE IMPERSONAL VERBS.

The impersonal verbs are so called, because they
 are used only in the third person singular. They

follow the inflections of the conjugation to which they belong.

Observe that in those verbs *il* has no relation to a substantive, as may be seen by the impossibility of substituting a noun in its place.

INFINITIVE PRESENT.	PARTICIPLE PRESENT.	PAST.
Pleuv ^{oir} , <i>to rain.</i>	pleuv ^{ant} , <i>raining.</i>	plu, <i>rained.</i>

INDICATIVE.

<i>Present,</i>	<i>il pleut.</i>	<i>Past indefinite,</i>	<i>il a plu.</i>
<i>Imperfect,</i>	<i>il pleuvait.</i>	<i>Pluperfect,</i>	<i>il avait plu.</i>
<i>Past definite,</i>	<i>il plut.</i>	<i>Past anterior,</i>	<i>il eut plu.</i>
<i>Future absolute,</i>	<i>il pleuvra.</i>	<i>Future anterior,</i>	<i>il aura plu.</i>
<i>Conditional present,</i>	<i>il pleuvrait.</i>	<i>Conditional past,</i>	<i>il aurait plu.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>Present,</i>	<i>qu'il pleuve.</i>	<i>Past,</i>	<i>qu'il ait plu.</i>
<i>Imperfect,</i>	<i>qu'il plût.</i>	<i>Pluperfect,</i>	<i>qu'il eût plu.</i>

Conjugate in the same manner,

<i>il neige,</i>	<i>it snows.</i>	<i>il importe,</i>	<i>it matters, concerns.</i>
<i>il grêle,</i>	<i>it hails.</i>	<i>il semble,</i>	<i>it seems.</i>
<i>il tonne,</i>	<i>it thunders.</i>	<i>il paraît,</i>	<i>it appears.</i>
<i>il éclaire,</i>	<i>it lightens.</i>	<i>il suffit que,</i>	<i>it suffices.</i>
<i>il gèle,</i>	<i>it freezes.</i>	<i>il convient,</i>	<i>it becomes.</i>
<i>il dégèle,</i>	<i>it thaws.</i>	<i>il s'en suit que,</i>	<i>it follows.</i>
<i>il arrive.</i>	<i>it happens.</i>	<i>il est à propos,</i>	<i>it is proper.</i>
<i>il sied,</i>	<i>it is becoming.</i>	<i>il faut,</i>	<i>it is necessary.</i>
<i>il mésied,</i>	<i>it is unbecoming.</i>	<i>il y a,</i>	<i>there is or are.</i>

EXERCISE.

Does it rain? It rained just now, but it does not rain at present.
 ind. 2 *tout-à-l'heure* *maintenant*
 It does not freeze. I advise you not to (go out) this morning. I think
sortir

it will soon rain. It hailed this afternoon, and it will certainly
 que ind. 2 *après-midi m.*
 snow to-night. It thundered much yesterday, and I think it
que

will also thunder to-day. If it did not rain, I (would go) to see
aussi ind. 2 *j'irais* * *voir*
 them. It greatly concerns children to avoid idleness, be-
beaucoup importer à art. *de éviter art.*
 cause it is the parent of all vice. Did you observe how it
mère f. *art. m. pl.* ind. 4
 lightened last night? It was sufficient to know his opinion.
 ind. 4 art. 2 1 ind. 2 *de connaître*
 It (is fit) to act so. It will freeze long. I am sure it would
convenir de *long-temps* *que*
 rain if the wind was not so high. It is dangerous to trust that
grand *de se fier à*
 man. It was ten o'clock. It has rained much all this month. It is
 ind. 2
 necessary to encourage young men.
de *art. jeune gens*

*Conjugation of the Impersonal Verb, Y AVOIR,
 there to be.*

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.

PAST.

Y avoir, *there to be.* Y avoir eu, *there to have been.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.

PAST.

Y ayant, *there being.* Y ayant eu, *there having been.*

INDICATIVE.

<i>Present.</i>	il y a,	<i>there is, there are.</i>
<i>Imperfect.</i>	il y avait,	<i>there was, there were.</i>
<i>Past definite.</i>	il y eut,	<i>there was, there were.</i>
<i>Future absolute.</i>	il y aura,	<i>there will be.</i>
<i>Past indefinite.</i>	il y a eu,	<i>there has been, there have been.</i>
<i>Pluperfect.</i>	il y avait eu,	<i>there had been.</i>
<i>Past anterior.</i>	il y eut eu,	<i>there had been.</i>
<i>Future anterior.</i>	il y aura eu,	<i>there will have been.</i>

CONDITIONAL.

<i>Present.</i>	il y aurait,	<i>there would be.</i>
<i>Past.</i>	il y aurait eu,	<i>there would have been.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>Present, or future.</i>	qu'il y ait,	that there may be.
<i>Imperfect.</i>	qu'il y eût,	that there might be.
<i>Past.</i>	qu'il y ait eu,	that there may have been.
<i>Pluperfect.</i>	qu'il y eût eu,	that there might have been.

Remark.—This verb is used in English in the plural number, when followed by a noun plural; in French it remains always in the singular.

EXERCISE.

Is there any fire in the drawing-room? There has been a
de art. salon m.
 great battle. There were great rejoicings in Europe when
réjouissance f. en — art.
 peace was proclaimed. My brother says that there has been a
proclamer dit
 bloody engagement between the Austrians and the Prussians, in
sanglant 2 action f. 1 Autrichien Prussien
 which there have been many men killed on both sides.
beaucoup de tués de deux art. côté,
 There would be more happiness if the people were wiser.
ind. 2
 Could there be a king more happy than this, who has always
pourrait-il celui-ci
 been the father of his subjects? There would be no harm if you
sujet mal
 learnt your lessons better. It is ten to one that you
appreniez mieux à parier contre un
 will not succeed in your enterprise.
 * *réussir*

*Conjugation of the Impersonal Verb, FALLOIR,
 IL FAUT, &c., it is necessary.*

INFINITIVE.

<i>Simple Tenses.</i>		<i>Compound Tenses.</i>	
<i>Present.</i>	Falloir.	<i>Past.</i>	Avoir fallu.

PARTICIPLES.

<i>Present.</i>	none.	<i>Past.</i>	Ayant fallu.
	<i>•Past.</i>	Fallu.	

INDICATIVE.

<i>Present.</i>	il faut	que je fasse.
<i>Imperfect.</i>	il fallait	que je fisse.
<i>Past definite.</i>	il fallut	que je fisse.
<i>Future absolute.</i>	il faudra	que je fasse.
<i>Past indefinite.</i>	il a fallu	qu'il fit, ait fait.
<i>Pluperfect.</i>	il avait fallu,	qu'il fit.
<i>Past anterior.</i>	il eut fallu	qu'il fît.
<i>Future anterior.</i>	il aura fallu,	qu'il fasse.

CONDITIONAL.

<i>Present.</i> il faudrait que je fisse, and que j'eusse fait.	<i>Past.</i> il aurait fallu qu'il fit, and qu'il eût fait.
--	--

SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>Present, or future.</i> qu'il faille.	<i>Past.</i> qu'il ait fallu.
<i>Imperfect.</i> qu'il fallût.	<i>Pluperfect.</i> qu'il eût fallu.

Remark. — The English verb *must*, not being impersonal, may take any noun or pronoun for its subject; whereas the French verb *falloir*, being always impersonal, a change of construction becomes necessary, and it may be done in two different ways.

The most common method is by putting the conjunction *que* after *il faut*, *il fallait*, *il fallut*, &c., then transporting the subject of the verb *must* to the second verb, which must be put in the subjunctive in French; as, I must read this book, *Il faut que je lise ce livre.*

The second way is by leaving the second verb in the infinitive, and substituting in the place of the personal pronoun, which is the subject of the verb *must*, its corresponding objective, *me*, *te*, *lui*, *nous*, *vous*, *leur*, which are to be placed between *il* and *faut*, *fallait*, *fallut*, *faudra*, &c.; as, I must write that letter to-day, *Il me faut écrire cette lettre aujourd'hui.*

Observe, that all expressions implying necessity, obligation, or want, may be rendered by *falloir*; as,

I want a new dictionary, *Il me faut un nouveau dictionnaire.*

EXERCISE.

You must buy a good dictionary. Must he sell his estate?
 subj. 1 subj. 1 terre f.
 I did not think that it (was necessary) to write to him again.
 ind. 2 falloir subj. 2 * écrire
 Shall I (be obliged) to carry them there? Must I not show you
 falloir mener subj. 1
 my work? If you go to London, you must (come back) to-
 aller revenir
 morrow. Shall I suffer such an insult? Do not pour out any more
 ind. 7 subj. 1 2 1 3 f. verser *
 wine, I have already more than I want. Was it necessary for
 m'en ind. 2 *
 us to finish that work so soon? If your brothers had not ceased
 nous subj. 2
 to quarrel, it (would have been necessary) to part them. You must
 de falloir
 have been well acquainted with the places to expose yourself
 ind. 4 vous connaissiez lieu pour
 in that manner. Is it necessary for us to get up to-morrow at
 de nous subj. 1
 four o'clock? Do that as it (should be). I want a new grammar,
 faites ind. 1
 mine is torn. He wants a new coat, give it to him.
 déchiré habit m.

§ III.

OF THE IRREGULAR VERBS.

Irregular Verbs of the First Conjugation.

INF. Pres. aller, to go. Past. être allé, to have gone.

PART. Pres. allant, going. Past. allé, allée, été, gone.

Compound part. past. étant allé, ayant été, having gone.

INDICATIVE Present. je vais or vas, tu vas, il va, nous allons, vous allez, ils vont.

Imperfect. j'allais, tu allais, &c.

Past definite. j'allai, tu allas, &c.

Future absolute. j'irai, tu iras, &c.

CONDITIONAL present.	j'irais, tu irais, &c.
IMPERATIVE.	va, allons, allez.
SUBJUNCTIVE present.	que j'aile, que tu ailles, &c.
Imperfect.	que j'allasse, que tu allasses, &c.

The compound tenses are formed by means of the auxiliary *être*.

S'EN ALLER, *to go away*.

INFINITIVE.

<i>Simple Tenses.</i>		<i>Compound Tenses.</i>	
Present.	s'en aller.	Past.	s'en être allé, allés.

PARTICIPLES.

Present.	s'en allant.	Past.	s'en étant allé, allés.
	Past.		en allé, allée.

INDICATIVE.

Present.	je m'en vais, or vas, tu t'en vas, il s'en va, nous nous en allons, vous vous en allez, ils s'en vont.	Past indefinite,	je m'en suis allé, or allée. tu t'en es il s'en est nous nous en sommes allés, or allées. vous vous en êtes ils s'en sont
Imperfect.	je m'en allais.	Pluperfect.	je m'en étais allé, or allée.
Past definite.	je m'en allai.	Past anterior.	je m'en fus allé, or allée.
Future absolute.	je m'en irai.	Future anterior.	je m'en serai allé, or allée.
Conditional present.	je m'en irais.	Past.	je m'en serais allé, or allée.

IMPERATIVE.

AFFIRMATIVE.	NEGATIVE.
Va t'en.	Ne t'en va pas.
allons-nous en.	ne nous en allons pas.
allez-vous en.	ne vous en allez pas.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>Present, or future.</i>	Que je m'en aille.
<i>Imperfect.</i>	Que je m'en allasse.
<i>Past.</i>	Que je m'en sois allé, or allée.
<i>Pluperfect.</i>	Que je m'en fusse allé, allée.

Remark.—*Je fus, j'ai été, j'avais été, j'aurais été*, are sometimes used for *j'allai, je suis allé, j'étais allé, je serais allé*.

The imperative *va* takes *s* when followed by *y* or by *en*; as, *vas y, vas en demander des nouvelles*. However, it takes no *s* when the *y* is followed by a verb; as, *Va y donner ordre*, Go and order that affair.

Envoyer and *renvoyer* make, in their future absolute and conditional present, *j'enverrai, j'enverrais, je renverrai, je renverrais*.

EXERCISE.

I go every day to the park. I am going to the play. He sends
ind. 1 comédie f.
back to you your books. They go to dine with their mother. Go
*
and fetch the letter I left in my room. I would go with
* chercher ind. 4 chambre f.
you, if I had time. Your father told me you would
en ind. 2 art. temps a dit que *
go to France and Italy (as soon as) the war (is over). Are
en — pr. = dès que sera fini
you going into the country this evening? We shall go away very
ind. 1 à soir m.
soon. When do they go to Italy? Do not go away. My
* en
sisters (will go away) next week. God sends to us
s'en aller art. 2 1 art.
good and evil. I went yesterday to Richmond. Go there
bien pl. art. mal pl.
with thy cousin. I shall send these books to my brother when I
— m.
have (read them). I was going (to your house) when I met
aurai lus ind. 2 chez vous rencontrer ind. 4

you. Go there and put every thing in order. My father went to
 pay your uncle a visit last week. I shall not go to Paris
rendre à art. 2 1
 this winter. I shall send back my carriage and horses. Why
voiture f. pron.
 do you go away so soon? Go, O Catiline! go far from Rome and
*sing. — na loin de — **
 hide the shame of thy crimes.
cacher

Irregular Verbs of the Second Conjugation.

ACQUÉRIR, to acquire.

PART. Pres. acquérant. Past. acquis *m.*, acquise *f.*
 IND. Pres. acquiers, acquiers, acquiert, acquérons, acquérez, ac-
 quierent. Imperf. acquérais. Past def. acquies. Fut. acquerrai.
 COND. acquerrais.
 IMPER. acquiers, acquérons, acquérez.
 SUBJ. Pres. que j'acquière, acquérions, acquériez, acquièrent.
 Imperf. que j'acquisse.

S'enquérir, to inquire, and requérir, are conjugated like acquérir.
 Quérir, to fetch, is used in familiar conversation after venir,
 envoyer, aller; as, envoyez quérir, send for; allez quérir, go and
 fetch.

Conquérir, to conquer, is seldom used but in the past definite,
 je conquis, &c., and in the subj. imperf. je conquisse. Its chief use
 is in the compound tenses.

ASSAILLIR, to assault.

PART. Pres. assaillant. Past. assailli *m.*, assaillie *f.*
 IND. Pres. j'assaille. Imperf. j'assillais. Past def. j'assillis.
 Fut. j'assillerais. COND. j'assillerais.
 IMPER. assaille.
 SUBJ. Pres. j'assaille. Imperf. j'assillasse.

Saillir, to project, has only saillant, sailli; and the following
 forms: il saille, il saillait, il saillera, il saillerait, qu'il saille, qu'il
 saillit.

Saillir, to gush out, is regularly conjugated like finir.

Tressaillir, to start, conjugated like assaillir, makes in the future,
 je tressaillirai, or tressaillerais.

COURIR, *to run.*

PART. Pres. courant. Past. couru, courue.

IND. Pres. cours, cours, court, courons, courez, courent. Imperf. courais. Past def. courus. Fut. courrai. COND. courrais.

IMPER. cours, courons, courez.

SUBJ. Pres. coure. Imperf. courusse.

accourir,	<i>to run to.</i>	parcourir,	<i>to run over.</i>
concourir,	<i>to concur.</i>	recourir,	<i>to have recourse.</i>
discourir,	<i>to discourse.</i>	secourir,	<i>to assist.</i>
encourir,	<i>to incur.</i>		

are conjugated like *courir*.CUEILLIR, *to gather.*

PART. Pres. cueillant. Past. cueilli, cueillie.

IND. Pres. cueille. Imperf. cueillais. Past def. cueillis. Fut. cueillerai. COND. cueillerais.

IMPER. cueille.

SUBJ. Pres. cueille. Imperf. cueillisse.

Thus accueillir, *to welcome*, and recueillir, *to collect*.

EXERCISE.

He collects a selection of useful books. This water will soon
choix m. 2 1
 boil. Do not run so fast, you will be tired. Your brother runs
vite fatigué
 faster than I. If you do it, you will incur your father's
moi faites le
 displeasure. Will he discourse upon the immortality of the soul?
déplaisir m. =
 In our distress we have recourse to your humanity and generosity.
= pron. =
 By your imprudence, will you not conduce to the ruin of your
concourir
 brother? Go and see him, he will receive you with kindness.
** voir accueillir*
 That general, with a division of his troops, overran all that
parcourir
 province. You gather fruit which is not ripe. They wish that
f. m. pl. mûr On désire
 he may collect the fruit of his labours. Gather these flowers and
travail

fruits for your sister. Why do they not gather some roses? We

shall collect in ancient history important and valuable facts.
 art. 2 1 de art. 2 précieux 3 1

They will reap corn and wine for two years.
recueillir du blé du

DORMIR, to sleep.

PART. Pres. dormant. Past. dormi.

IND. Pres. dors, dors, dort, dormons, dormez, dorment. Imperf.

dormais. Past def. dormis. Fut. dormirai. COND. dormirais.

IMPER. dors, dormons, dormez.

SUBJ. Pres. dorme. Imperf. dormisse.

Thus,

endormir,	to lull asleep.	servir,	to serve.
redormir,	to sleep again.	desservir,	to clear the table
se redormir,	to fall asleep again.	partir,	to set off.
sortir,	to go out.	repartir,	to set off again.
ressortir,	to go out again.	départir,	to distribute.

FAILLIR, to fail.

PART. Pres. faillant. Past. failli.

IND. Pres. faux*, faux*, faut*, faillons*, faillez*, faillent.* Imperf.
 faillais. Past def. faillis. Fut. faudrai. COND. faudrais.*

SUBJ. Imperf. faillisse.

Défaillir, to faint, has now only the plural of the IND. Pres., nous défailions, ils défaillent. Imperf. je défailais. Past def. je défailis. Past indef. j'ai défailli, and INF. Pres. défaillir.

Remark.—The tenses marked with an asterisk are obsolete.

FLEURIR.

Fleurir, signifying to blossom, is regular; but when it means to flourish, to be in repute, honour, esteem, it makes in the participle pres. florissant, and in the imperf. of the Indicative, florissait, florissaient.

FUIR, to fly, to run away.

PART. Pres. fuyant. Past. fui, fuie.

IND. Pres. fuis, fuïs, fuit, fuyons, fuyez, fuient. Imperf. fuyais.

Past def. fuïs. Fut. fuirai. COND. fuirais.

IMPER. fuis, fuyons, fuyez.

SUBJ. Pres. fuie, fuies, fuie, fuyions, fuyiez, fuient. Imperf. fuisse, or rather, prisse la fuite.

Thus, s'enfuir, to run away.

GÉSIR, to lie,

has only preserved gisant, gît, nous gisons, ils gisent, il gisait, used in familiar discourse or poetry, and particularly in monumental inscriptions; Ci-gît, here lies.

HAÏR, to hate.

In haïr, the letters *ai* form throughout two syllables, except in the three persons singular of the Present Ind., je hais, tu hais, il hait, and in the second person sing. of the Imperative, hais, which are pronounced as one syllable, as if written, je hès, tu hès, il hèt.

EXERCISE.

I did sleep very well. They (went out) as soon as they had
sortir aussitôt que
 breakfasted. I shall (go out) to-morrow if it be fine. They
déjeuner ind. 5 sortir fait
 (lull asleep) the children. Your friend does not serve me well.
endormir
 We would serve him well if we could. My sister went out this
 morning at nine o'clock, and is not yet returned. Sciences
encore revenu art. —
 flourished among the Chinese at a very distant period. Piety
chez Chinois éloigné 2 époque f. 1 art. = f.
 and justice were flourishing in the time of St. Louis. I hate all
art. — ind. 2 —
 ceremony. Did we sleep then? Man sometimes hates those who
= f. ind. 2 alors art.
 have obliged him, and ceases to hate those who have outraged
de
 him. Fly from bad examples. They shunned each other.
*imperat. * art. se fuir ind. 2*

He (was near) losing his life on that occasion. Would he not
faillir perdre * art.

avoid flatterers, if he knew all their falsehood? Corneille,
fuir art. flatteur connaissait fausseté f.

Racine, and Boileau flourished under the reign of Louis the
 ind. 2. *

Fourteenth. After (two hours' hard fighting) the enemy
un combat furieux de deux heures pl

(gave way), and then fled on all sides.
plier ind. 3 ind. 3 de côté

MENTIR, to tell a lie.

PART. *Pres. mentant. Past. menti.*

IND. *Pres. mens, mens, ment, mentons, &c. Imperf. mentais. Past def. mentis. Fut. mentirai. COND. mentirais.*

IMPER. mens.

SUBJ. *Pres. mente. Imperf. mentisse.*

Thus, démentir,	to give the lie.	pressentir,	to foresee.
sentir,	to feel.	ressentir,	to resent.
consentir,	to consent.	se repentir,	to repent.

MOURIR, to die.

PART. *Pres. mourant. Past. mort, morte: takes être for auxiliary.*

IND. *Pres. meurs, meurs, meurt, mourons, mourez, meurent. Imperf. mourais. Past def. mourus. Fut. mourrai. COND. mourrais.*

IMPER. meurs, mourons, mourez.

SUBJ. *Pres. meure. Imperf. mourusse.*

The reflective *se mourir*, means to be at the point of death; it is seldom used except in the Pres. and Imperf. of the Indicative.

OFFRIR, to offer.

PART. *Pres. offrant. Past. offert, offerte.*

IND. *Pres. offre, offres, offre, offrons, offrez, offrent. Imperf. offrais. Past def. offris. Fut. offrirai. COND. offrirais.*

IMPER. offre.

SUBJ. *Pres. offre. Imperf. offrirais.*

Thus, ouvrir,	to open.	entr'ouvrir,	to half open.
couvrir,	to cover.	recouvrir,	to cover again.
rouvrir,	to open again.	mésoffrir,	to underbid.
découvrir,	to discover.	souffrir,	to suffer.

EXERCISE.

I consent to the marriage of my son. Did you not foresee his
pressentir
 design? Do you wish that I should consent to that arrangement?
voulez subj. 1 — m.
 Your actions never belie your words. Let us go and see Mrs. D.,
paroles * *voir*
 I have heard she (is dying). Could they foresee their misfor-
j'ai ouï dire que se mourir pressentir
 tune? He died of a (very painful) disease. Let us die for our
de cruel 2 maladie f. 1
 country, and our death will be glorious. Your friend had no sooner
plus tôt
 arrived in London, than I offered him my services. Why do you
à —
 not open the door to that lady? Napoleon died at St. Helena,
= e f.
 on the fifth of May, one thousand eight hundred and twenty-one.
 If you do not behave better, your mother will die of grief.
se comporter chagrin
 Would you have wished that I should suffer such ill treat-
voulu subj. 2 *un si mauvais*
 ment?

OUÏR, to hear,

is only used in the Infinitive Present, ouïr; and the Past. Part. ouï.

Past Pret. j'ouïs, tu ouïs, il ouït, nous ouîmes, vous ouîtes, ils ouïrent.

Subj. Imperf. que j'ouïsse, tu ouïsses, &c.

Its chief use is in the compound tenses, as, je l'ai or je l'avais ouï dire, *I have or I had heard it.*

VENIR, to come.

PART. Pres. venant. *Past.* venu, venue: takes *être* for auxiliary.

IND. Pres. viens, viens, vient, venons, venez, viennent. *Imperf.* venais. *Past def.* vins, vins, vint, vîmes, vîntes, vinrent. *Fut.* viendrai. *COND.* viendrais.

IMPER. viens, venons, venez.

SUBJ. Pres. vienne, viennes, vienne, venions, veniez, viennent. *Imperf.* vinsse, vinsses, vint, vinssions, vinssiez, vinssent.

Thus, contravenir,	<i>to contravene.</i>	se ressouvenir,	<i>to recollect.</i>
avenir,	<i>to happen.</i>	provenir,	<i>to proceed.</i>
convenir,	<i>to agree.</i>	tenir,	<i>to hold.</i>
devenir,	<i>to become.</i>	s'abstenir,	<i>to abstain.</i>
disconvenir,	<i>to deny.</i>	appartenir,	<i>to belong.</i>
intervenir,	<i>to intervene.</i>	contenir,	<i>to contain.</i>
parvenir,	<i>to attain.</i>	detenir,	<i>to detain.</i>
prevenir,	<i>to prevent.</i>	entretenir,	<i>to keep up.</i>
revenir,	<i>to come again.</i>	maintenir,	<i>to maintain.</i>
survenir,	<i>to befall.</i>	obtenir,	<i>to obtain.</i>
subvenir,	<i>to relieve.</i>	retenir,	<i>to retain.</i>
se souvenir,	<i>to remember.</i>	soutenir,	<i>to uphold.</i>

VÊTIR, *to clothe.*

PART. Pres. vêtant.* Past. vêtu, vêtue.

IND. Pres. vêts*, vêts*, vêt*, vêtions, vêtez, vêtent. Imperf. vêt-
tais. Past def. vêtis. Fut. vêtirai. COND. vêtirais.

IMPER. vêts*, vêtions, vêtez.

SUBJ. Pres. vête. Imperf. vêtisse.

Remark. — *Vêtir* is seldom used in the forms marked with an asterisk; it is most frequently reflected.

Thus, revêtir, *to clothe, to invest*, quite regular.
devêtir, *to divest*, is chiefly used as a reflected verb,
and in some forms only.

EXERCISE.

Shall I not obtain this favour of you? He will relieve the
wants of that unfortunate family. We agree with you that he
besoin 2 1 *convenir*
is wrong. I hope I shall maintain my principles of justice
a tort *que*
through life. Will you (come back) before the end of this
pendant ma *revenir*
month? This house will belong to me after her death. You will
become a great man, if you continue to study with the same
assiduity. Let us prevent the mischiefs which could proceed from
mal pl. *provenir*
his imprudence. I supported the part of the innocent. They
soutenir ind. 3 *parti m.* — pl. m.

would prevent the bad effects of the prejudices of their infancy.
prevenir mauvais préjugé

That we might sustain the weight of affliction with courage.
soutenir poids m. art. —

That you might (come back) covered with glory. That they
revenir pl. de

might detain him till the beginning of next week.
retenir jusqu'à art. prochain 2 1

The king has invested that nobleman with all his authority. Let
seigneur de

us clothe the poor. We did clothe all the orphans of the parish.
pl. ind. 3

I maintain, and will always maintain, that you cannot be happy
soutenir

without virtue. He dressed himself in haste.
sans art. se vêtir ind. 3 à art.

Irregular Verbs of the Third Conjugation.

ASSEOIR, to sit.

PART. Pres. asseyant. Past. assis, assise.

IND. Pres. assieds, assieds, assied, asseyons, asseyez, asseient.

Imperf. asseyais. Past def. assis. Fut. assièrai. COND. assièrais.

IMPER. assieds, asseyons, asseyez.

SUBJ. Pres. asseie. Imperf. assisse.

Thus, *s'asseoir, to sit down*, reflective; and *rasseoir, to sit again, to calm*.

Seoir, to become, to befit, has only the Part. Pres. *seyant*, and the third persons of the simple tenses, *il sied, ils siéent, il seyait, il siéra, il siérait, qu'il siée*.

Seoir, to sit, is used only in the two Participles, *séant* and *sis*. This verb is also used impersonally.

AVOIR, to have,

is conjugated at length, page 49.

Ravoir, to have again, and *se ravoir, to recover*, are only used in the Present of the Infinitive.

CHOIR, to fall,

has only the Part. Past, *chu, chue* (with *être*).

DÉCHOIR, *to decay.*

NO PART. *Pres.* *Past.* déchu, déchue (with *être*).

IND. *Pres.* déchois, déchois, décroît, décroçons, décrochez, décroient. (No *Imperf.*) *Past def.* déchus. *Fut.* décherrai. COND. décherrais.

IMPER. déchois, décroçons, décrochez.

SUBJ. *Pres.* décroie, décroies, décroie, décroisions, décroiez, décroient. *Imperf.* déchusse.

ECHOIR, *to fall to, to expire.*

PART. *Pres.* échéant. *Past.* échu, échue (with *être* or *avoir*).

It is used only in the IND. *Pres.* il échoit; *Past def.* il échet. *Fut.* il écherra. COND. il écherrait. SUBJ. *Imperf.* que j'échusse.

FALLOIR, *to be necessary.*

Verb impersonal. Given at page 100.

MOUVOIR, *to move.*

PART. *Pres.* mouvant. *Past.* mu, mue.

IND. *Pres.* meus, meus, ment, mouvons, mouvez, meuvent. *Imperf.* mouvais. *Past def.* mus. *Fut.* mouvrai. COND. mouvrais.

IMPER. meus, mouvons, mouvez.

SUBJ. meuve, es, e; mouvions, iez; meuvent. *Imperf.* musse.

Thus, émouvoir, *to stir up, to move.*

démouvoir, *to make one desist.* A law term, used only in the Present of the Infinitive; *débouter* supplies the rest.

promouvoir, *to promote.* Used in the imperative and the compound tenses; *avancer* may supply the rest.

PLEUVOIR, *to rain.*

Impersonal Verb, given at page 98.

EXERCISE.

Let us sit down upon the grass. The spring which moves
s'asseoir *ressort m.*
 the machine is very ingenious, though very simple. It is necessary
 = *quoique* — *falloir*

to practise virtue, if we wish to be happy. They did stir
 * art. *l'on veut* * ind. 3
 up the passions of the audience. We went into the forest, and sat
auditeur pl. ind. 3
 down under the shade of a tree. We (shall sit down again) when
 ind. 3 à *se rasseoir*
 they are gone. The king has promoted this officer to a higher
 ind. 7 *parti*. *élevé*
 command for his long services. I do not think that it
 = *dement* — m.
 will rain to-day. You will not move that cruel man. We
 subj. 1
 lay the foundation of our house upon a rock. I (will sit down)
asseoir *roc* m. *s'asseoir*
 in that arm-chair. Since the publication of his last work, he
fauteuil m. *Depuis* — f. *dernier*
 has much fallen in the esteem of the public. If he do not alter
déchoir * *changer*
 his conduct, he will decline every day in his reputation and
 de * *déchoir de jour-en-jour de* — f.
 credit. That bill of exchange has expired. I did not believe that
 — m. *lettre* *échoir* *croyais*
 I should so soon have occasion to go to Paris.
 subj. 2

POUVOIR, *to be able.*

PART. Pres. pouvant. Past. pu.
 IND. Pres. puis or peux, peux, peut, pouvons, -ez, peuvent. Imperf.
 pouvais. Past def. pus. Fut. pourrai. COND. pourrais.
 (No IMPER.)
 SUBJ. Pres. puisse. Imperf. pousse.

Remark.—Conversation and poetry admit *je peux*;
 but in interrogations *puis-je*, in the first person sing.,
 must be used.

SAVOIR, *to know.*

PART. Pres. sachant. Past. su, sue.
 IND. Pres. sais, sais, sait, savons, savez, savent. Imperf. savais.
 Past def. sus. Fut. saurai. COND. saurais.
 IMPER. sache, sachez, sachez.
 SUBJ. Pres. sache. Imperf. susse.

VALOIR, *to be worth.*

PART. Pres. valant. Past. valu.

IND. Pres. Vaux, vauX, vaut, valons, valez, valent. Imperf. valais.

Past def. valus. Fut. vaudrai. COND. vaudrais.

IMPER. vauX, valons, valez.

SUBJ. Pres. vaille, vailles, vaille, valions, valiez, vaillent. Imperf. valusse.

Thus, revaloir, *to return like for like.*
 équivaloir, *to be equivalent to.*
 prévaloir, *to prevail.*

This last makes in the Subj. Pres. prévale, prévale, prevale, prévalions, prévaliez, prévalent.

EXERCISE.

He could have done his work in less than ten minutes, if he had
 cond. 2 *faire en*
 not amused himself by reading. May I go and see him? If he
s'amuser ind. 6 * *à lire* *
 sold all his houses now, the best (of them) would not (be worth)
 ind. 2 * *valoir*
 twenty guineas. I spoke to her (a long while), but could not
guinée ind. 3 *long-temps* ind. 3
 persuade her to come with me. I shall know how to remunerate
 * * *récompenser*
 you for your diligence. We can be very useful to you on that
de 2 3 * 1 *dans*
 occasion. You do not know your lesson, go and learn it better.
 * *apprendre*
 If they do not come, their apology will be equivalent to a refusal.
excuse *refus m.*
 That I may prevail upon him, and induce him to accompany you.
engager *accompagner*
 Do you really believe that their estates are equivalent to ours?
croyez *terres f.* subj. 1
 I could wish that you might comfort him. All the finest
désirerais *pouvoir* subj. 2 *consoler*
 talents united are not worth one virtue. It is better to be
réuni *valoir mieux de*
 unfortunate than criminal. Do you know where we live? Yes,
demurer

I do. If you want that book you may take it, it is at
savoir. avoir besoin de pouvoir prendre
 your service.

VOIR, *to see.*

PART. Pres. voyant. Past. vu, vue.

IND. Pres. vois, vois, voit, voyons, voyez, voient. Imperf. voyais.

Past def. vis. Fut. verrai. COND. verrais.

IMPER. vois, voyons, voyez.

SUBJ. Pres. voie, voies, voie, voyions, voyiez, voient. Imperf. visse.

Thus, *revoir, to see again* ; *entrevoir, to have a glimpse of.*

prévoir, to foresee, makes the Future and Cond. *prévoirai, prévoirais.*

pouvoir, to provide. Past def. *pourvus.* Fut. *pourvoirai.*

COND. *pourvoirais.* SUBJ. Imperf. *pourvusse.*

surseoir, to supersede, though a compound of *seoir*, is conjugated like *voir*, except that it makes Fut. *je surseoirai.*

COND. *je surseoirais.* PART. past. *sursis.*

VOULOIR, *to be willing.*

PART. Pres. voulant. Past. voulu, voulue.

IND. Pres. veux, veux, veut, voulons, voulez, veulent. Imperf.

voulais. Past def. voulus. Fut. voudrai. COND. voudrais.

IMPER. veuille, veuillons, veuillez.

SUBJ. Pres. veuille, veuillez, veuille, voulions, vouliez, veuillent.

Imperf. voulusse.

Remark.—The imperative, *veuille, veuillons, veuillez*, is sometimes used in the sense of, *be so good as, so kind as.*

EXERCISE.

See the consequences of thy folly. Will the judge put off the
surseoir

execution of the sentence which he has passed on that man? I
passé f.

would with all my heart oblige you in that affair.
vouloir cond. 1 de

I did foresee that you would not succeed. (Be so good as to)
ind. 3 réussir cond. 1 vouloir

lend me your penknife. I have spoken of your wine to two

(friends of mine); one has money, but he will not buy; the other
de mes amis l'un vouloir acheter
 would buy, but he has no money. If I would, I could soon
vouloir *vouloir ind. 2* *
 know whether he has seen your aunt or not. He will provide for
 cond. 1 *si* *pourvoir à*
 the happiness of his children. Has he seen his country and friends
revoir
 again? I will not see your brother (any more), but I will see you
 * *plus*
 again as soon as (I can). We ought to make a judicious
 ind. 7 *devoir cond. 1 faire* =
 choice of those friends to whom we intend to give our confidence.
choix m. vouloir confiance f.
 I can, and will tell the truth. If you are willing, he will
vouloir
 be willing too. They were willing to withdraw, but your
aussi * *se retirer*
 mother hindered them (from it), and desired them to sit down
empêcher ind. 3 en prier ind. 3 de
 again. If you foresee the danger, why do you not endeavour to
tâcher de
 avoid it? You saw with what goodness she received you
éviter
 Be so good as to go and tell him that I cannot and will not come.
vouloir * *ind. 1.*

Irregular Verbs of the Fourth Conjugation.

ABSoudre, to absolve.

- * **PART.** *Pres.* absolvant. *Past.* absous, absoute.
IND. *Pres.* absous, absous, absout, absolvons, absolvez, absolvant.
Imperf. absolvais. *Past def. (wanting).* *Fut.* absoudrai. **COND.**
 absoudrais.
IMPER. absous, absolvons, absolvez.
SUBJ. *Pres.* absolve. *Imperf. (none).*

Thus, dissoudre, to dissolve. **PART.** *Pres.* dissous, dissoute (wants the same tenses).

résoudre, to resolve, has two part. past: *résolu*, when it means *determined*; and *résous*, meaning *resolved into*: in this latter sense it has no feminine.

BATTRE, *to beat.*

PART. Pres. battant. Past. battu, battue.
 IND. Pres. bats, bats, bat, battons, battez, battent. Imperf. battais.
 Past def. battis. Fut. battrai. COND. battrais.
 IMPER. bats, battons, battez.
 SUBJ. Pres. batte. Imperf. battisse.

Thus,	abattre, <i>to pull down.</i>	combattre, <i>to fight.</i>
	rabattre, <i>to abate.</i>	débattre, <i>to debate.</i>
	rebattre, <i>to beat again.</i>	s'ébattre, <i>to be merry.</i>

BOIRE, *to drink.*

PART. Pres. buvant. Past. bu, bue.
 IND. Pres. bois, bois, boit, buvons, buvez, boivent. Imperf. buvais.
 Past def. bus. Fut. boirai. COND. boirais.
 IMPER. bois, buvons, buvez.
 SUBJ. Pres. boive, boives, boive, buvions, buviez, boivent. Imperf. busse.

Thus, reboire, *to drink again.* s'emboire, *to imbibe, a term used in painting.*

EXERCISE.

If you knew the question, you would resolve it in two words.
entendiez en mot
 Strong waters dissolve metals. Could that judge thus lightly ab-
art. si légèrement
 solve the guilty? Have the ministers resolved on peace or war?
*coupable pl. * art. art.*
 The fog has resolved itself into rain. The wood which
*brouillard m. se résoudre * en bois m.*
 is burnt resolves itself into ashes and smoke. They (pulled
*qu'on brûle se résoudre * en cendre pl. en fumée abattre*
 down) their house. The enemy were beaten in the last battle. This
 ind. 3 pl. ind. 3
 mortification has (pulled down) his pride. I assure you, however,
abattre orgueil cependant
 the judge has acquitted him of the accusation falsely brought against
absoudre — f. intenté
 him. We beat them because our troops were better disciplined
 ind. 3 parceque ind. 2 =né

than theirs. They (were fighting) with unexampled fury
ind. 2 un sans exemple 2 acharnement 1
 when a sudden panic made them take flight, and dispersed
fit 2 leur 1 prendre la fuite
 them in an instant. The English drink as much tea as the Turks
—m. thé Turcs
 drink coffee. Recollect to drink with sobriety. Let us
café se souvenir de =
 drink the queen's health. I will not drink that wine; it is not
à santé f. * ind. 7
 good. Drink out of that cup, the only token which your
dans coupe f. gage m.
 father has left us of his love. Shall I drink some beer?
laisser affection f.

BRAIRE, to bray,

has only the following forms: *Pres.* il brait, ils braient. *Fut.* il braira, ils brairont. *COND.* il brairait, ils brairaient.

BRUIRE, to roar.

PART. Pres. bruyant, used as an adjective, *des flots bruyants*; and the two third persons of the *Imperf.* il bruyait, ils bruyaient.

CIRCONCIRE, to circumcise.

PART. Pres. circoncisant. *Past.* circoncis, circonçise.
IND. Pres. circoncis, is, it, circonçisons, ex, ent. *Imperf.* circonçisais.
Past def. circoncis, is, it, îmes, îtes, irent. *Fut.* circonçirai.
COND. circonçirais.
IMPER. circoncis, circonçisons, circonçisez.
SUBJ. Pres. circonçise. *Imperf.* circonçisse.

CONFIRE, to preserve, pickle.

PART. Pres. confisant. *Past.* confit, confite.
IND. Pres. confis, is, it, isons, isex, isent. *Imperf.* confisais. *Past def.* confis. *Fut.* confirai. *COND.* confirais.
IMPER. confis, isons, isex.
SUBJ. Pres. confise. *Imperf.* confisse.

Déconfire, to disconfit, is rather obsolete.
 Suffire, to suffice. *Part. Past.* suffi.

CONNAÎTRE, to know.

PART. Pres. connaissant. Past. connu, connue.

IND. Pres. connais, connais, connaît, connaissons, connaissez, connaissent. Imperf. connaissais. Past def. connus. Fut. connaîtrai.

COND. connaîtrais.

IMPER. connais, connaissons, connaissez.

SUBJ. Pres. connaisse. Imperf. connusse.

Thus, reconnaître, to know again or paraître, to appear.
 acknowledge. réparaître, to appear again.
 méconnaître, not to know again. disparaître, to disappear.
 comparaître, to appear.

CONCLURE, to conclude.

PART. Pres. concluant. Past. conclu, conclue.

IND. Pres. conclus, us, ut, concluons, concluez, concluent. Imperf. concluais. Past def. conclus. Fut. conclurai. COND. conclurais.

IMPER. conclus, concluons, concluez.

SUBJ. Pres. conclue. Imperf. conclusse.

Thus, exclure, to exclude.

EXERCISE.

I know several persons in this country who speak French as well as
 = f. pays m.

if they had (been brought) up in France. He will exclude his son
 élever en

from the succession. You will conclude, if you like, that we
 — f. vouloir

are wrong. Jesus Christ was circumcised eight days after his
 avoir tort — —

birth. The Rabbi will circumcise several children to-morrow.
 naissance f.

That sum will never suffice me. That I may exclude the
 wicked from our company. That I might know him after an
 méchant pl.

absence of several years. They think they will acknowledge their
 — f. on

errors. Shall we appear again before that tribunal. They
 comparaître — m.

would know the truth, if they would listen to me. Acknow-
 vouloir ind. 2 *

ledge your imprudence, and appear more reserved. Thence we
 réservé De là

concluded that you would not come with them. Is it possible that
ind. 3

you do (not recognise) your handwriting? Shall you preserve
méconnaître subj. 1 *écriture* f. *confire*
these peaches? If he loses his (lawsuit), all his property will not
procès

suffice. Does he forget his friends? Have you pickled cu-
méconnaître

cumbers? These two principles reciprocally exclude each other.
= *pe* = *quement s'exclure*

The thing is concluded, we must go.
falloir partir

CLORE, to close,

has only the PART. *Past. clos m., close f.*

IND. *Pres. je clos, tu clos, il clot. Fut. je clorai, tu cloras, il clora,*
nous clorons, vous clorez, ils cloront. COND. je clorais, tu clorais,
&c.

IMPER. *Sing. Clos.*

Déclose, to *unclose*, enclore, to *inclose*, are defective in the same
tenses as close; but forclore, to *debar*, a law term, is only used in
the Inf. and Part. Past. *forclos*.

Éclore, to *be hatched*, as birds, or to blow like a flower, has only
these forms: — INF. *éclore. PART. Past. éclos, éclosse. IND. Pres.*
il écloit, ils éclosent. Fut. il éclora, ils écloront. COND. il éclorait,
ils écloraient; and the SUBJ. Pres. qu'il éclore, qu'ils éclosent. The
compound tenses formed with être are much used.

COUDRE, to sew.

PART. *Pres. cousant. Past. cousu, cousue.*

IND. *Pres. je couds, couds, coud, cousons, cousez, cousent. Imperf.*
cousais. Past def. cousis. Fut. coudrai. COND. coudrais.

IMPER. *couds, cousons, cousez.*

SUBJ. *Pres. couse. Imperf. cousisse.*

Thus, *découdre, to unsew; recoudre, to sew again.*

sourdre, to issue from a fountain; only used in the Infini-
tive, and Ind. Pres. il sourd.

CROIRE, to believe.

PART. *Pres. croyant. Past. cru, crue.*

IND. *Pres. crois, crois, croit, croyons, croyez, croient. Imperf.*
croyais. Past def. crus. Fut. croirai. COND. croirais.

IMPER. crois, croyons, croyez.

SUBJ. Pres. croie, croies, croie, croyions, croyiez, croient. Imperf. crûsse.

The only derivative is accroire, used with faire, as, faire accroire, en faire accroire, *to impose upon credulity*; and s'en faire accroire, *to be self-conceited*.

CROÎTRE, *to grow*.

PART. Pres. croissant. Past. crû.

IND. Pres. crois, crois, croit, croissons, croissez, croissent. Imperf. croissais. Past def. crûs. Fut. croîtrai. COND. croitrais.

IMPER. crois, croissons, croissez.

SUBJ. Pres. croisse. Imperf. crûsse.

Thus : accroître, *to increase*.

décroître, *to decrease*.

DIRE, *to say*.

PART. Pres. disant. Past. dit, dite.

IND. Pres. dis, dis, dit, disons, dites, disent. Imperf. disais. Past def. dis. Fut. dirai. COND. dirais.

IMPER. dis, disons, dites.

SUBJ. Pres. dise. Imperf. disse.

Thus: redire, *to say again*, makes redites IND. and Imper. second person plural.

contredire, <i>to contradict</i> ,	makes	vous contredisez.
dédire, <i>to unsay</i> ,	—	vous dédisez.
interdire, <i>to forbid</i> ,	—	vous interdisez.
médire, <i>to slander</i> ,	—	vous médisez.
prédire, <i>to foretell</i> ,	—	vous prédisez.
*maudire, <i>to curse</i> ,	—	vous maudissez.

* This last makes PART. Pres. maudissant with two s's, and therefore nous maudissons, &c. Imperf. je maudissais, &c.

EXERCISE.

Silkworms generally hatch at the end of the spring. Those
art. *ver-à-soie* pl. *printemps* m.

flowers just blown spread the sweetest fragrance. Have
nouvellement *répandre* *doux* *parfum* m.

they not inclosed the suburbs within the city? Does the
faubourg m. pl. *ville*

window shut well? My sister (was sewing) the whole of yesterday.
clore ind. 3 * *
 day. That piece is not well sewed; it must (be sewed over) —f. *la recoudre*
 again). Unpick that lace, and sew it again carefully.
Découdre dentelle f. 2 1 *soigneusement*
 I thought this book was interesting. Do you believe he
 ind. 2 *que* *intéressant* *que*
 will come? Did they forbid him the entry of their house?
interdire à *entrée f.*
 These flowers would grow much better if you watered them.
 cond. 1 *arroser* ind. 2
 Do you think me capable of forgetting my friends so soon? No,
croire *oublier*
 I do not. You always contradict me when I speak. It is prudent
 not to (speak ill of) anybody, but it is a meanness to (speak ill
de médire de *personne* *bassesse f. de*
 of) your benefactors. Say nothing to her, believe me. They
 3 *ne l rien* 4 2 *Ceur*
 who say all they know will sometimes say what they do not
tout ce que *savoir* *ce que*
 know. If I see your father, shall I tell him you (are afraid) of not
que *craignez*
 succeeding? They repeat the same things a hundred times. I
 inf. 1 *redire* *
 had predicted that misfortune. Always speak the truth. That
dire
 woman who slandered everybody soon lost every kind
médire de ind. 2 *perdre* ind. 3 *espèce*
 of consideration. Let us curse no body; our laws forbid us to
 — *ne personne* *défendre. de*
 curse even those who hate us.
même *haïr*

ÉCRIRE, to write.

PART. Pres. écrivant. Past. écrit, écrite.
 IND. Pres. écris, écris, écrit, écrivons, écrivez, écrivent. Imperf.
 écrivais. Past def. écrivis. Fut. écrirai. COND. écrirais.
 IMPER. écris, écrivons, écrivez.
 SUBJ. Pres. écrive. Imperf. écrivisse.

Thus, circonscrire, <i>to circumscribe.</i>	proscrire, <i>to proscribe.</i>
décrire, <i>to describe.</i>	récrire, <i>to write again.</i>
inscrire, <i>to inscribe.</i>	souscrire, <i>to subscribe.</i>
prescrire, <i>to prescribe.</i>	transcrire, <i>to transcribe.</i>

FAIRE, *to make, to do.*

PART. Pres. faisant. Past. fait, faite.

IND. Pres. fais, fais, fait, faisons, faites, font. Imperf. faisais. Past def. fis. Fut. ferai. COND. ferais.

IMPER. fais, faisons, faites.

SUBJ. Pres. fasse. Imperf. fisse.

Thus, contrefaire, <i>to counterfeit.</i>	refaire, <i>to do again.</i>
défaire, <i>to undo.</i>	satisfaire, <i>to satisfy.</i>
redéfaire, <i>to undo again.</i>	surfaire, <i>to exact.</i>
forfaire*, <i>to forfeit.</i>	méfaire*, <i>to misdo.</i>
malfaire*, <i>to do ill.</i>	parfaire*, <i>to perfect.</i>

Remark. — *These four verbs are only used in the Present of the Infinitive and the Participle Past : *forfait, malfait, méfait, parfait.*

JOINDRE, *to join.*

PART. Pres. joignant. Past. joint, jointe.

IND. Pres. joins, joins, joint, joignons, joignez, joignent. Imperf. joignais. Past def. joignis. Fut. joindrai. COND. joindrais.

IMPER. joins, joignons, joignez.

SUBJ. Pres. joigne. Imperf. joignisse.

Thus, oindre, <i>to anoint.</i>	contraindre, <i>to constrain.</i>
ceindre, <i>to gird.</i>	restraindre, <i>to restrain.</i>
déjoindre, <i>to disjoin.</i>	craindre, <i>to fear.</i>
rejoindre, <i>to join again.</i>	peindre, <i>to paint.</i>
plaindre, <i>to pity.</i>	éteindre, <i>to extinguish.</i>
feindre, <i>to feign.</i>	astreindre, <i>to compel.</i>

EXERCISE.

Describe all the beauties of that magnificent landscape. They
= f. 2 *paysage* m. 1

wished that I should proscribe all vain splendour from that ceremony.
subj. 2 *pompe* f. = f.

Tell him to describe more clearly the circumstances of that event.
That you may enrol all the principal inhabitants among your
inscrire *habitant* m.

IMPER. lis, lisona, lisez.

SUBJ. Pres. lise. Imperf. lusse.

Thus, élire, to elect. relire, to read over again.
ré-élire, to re-elect.

LUIRE, to shine.

PART. Pres. luisant. Past. lui.

IND. Pres. luis, luis, luit, luisons, lisez, luisent. Imperf. luisais.

(No Past def.) Fut. luirai. COND. luirais.

IMPER. luis, luisons, lisez.

SUBJ. Pres. lise. (No Imperf.)

Thus, reluire, to glitter; defective in the same tenses.

METTRE, to put.

PART. Pres. mettant. Past. mis, mise.

IND. Pres. mets, mets, met, mettons, mettez, mettent. Imperf. mettais. Past def. mis. Fut. mettrai. COND. mettrai.

IMPER. mets, mettons, mettez.

SUBJ. Pres. mette. Imperf. misse.

Thus,			
admettre,	to admit.	permettre,	to permit.
commettre,	to commit.	promettre,	to promise.
compromettre,	to compromise.	remettre,	to replace.
se démettre,	{ to put out of joint.	soumettre,	to subject.
	{ to resign.	transmettre,	to transmit.
omettre,	to omit.	s'entremettre,	to intermeddle.

MOUDRE, to grind (corn, &c.).

PART. Pres. moulant. Past. moulu, moulue.

IND. Pres. mouds, mouds, moud, moulons, moulez, moulent. Imperf. moulais. Past def. moulus. Fut. moudrai. COND. moudrais.

IMPER. mouds, moulons, moulez.

SUBJ. Pres. moule. Imperf. moulusse.

Thus, émoudre, to grind (knives, &c.). remoudre, to grind again (corn, &c.).
ré-moudre, to grind again (knives, &c.).

EXERCISE.

I am reading a (very interesting) book. A ray of hope shone
* ind. 1 2 1 rayon m. ind. 4

upon us in the midst of the misfortunes which overwhelmed us.
 * à milieu malheur accabler ind. 2

I will read your letter as soon as I am dressed. I was reading
 ind. 7 habillé * ind. 2

Marmontel's tales, when you came in. She reads the History of
 *

England every day from three o'clock till five. Whom shall
 Angleterre depuis heures jusqu'à

we elect? Must I read that book from the beginning? They
 falloir que subj. 1 depuis commencement On

wish me to read Virgil and Homer. The last time they
 veut que subj. 1 Virgile Homère dernier fois f. que

wrote to him, they desired him to send them the invoice of the
 ind. 3 prier de à facture f.

goods, and he has omitted it in his letter. His father has
 marchandise f. pl. f.

transmitted him all his fortune, but not his virtues and abilities.
 à — f. non pas talent

Shall I submit myself to your decision? Will they transmit their
 se soumettre *

glory to their posterity? You promise much, but you seldom keep
 tenir

your word. He promised to pay me on the tenth of this month, but
 parole ind. 4 de *

now he has (put me off) to the fifteenth of December. Were I
 remettre = si j'étais

their master, I would not permit them to go out to-day. I would
 de

grind my razors, if I could. The servant has ground all
 pouvoir ind. 2 domestique f.

the coffee. This corn is not sufficiently ground; it should be
 assez il faut le

ground again. Grind these knives again.
 inf. 1

NAÎTRE, to be born.

PART. Pres. naissant. Past. né, née, (with être).

IND. Pres. nais, nais, naît, naissons, naissez, naissent. Imperf. nais-
 sais. Past def. naquis. Fut. naîtraî. COND. naîtrais.

IMPER. nais, naissons, naissez.

SUBJ. Pres. naisse. Imperf. naquisse.

Renaitre, to be born again, has no Participle Past, therefore no compound tenses.

Paitre, to graze, no Past def. nor Imperf. Subj.

Repaître, to feed, to bait, used in all its tenses, makes in the Past Definite, je repus, and in the Subj. Imperf. je repusse.

NUIRE, to hurt.

PART. Pres. nuisant. Past. nui.

IND. Pres. nuis, nuis, nuit, nuisons, nuisez, nuisent. Imperf. nuisais.

Past def. nuisis. Fut. nuirai. COND. nuirais.

IMPER. nuis, nuisons, nuisez.

SUBJ. Pres. nuise. Imperf. nuisisse.

PRENDRE, to take.

PART. Pres. prenant. Past. pris, prise.

IND. Pres. prends, prends, prend, prenons, prenez, prennent. Imperf. prenais. Past def. pris. Fut. prendrai. COND. prendrais.

IMPER. prends, prenons, prenez.

SUBJ. Pres. prenne, prennent, prenne, prenions, preniez, prennent.

Imperf. prisse.

Thus,

apprendre, to learn.

désapprendre, to unlearn.

comprendre, to understand.

déprendre, to separate.

entreprendre, to undertake.

se méprendre, to mistake.

repandre, { to retake, to reply,

{ to reprove.

surprendre, to surprise.

EXERCISE.

Hope revived in his heart. Arts and sciences revived
renaitre art. — art. — *renaitre*

under the reign of Francis the First. I wish that happiness
= art.

may revive for them. Napoleon was born at Ajaccio, in Corsica,
renaitre ind. 3 — en Corse

on the fifteenth of August, one thousand seven hundred and sixty-
* *Août*

nine. That man thirsts (after nothing but) blood and car-
ne se repaître *que de* *de*

nage. We are all born liable to many infirmities. Could these
sujet beaucoup de =

people feast their eyes on that horrid spectacle? I did not think
gens se repaître * art. *de horrible* 2 1 *croire* ind. 2

RIRE, to laugh.PART. *Pres.* riant. *Past.* ri.IND. *Pres.* ris, ris, rit, rions, riez, rient. *Imperf.* riaais, riions, riez, riaient. *Past def.* ris, ris, rit, rîmes, rîtes, rirent. *Fut.* rirai.

COND. rirais.

IMPER. ris, rions, riez.

SUBJ. *Pres.* rie, riions, riez, rient. *Imperf.* risse.

Thus, sourire, to smile.

FRIRE, to fry,

besides the *Pres.* of the *Inf.*, has only the PART. *Past.* frit, frite.
 IND. *Pres.* je fris, tu fris, il frit, nous faisons frire, vous faites frire, ils font frire. *Fut.* je frirai, &c. COND. je frirais, &c. IMPER. fris.
 All the compound tenses are used; the forms deficient are fully supplied by faire prefixed to frire; as, PART. *Pres.* faisant frire. *Imperf.* je faisais frire, &c.

ROMPRE, to break.PART. *Pres.* rompant. *Past.* rompu, rompue.IND. *Pres.* romps, romps, rompt, rompons, rompez, rompent. *Imperf.* rompais. *Past def.* rompis. *Fut.* romprai. COND. romprais.

IMPER. romps, rompons, rompez.

SUBJ. *Pres.* rompe. *Imperf.* rompisse.

Thus, corrompre, to corrupt. interrompre, to interrupt.

EXERCISE.

Did he not introduce a new custom? We instruct our children.
 ind. 2 coutume f.

Let us (carry on) the enterprise with perseverance. They led
 conduire induire

the people into error. They will drive those poor men to despair.
 sing. en réduire désespoir m.

We will reduce that young man to silence. Introduce that
 art. — m.

episode in your new work. It would be essential that you should
 — m. ouvrage m. =

instruct youth in true religion. They required that
 art. jeunesse f. art. — f. On exiger ind. 2

I should translate my exercises more literally. (Everything)
 traduire subj. 2 tout

smiles in nature on the return of spring. We
ans art. — f. à retour m. printemps m.
 laughed much yesterday at the play. Would you not laugh
comédie f.
 if you were in my place? Fortune smiles on him again. He
à art. — f. lui encore
 did not answer him (anything), but he smiled at him as a
*répondre ind. 3 lui rien ind. 3 * lui en **
 sign of approbation, in the kindest manner. We should laugh at
— de gracieux 2 air m. 1
 his expense. Bad company corrupts the minds of young
dépens pl. pl. f. esprit s. art.
 people. Why do you interrupt his sleep? I will not interrupt
gens pl. sommeil m.
 him, he is busy. We were interrupted in the midst of our
occupé à milieu m.
 reading.
lecture

SUIVRE, to follow.

PART. Pres. suivant. Past. suivi, suivie.
 IND. Pres. suis, suis, suit, suivons, suivez, suivent. Imperf. suivais.
Past def. suivis. Fut. suivrai. COND. suivrais.
 IMPER. suis, suivons, suivez.
 SUBJ. Pres. suive. Imperf. suivisse.

Thus, *poursuivre, to pursue.*
s'ensuivre, to ensue, which is only used in the third person singular and plural of every tense, and often impersonally.

TRAIRE, to milk.

PART. Pres. trayant. Past. trait, traite.
 IND. Pres. trais, trais, trait, trayons, trayez, traient. Imperf. trayais, trayions. (No Past def.) Fut. je traitrai. COND. je traitrais.
 IMPER. trais, trayons, trayez.
 SUBJ. Pres. traye, trayions. (No Imperf.)

Thus, *attirer, to allure.* *retraitre, to finedraw.*
abstraire, to abstract. *retraitre, to redeem.*
distraindre, to divert. *soustraire, to subtract.*
extraire, to extract.

TAIRE, *to conceal.*

PART. Pres. taisant. Past. tu, tue.

IND. Pres. tais, tais, tait, taisons, taisez, taisent. Imperf. taisais.

Past def. je tus, tûmes. Fut. tairai. COND. je tairais.

IMPER. tais, taisons, taisez.

SUBJ. Pres. taise. Imperf. tusse.

Thus, plaire, *to please.* déplaire, *to displease.*
complaire, *to humour.*VAINCRE, *to vanquish, to conquer.*

PART. Pres. vainquant. Past. vaincu, vaincue.

IND. Pres. vaincs*, vaincs*, vainc*, vainquons, vainquez, vainquent.

Imperf. vainquais. Past def. vainquis. Fut. vaincrai. COND. vaincrais.

IMPER. vaincs*, vainquons, vainquez.

SUBJ. Pres. vainque. Imperf. vainquisse.

The persons of this verb marked with an asterisk are seldom used. Convaincre, *to convince*, is used in all its tenses and persons.VIVRE, *to live.*

PART. Pres. vivant. Past. vécu.

IND. Pres. vis, vis, vit, vivons, vivez, vivent. Imperf. vivais.

Past def. vécus, vécûmes. Fut. vivrai. COND. vivrais.

IMPER. vis, vivons, vivez.

SUBJ. Pres. vive. Imperf. vécusse.

Thus, revivre, *to revive.* survivre, *to survive.*

EXERCISE.

The idea of his misfortunes pursues him (everywhere). A per-
malheur *partout*
 son often displeases us by the very quality by which another has
même 2 1
 pleased us. Why do you follow me as you do? You (might have
 cond. 2
 done) much better if you had followed the advice which I gave
 ind. 6 *avis* sing. ind. 4
 you. He went first, and the others followed him. Does it follow
 ind. 3 art. ind. 3 * *s'ensuivre*
 thence that you (are in the right)? Will she not please by her
avoir raison

accomplishments more than by her beauty? (Keep to yourself)
grâce f. pl. taire
 such truths as may offend. Will not a thought, true, grand,
certain f. pl. qui pouvoir f.
 and well expressed, please at all times? You see the
exprimé dans art. m. pl.
 consequences that ensue. Persevere, and thou shalt conquer
sing. vaincre
 thy enemies. I wish we may convince him. That (did not
que subj. 1 inf. 1 ind. 3
 convince) me. We should have conquered them if we had fought.
vaincre combattre
 We surprised the enemy, and conquered them in the short space of
ind. 3 pl. vaincre
 four hours. You will not live long if you drink (so much). She
tant
 lived about four years after the death of her husband. He did
ind. 3 environ
 not long survive a person who was so dear to him. We shall live
ind. 3 à
 again in our children. Long live the Queen!
Que 1 4 subj. 1. 3 2

SECTION III.

CHAP. VI.

OF THE ADVERB.

THE adverb is a word indeclinable which modifies
 a verb, as, *il parle éloquemment*; an adjective, as, *il*
est très éloquent; and another adverb, as, *il parle*
bien éloquemment. It is called adverb because it ge-
 nerally accompanies verbs.

There are adjectives which are used as adverbs: as,
il chante juste, he sings in tune; *elle chante faux*, she
 sings out of tune; *ils ne voient pas clair*, they do not

see clearly; *ces fleurs sentent bon*, these flowers smell sweet; *ils demeurèrent court*, they stood short; *elle parle bas*, she speaks low, &c. The adjectives *juste*, *faux*, *clair*, *bon*, *court*, *bas*, here supply the place of adverbs.

Most of the French adverbs are formed from adjectives by changing their termination according to the three following rules: —

RULE I. — When the adjective ends, in the masculine, with a vowel, the adverb is formed by adding *ment*: as, *modeste-ment*, modestly; *poli-ment*, politely; *ingénû-ment*, ingenuously.

Exceptions. — *Impuni* makes *impunément*, and *traître*, *traîtreusement*.

RULE II. — When the adjective ends with a consonant, in the masculine, the adverb is formed from the feminine termination, by adding *ment*: as, *grand*, *grandement*, greatly; *franc*, *franchement*, frankly; *naïf*, *naïvement*, artlessly, &c.

Exception. — *Gentil*, which makes *gentiment*, prettily.

Remark. — The adverbs —

follement,	foolishly.	bellement,	softly.
mollement,	effeminately.	nouvellement,	newly.

are to be considered as coming from the adjectives *fol*, *mol*, *bel*, *nouvel*, and accordingly belong to this rule.

RULE III. — Adjectives ending in *nt*, form their adverbs by changing *nt* into *mment*, as, *constant*, *constamment*, constantly; *éloquent*, *éloquentement*. Except *lent* and *présent*, which follow the second rule, and make *lentement*, *présentement*.

Observe that the *e* which precedes *ment* is mute in all adverbs formed from adjectives, except the follow-

ing, in which it takes an acute accent: *aisément, assurément, aveuglément, commodément, communément, conformément, délibérément, &c.*

Remark.—Many adverbs, like adjectives, have the three degrees of signification: as, *profondément; aussi, plus, or moins profondément, fort, bien, or très profondément; le plus, le moins profondément.*

The following are irregular:

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
bien, <i>well.</i>	mieux, <i>better.</i>	le mieux, <i>the best.</i>
mal, <i>bad.</i>	pis, <i>worse.</i>	le pis, <i>the worst.</i>
peu, <i>little.</i>	moins, <i>less.</i>	le moins, <i>the least.</i>

EXERCISE.

He denied the fact absolutely. You speak freely. They will
ind. 3

act prudently. Your loss is really great. Children are naturally
perte f.

fond of pleasure. They are happily out of danger. They
passioné pour art. m. hors de —

are mortally wounded. We desire ardently to see the end of that
de

lawsuit. That barrister has pleaded very eloquently. He has
procès m.

acted conformably to his principles. Buffon is one of the best
writers of the last century; he thinks deeply, describes forcibly,
siècle m.

and (expresses himself) with dignity. Corneille and Racine are
s'exprimer

the two best French tragic poets: the pieces of the former are
3 2 1

strongly but incorrectly written; those of the latter are more regu-
2 3 1

larly beautiful, more purely expressed, and more delicately conceived.
pensé

You do not speak very seriously. I hope we shall spend the day
que passer

pleasantly. He has acted very candidly in that affair. Your
brother learns easily, but he forgets almost as easily as he learns.

Your brothers came to see us, and we received them politely. God

is infinitely just; He will punish the impious severely.

pl.

There are many other adverbs, which may be classed according to their signification.

Adverbs of order: *as, premièrement*, first; *secondement*, secondly; *troisièmement*, thirdly, &c.; *devant*, before; *d'abord*, at first; *ensuite, après*, afterwards; *auçaravant*, before; *derrière*, behind; *alors*, then, &c.

Adverbs of place: *as, où*, where; *d'où*, from whence; *ici*, here; *là*, there; *dedans*, within; *dehors*, without; *en haut*, above; *loin*, far; *près, proche*, near, nigh; *deça*, on this side; *delà*, on that side; *partout*, everywhere, &c.

EXERCISE ON THE ADVERBS OF ORDER AND PLACE.

First, I must say, that I shall punish you if you do not behave
devoir *se comporter*
 better. Do first what you have to do, afterwards you may
faire
 (go out). You did not know me at first. At first he gave
sortir *reconnaître* ind. 3
 him some money, and afterwards left him. We ought
quitter *fulloir* ind. 1
 first to do our duty, secondly enjoy lawful pleasure. Read books
 * inf. 1 *jouir de permis* m. pl. art. 2
 of instruction first, then you may proceed to those of enter-
 3 1 * *passer* ind. 7 *agré-*
 tainment. Did I not tell you to stay here? There must be a great
ment ind. 4 *de*
 deal of game here. From thence I went to France, and soon after
gibier ind. 4 *en*
 to Germany. We are yet far from (our house). It was there I
Allemagne *chez nous* *que*
 saw him for the first time. Look within and you shall see it. She
fois f.
 was within and I without. Contemplate (at a distance) lofty
moi *de loin* art. *haut*

mountains, if you wish to behold prospects ever varied and ever
f. vouloir * de art.

new. There is a man below whom you will see with pleasure.
Go up-stairs, you will find what you (look for) in the drawers
chercher tirer m.

behind the door. I have (looked for) you everywhere.
chercher

Adverbs of affirmation: as, *oui*, yes; *à la vérité*, indeed; *vraiment*, truly; *sans doute*, without doubt; *assurément*, assuredly; *certainement*, *certes*, certainly.

Adverbs of negation: as, *non*, no; *ne pas*, *ne point*, not; *point du tout*, not at all; *nullement*, by no means, &c.

Adverbs of interrogation: as, *quand*, when; *pourquoi*, why; *combien*, how much; *comment*, how; *où*, where, &c.

Adverbs of doubt: as, *peut-être*, perhaps; *probablement*, very likely, &c.

EXERCISE ON THE ADVERBS OF AFFIRMATION, NEGATION, ETC.

Do you know who did that? Yes. Certainly, either I am mistaken,
ind. 4 ou se tromper

or the affair passed (in that manner). Will you have
se passer ind. 4 ainsi *

some? How do you like that book? Not at all. Why do you
en aimer

not write your exercises more carefully? Why do you not come
yourself? When shall I have the pleasure of seeing you?
(How long is it since) you lived in London? (To what purpose)

Depuis quand demeurer à à quoi bon

shall I write to him; he never answers my letters. How much I
répondre à

should be obliged to you, if you would grant me that favour! How
vouloir accorder

much do you owe him? You see to how many dangers and how
combien de

many reproaches we are liable. Perhaps you will discover, on a
de exposé dans

second perusal of Lafontaine's fables, beauties which you
lecture f. 2 art. 1 de art. f. pl.

did not perceive at first. We shall see you perhaps
avoir ind. 2 *aperçues* à art. f.

to-morrow.

Adverbs of time: as, *à présent*, now; *aujourd'hui*, to-day; *hier*, yesterday; *autrefois*, formerly; *bientôt*, soon; *dans peu*, shortly; *désormais*, hereafter; *demain*, to-morrow; *après demain*, the day after to-morrow; *souvent*, often; *d'ordinaire*, generally; *quelquefois*, sometimes; *matin*, early; *tôt*, soon; *tard*, late; *toujours*, always, ever; *jamais*, never.

EXERCISE ON THE ADVERBS OF TIME.

We often think of you. Have you ever seen a man more absent
 à
 and more vain? Be assured they have always spoken to him in
 your favour. I have always advised my children to behave well,
 de
 and never to (wrong any body). Now I begin to believe that
faire tort à personne
 you have altered your conduct; and that you seriously intend
changer de * *vouloir*
 to study. You have deceived me, hereafter I will never trust you.
 *
 Have you already done all the work I gave you? you have been
finir ind. 6
 very industrious. I will call upon you to-morrow, and the day
passer chez
 after we will go and see my uncle. We will pay you the day
 *
 after to-morrow if we can. It is one of those accidents which it is
 sometimes impossible to avoid. The wicked will be punished
de pl.
 sooner or later.

Adverbs of quantity: as, *combien*, how much, how many; *beaucoup*, *bien*, much, many; *peu*, little, few; *assez*, enough; *tant*, so much, so many; *trop*, too much, too many; *trop peu*, too little, too few, &c.

Adverbs of comparison: as, *comme*, as; *de même*,

in the same manner; *aussi*, as; *autant*, as much; *plus*, more; *moins*, less; *pareillement*, likewise, &c.

Remark.—Adverbs of quantity, when placed before a substantive, require the preposition *de*, as do all substantives expressing quantity: thus, *beaucoup de pain*, much bread; *trop de vin*, too much wine. *Bien* is the only exception: *il a bien de l'esprit*, *elle a bien de la grâce*.

EXERCISE ON THE ADVERBS OF QUANTITY AND COMPARISON.

There were many ladies at the ball, and we had a great deal of *ball m.*
 pleasure. He has not much money, and I have still less. He has
 a great deal of (ready wit), but little judgment. Do not give me
 so much bread, I have already more than I want. There are
 fewer inhabitants in Paris than in London. You blame him, and
 nevertheless you act in the same manner. Study more than ever,
 and (in the end) you will reap the fruit of your exertions. If
 he has done that, I can do as much. The love of our
 neighbour is of all sentiments the most wise and the most
 enlightened; it is as necessary in civil society, for the happiness
 of our life, as in Christianity for eternal felicity. He
 has run so much that he is (out of breath). That (young lady)
 (makes herself) beloved as much by the sweetness of her
 disposition as by the charms of her countenance. Rich people
 are not always so happy as we imagine. That estate (is worth)

more than one hundred thousand francs. She reads French
 * *franc* art.
 better and better. In that action our officers and soldiers showed
de en ind. 3
 much courage, and performed many prodigies of valour.
faire bien

A collection of words which serve to qualify either a verb, an adjective, or an adverb, are called adverbial expressions. Such are *à jamais*, *à la fin*, *à présent*, *long-temps*, *sans cesse*, *à dessein*, *en général*, *en arrière*, *au hasard*, *de nouveau*, *tour-à-tour*, *tout-à-coup*, &c.

Remark.—Do not confound the adverb *y* with the personal pronoun *y*: the adverb means *là*; as, *j'y vais*, *j'y suis*, *je m'y plais*: the pronoun means *à lui*, *à elle*, *à cela*; *j'y pense*.

CHAP. VII.

OF THE PREPOSITION.

THE preposition is an indeclinable word, that serves to express the relations which words have with each other. Between these words, *je vais*, I go, and *l'eau*, the water, there may be many relations; as, a relation of tendency; *je vais vers l'eau*, I go towards the water; of superiority, as, *je vais sur l'eau*, I go on the water; of opposition, *je vais contre l'eau*, I go against the water, &c. *Vers*, *sur*, *contre*, mark those relations, and these words are prepositions.

The prepositions are always placed, in French, before the words which they govern, and never after, as they are sometimes in English.

The prepositions *à, de, en*, must be repeated in French before every word which they govern, whether they are repeated or not in English. The other prepositions are repeated before words of different signification, or standing in opposition; but they are not repeated before words nearly synonymous.

There are different kinds of prepositions.

Some are used to denote place; as,

chez, dans, devant, derrière, parmi, sous, sur, vers, &c.
at, in, before, behind, among, under, on, towards

Some to mark order; as,

avant, après, entre, depuis, dès.
before, after, between, from, from.

Some to denote union; as,

avec, durant, pendant, outre, suivant, selon.
with, during, in, besides, according to.

EXERCISE ON THE FOREGOING PREPOSITIONS.

Such ^{ind. 2} was the custom among the Romans. I ^{ind. 2} (was going)

(to your house), but as I have met you, we will return to my
chez vous rencontrer

house, where we will dine. Go into my room; you will find a
 letter behind the (looking-glass), bring it to me. Do not
miroir m.

(put yourself) before me. A (wise man) acts according to the
se mettre art. sage

dictates of reason. With wit, politeness, and some
maximes art. de art. pr. art. un peu de
 (readiness to oblige) one generally succeeds in the world.
prévenance réussir

Nature displays her riches with magnificence under the torrid
art. déployer 2

zone. Between these two mountains runs a deep hollow . road.
1 est 2 et 3 chemin m. l

I walk every day from ten to twelve, and I study from
se promener dix heures midi

six (in the afternoon) to eight, sometimes to nine. She is
heures après midi
 not at home; she is at your sister's. After such great faults, it
de si f. pl.
 it only remained for us to repair them (as well as we could).
*ne rester ind. 2 * que réparer de notre mieux*
 Show me what you have done during my absence. Envy,
ce que — f. art.
 jealousy, and slander always reign among authors. Besides the
médiance f.
 exterior advantages of figure and the graces of deportment,
 2 1 art. art. *maintien m.*
 she possesses an excellent heart, a sound judgment, and a feeling
avoir 2 1 2 1 2
 soul.
 1

Some are used to express opposition; as,

Contre, malgré, nonobstant, sans, excepté, hors, hormis.
 against, in spite of, notwithstanding, without, except, save, except.

Some to denote the end; as,

envers, touchant, pour.
 to, respecting, for.

Others to mark the cause and means; as,

par, moyennant, attendu.
 by, by means of, on account of.

EXERCISE ON THE FOREGOING PREPOSITIONS.

I hope you will succeed in your undertaking, in spite of your
que réussir entreprise
 enemies. It is said that the town is (blocked up) by land and
on dit bloquer
 sea. We passed through France and Germany, and arrived in
ind. 3 art. *
 London unexpectedly. A woman may please without beauty,
pouvoir
 but she cannot succeed without virtue. The army marched three
réussir

days and three nights without stopping. We cannot ^{long act}
^{s'arrêter inf. 1} ^{savoir cond. 1.} ^{agir}
 (contrary to) our own temper, notwithstanding all the pains ^{we}
^{contre} ^{* caractère m.} ^{que}
 take to disguise it, it (shows itself), and betrays us on many occa-
^{pour} ^{se montrer} ^{en bien}
 sions. Take all that you please, except my sword. I give
^{ce que} ^{vouloir ind. 7}
 you all the books I possess but the History of England. After
^{que} ^{avoir}
 the battle of Pavia, in which he was defeated and taken, Francis the
^{Pavie}
 First, King of France, wrote to his mother, "All is lost, save
 honour." Religion forbids us to be unjust and uncharitable
^{art. — f.} ^{de}
 towards our (fellow-creatures). Did not my mother write to you
^{semblable} ^{ind. 4}
 concerning that affair? Through the precautions ^{we} took, ^{we}
^{que} ^{ind. 3}
 avoided the rocks of that dangerous coast.
^{écueil m. pl.} ² ¹

The use of the prepositions *à*, *de*, *en*, is very extensive.

A is generally used to express several relations, as, destination, tendency, place, time, situation, &c., and is often substituted for various other prepositions; as, *aller à Londres, courir à sa perte, aspirer à la gloire, être à Rome, à midi, à ce sujet, supplier à mains jointes, peindre à l'huile, être à son aise, &c.*

De is generally used to express separation, extraction, possession, cause, result, &c., and supplies the place of several prepositions; as, *Je viens de France, le palais du roi, les facultés de l'âme, un homme d'esprit, il est aimé de tout le monde, mourir de faim, de soif, vivre de fruits, sauter de joie, &c.*

En serves to mark the relations of time, place, situation, &c.; as, *c'était en hiver, être en Angleterre, aller en Italie, elle est en bonne santé, il vaut mieux être en paix qu'en guerre, il l'a fait en dépit de moi.*

EXERCISE.

I can go in one day from Paris to Cologne, and in four hours
 from Orleans to Tours. You spend all the day in going from
 house to house, from street to street, and from place to place.

Foreigners take pleasure in admiring at Amsterdam the singular
 art. *étrangers* à inf. 1 — 2
 mixture formed by the roofs of houses, the tops of trees,
mélange m. 1 — art. art.
 and the flags of ships, which present in the same place
pavillon art. *endroit* m.
 an idea of the sea, the city, and the country. His father died of
ville *campagne* f.

grief. I was coming from (your house) when he arrived. When
 ind. 2 *de* *chez vous* ind. 4

we were in the country, we devoted the morning 'to study,
 à *campagne* f. ind. 2 *matinée* f.

we walked at noon, and at three or four o'clock we went
se promener ind. 2 *midi* *heure* pl. ind. 2

out hunting or fishing. The same prejudices are found in
 art. *chasse* f. art. *pêche* f. *se trouver*

Europe, Asia, Africa, and even in America. That young man,
 = *que* = *que*

notwithstanding the advice of his friends, wastes his time in
avis *perd* *temps dans* art.

effeminacy and pleasure. We have travelled from Italy to
 art. = pl. *voyager*

Switzerland, and (are thinking of) going to Germany, to visit
Suisse *penser à* ind. 1 inf. 1 *pour*

the principal cities of that interesting country. In that happy
ville 2' *pays* m. 1

retreat we lived on the milk of our flocks, and the delicious
asile m. ind. 2 *brebis* pr. 2

fruits of our orchards. He has acted on this occasion like a great
 1 *verger* *en*

man. A good minister only aspires to the glory of serving his
 inf. 1, 2

country well. Do you think I can learn French in nine
pays 3 1 *que* subj. 1 art. m.

months? No, assuredly. I would rather live in Scotland than in
 = *aimer mieux* *Ecosse*
 England.

The union of words performing the office of a preposition, are called prepositive expressions; such are *à l'égard de, en faveur de, à la réserve de, quant à, jusqu'à, &c.*

Remark.—Do not confound the preposition *en* with the personal pronoun *en*: *en* preposition is always followed by a regimen; *en France, en ami, en vous*: *en* pronoun has no regimen, and means *de lui, d'elle, de cela*; *nous en parlons, vous en êtes content.*

CHAP. VIII.

OF THE CONJUNCTION.

THE conjunction is an invariable word, which serves to connect one member of a sentence with another member. When I say, *travaillons, nous voulons acquérir des talents, le temps s'enfuit, persuadons-nous bien, il ne revient plus*, here are five members of sentences which have no connection between them, no kind of relation, and which form, as it were, five sentences independent one of the other. To connect them together, and form one single sentence, it is sufficient to employ some words, such as *si, car, et, que, &c.* *Travaillons, si nous voulons acquérir des talents, car le temps s'enfuit, et persuadons-nous bien qu'il ne revient plus.* These words, *si, car, et, que*, are conjunctions.

There are different kinds of conjunctions, which

have been divided into copulative, comparative, disjunctive, dubitative, conditional, conclusive, &c.

Conjunctions govern either the infinitive, indicative, or subjunctive mood.

The present of the infinitive is always used after the following conjunctions:—

Afin de,	to, for, in order to.	excepté de,	except to.
de crainte de,	for fear of.	avant de,	before.
de peur de,	for fear of.	avant que de,	before.
au lieu de,	instead of.	à moins de,	unless.
bien loin de,	very far from.	à moins que de,	unless.
plût que de,	rather than to.	faute de,	for want of.

The following prepositions are accidentally conjunctions, and require the next verb in the infinitive.

à, to; après, after; jusqu'à, as far as.
de, of; sans, without; pour, in order to; sauf, save.

EXERCISE ON CONJUNCTIONS WHICH GOVERN THE INFINITIVE.

In order to learn well, we must study with a great deal of
falloir ind. 1

attention. It will be impossible for you to learn any language
* *un langue* f.

unless you be diligent. A prudent man ought to think several
* *devoir* ind. 1 *

times before he acts. Many persons work only (in order to)
fois f. * *agir* * *ne que* *afin de*

acquire consideration and riches; but the honest, humane man
de art. — f. 2 3 1

spends (so much) time in study, only to be useful to his
ne employer *tant de* *à* art. *pour*

(fellow-creatures). Far from exciting them to fight, I did all
semblables *à* ind. 3

I could in order to prevent them. (Look at) that young
ce que ind. 3 *empêcher* *regarder*

lady; rather than study, she wastes her time or spends it in
perdre *passer* *à des*

trifles. For want of (sending for) a surgeon in time, he has lost
envoyer chercher *à*

his arm. He carried his insolence (to that degree that) he
* art. *bras* *pousser* * art. *jusqu'à*

spoke insulting words to him. Nothing is more entertaining
dire *parole f.* * *de* *amusant*
 than history; besides, nothing is more instructive. We ought
 * *de* * *falloir*
 to practise what the Gospel commands us; now it commands us
 * *évangile* *or*
 not only to forgive our enemies, but also to love them. I
non *de*
 would not accept his invitation to go to Paris with him, for
vouloir ind. 4
 fear of displeasing you.

The following conjunctions govern the indicative:

Bien attendu que.	non plus que.	peut-être.
à condition que.	outre que.	comme.
à la charge que.	puis que.	comme si.
de même que.	lorsque	quand.
ainsi que.	pendant que.	pourquoi.
aussi bien que.	tandis que.	comment.
parceque.	durant que.	suivant que.
attendu que.	tant que.	si bien que.
vu que.	toutefois.	dès que.
mais.	après que.	cependant.
autant que.		

EXERCISE ON CONJUNCTIONS WHICH GOVERN THE INDICATIVE.

After we had examined that singular effect, we (inquired into)
 ind. 5 2 1 *rechercher* ind. 3
 its causes. I am very glad to see that you do not love
en art. — *de* art.
 flattery, and that one (runs no risk) to speak to you with
ne hasarder rien
 sincerity. Certain people hate grandeur, because it
gens f. pl. art. — *f.* pro.
 lowers and humiliates them, and makes them feel the
que elle *leur*
 privations of the advantages which they covet. When you
bien *ambitionner*
 purpose undertaking an affair of importance, permit me to tell
se proposer de
 you that you ought to consult your friends before you begin
devoir cond. 1 * *avant de* *
 it. He will write to you on condition that he speedily receive
 ind. 7

your answer. Speak as long as you please. I will not grant
vouloir ind. 7

you what you ask me. If you loved to study as much as you love
ind. 2 à

to play, I should have no occasion to complain. Form your mind,
sujet de se plaindre

heart, and taste while you are still young.
 adj. p. adj. p. *encore*

Conjunctions which require the subjunctive are the following : —

soit que.	encore que.	avant que.
sans que.	à moins que.	non pas que.
pour que.	pourvu que.	afin que.
quoique.	supposé que.	de peur que.
jusqu'à ce que.	au cas que.	de crainte que.
Dieu veuille que.	plût à Dieu que.	malgré que.
bien que.	pour peu que.	si peu que.
peu s'en faut que.	en attendant que.	tant s'en faut que, &c. &c.

They govern the subjunctive, as they always imply doubt, desire, ignorance, fear, command.

When a conjunction governs several verbs, it is expressed before the first verb only, and *que* is added to the other verbs with the same mood after it as if the conjunction itself were repeated.

EXAMPLE.

He learns well, because he is *Il apprend bien, parcequ'il est*
 diligent and takes pains. *diligent et qu'il prend de la peine.*

When *si* governs two verbs, instead of repeating *si* before the second verb, *que* is used, and the verb following is put in the subjunctive.

EXAMPLE.

You will learn if you are di- *Vous apprendrez si vous êtes*
 ligent and take pains. *diligent et que vous preniez de la*
peine.

EXERCISE ON CONJUNCTIONS WHICH GOVERN THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

The general arrived yesterday morning at the camp ; he ordered the attack immediately, though all his troops had not yet arrived. (I am so far from) blaming you for assisting him, that, on the
tant s'en faut que de

contrary, I very much admire your conduct. If men were wise,
art. ind. 2

and would follow the dictates of reason, they would (spare them-
que subj. 2 lumière art. s'épargner

selves) many sorrows. Your business will never be done
affaire f.

properly, unless you do it yourself. Would to God I had been
bien

there ! I would have conquered or perished. Although you have a good memory, it is not enough to learn a language ; you must
ce suffire falloir

make use of your judgment. Study only good models, lest
subj. 1 art. de peur que

those which are but middling should spoil your taste, before
** ne gâter subj. 1*

it be entirely formed. I will explain to you every difficulty, that you may not be disheartened in your undertaking. Suppose
décourager

you should lose your friends, what would (become of) you?
devenir

(It is so far from) raining, that, on the contrary, I think we shall have
tant s'en faut que subj. 1

dry and hot weather during all this week. However little you
de art. temps Si peu que

give her, she has such a good temper, that she is always pleased.
naturel m. content

A collection of words, the function of which is to unite the members of a sentence, are called conjunctive expressions ; such are, *au reste, au surplus, par conséquent, ainsi que, tandis que, à moins que, de crainte que, &c.*

CHAP. IX.

OF THE INTERJECTION.

THE interjection is an indeclinable word, used to express quick and sudden affections of the mind.

The principal interjections are :

1.	To express joy,	ah ! bon ! o ! vive la joie.
2.	— grief,	hélas ! oh ! ah !
3.	— fear,	ah ! oh ! hélas !
4.	— aversion,	fi ! fi donc !
5.	— derision,	oh ! oh ! zest !
6.	— disgust,	pouah, pouah !
7.	— disbelief,	chansons !
8.	— surprise,	ouais !
9.	— astonishment,	oh ! bon Dieu ! miséricorde ! peste !
10.	— warning,	gare ! hem ! holà ! ho !
11.	— checking,	tout beau ! holà !
12.	— encouraging,	alerte ! allons ! ça, courage !
13.	— applauding,	bravo, vivat !
14.	— encoring,	bis, bis !
15.	— calling,	holà ! ho ! hem !
16.	— silence,	chut ! paix ! st.

PART II.

[Under Second,]

THE SYNTAX.

SYNTAX has for object the use and construction of words. It fixes the inflections or terminations under which they are to appear in the sentence, and the place which they are to occupy in it.

SECTION I.

CHAPTER I.

OF THE SUBSTANTIVE.

THERE are some substantives which are never used in the plural; such are, 1. The names of metals considered in their original state: as, *l'or*, gold; *le fer*, iron. 2. The names of virtues and vices: as, *le courage*, courage; *le jeu*, gambling. 3. Some words of a physical or moral nature: as, *l'odorat*, smelling; *le sommeil*, sleep; *la faim*, hunger; *l'enfance*, infancy. 4. The infinitive of verbs used substantively: as, *le toucher*, feeling: and some others.

Others, on the contrary, are never used in the singular: as, *arrérages*, arrears; *bestiaux*, cattle; *funérailles*, funeral; *ciseaux*, scissors; *annales*, annals; *ancêtres*, ancestors; *entraves*, shackles, &c.

EXERCISE.

Glory belongs to God in heaven; on earth, it is the
 art. *appartenir* art. *ce*
 portion of virtue, and not of genius. Vanity, ambition,
 lot m. art. art. art. art.
 vengeance, luxury, voluptuousness, insatiable desire
 art. art. art. art. 2 1
 of hoarding, (these are) the virtues which the world knows and
voilà
 esteems. Gold is the most pure, the most precious, the most
 art.
 ductile, and, after platina, the heaviest of all metals. Chas-
 art. art. art.
 tity is an obligation of all times, all ages, and all
 * * art. art. art.
 conditions. Intoxication which proceeds from beer, is of
état m. art. *ivresse* *venir* art.
 longer duration than that which proceeds from wine. Gold
 * art. art.
 and iron are extracted from the bowels of the earth. It is the
 art. *entrailles* *Ce*
 sense of touch which teaches to guard against the
 art. *toucher* m. *apprend* *se garantir* *de*
 errors of sight. Sleep is the image of death. Early
 art. art. art. *de bonne heure* 2
 learn to distinguish truth from falsehood.
apprendre art. art. *faux* m.

OF COMPOUND NOUNS.

Of the Formation of their Plural.

RULE I.—When a compound noun is formed of a substantive and an adjective, both take the sign of the plural: as,

Un gentilhomme, a nobleman, des gentilshommes; une basse-taille, a base, des basses-tailles.

Exceptions. — Une grand'mère, grandmother, des grand'mères; un blanc-seing, a blank signature, des blanc-seings; une grand'garde, a main guard, des grand'gardes, &c.

RULE II. — When a compound noun is formed of two substantives, placed immediately one after the other, both take the sign of the plural ; as,

Un chef-lieu, *a chief town*, des chefs-lieux ; un chou-fleur, *cauliflower*, des choux-fleurs.

Exceptions. — Un hôtel-Dieu, *a hospital*, des hôtels-Dieu ; un appui-main, *a support for the hand*, des appuis-main.

RULE III. — When a compound noun is formed of two substantives united by a preposition, the first substantive takes the sign of the plural ; as,

Un arc-en-ciel, *a rainbow*, des arcs-en-ciel ; un chef-d'œuvre, *a masterpiece*, des chefs d'œuvre.

Exceptions. — Des coq-à-l'âne, *unconnected stories* ; des tête-à-tête, *interviews between two persons*.

RULE IV. — When a compound noun is formed of a substantive joined to a verb, a preposition, or an adverb, the substantive alone takes the sign of the plural : as,

Un avant-coureur, *forerunner*, des avant-coueurs ; des garde-fous, *rails on bridges* ; des chasse-marées, *fish carriers* ; des arrière-saisons, *the end of the seasons*.

RULE V. — When a compound noun is formed of words indeclinable in their nature, such as verb, preposition, adverb, none take the sign of the plural : as,

Des passe-passe, *sleight of hand* ; des passe-partout, *master keys*.

EXERCISE.

art.	Idleness and	art.	laziness are the	forerunners of	art.	misery.
art.	Snow-drops bear	de art.	flowers	amidst the	art.	severity
of	winter.	art.	In warm countries	people rear	pl.	silk-worms
on	mulberry-trees.	art.	2	pays 1	on	élever art.
art.	Dignity of	mind	was			
art.	art.	élévation	art.	sentiment	pl.	ind. 2

formerly (the distinguishing mark of) noblemen.
ce qui distinguer ind. 2 art. gentilhomme
 The Tartars are always the scouts of an army. The
 = *re avant-coureur*
 fish-carriers did not arrive in time. My friend is always telling
 ind. 3 * ind. 1
 (cock and bull stories). He has received a very handsome
de art. coq-à-l'âne
 present from his grandmother. The third squadron of that re-
escadron m.
 giment of light cavalry is ordered to join the main guard. There
léger 2 1 avoir ordre de
 are in France eighty-six chief towns of prefecture. Our descendants
arrière-neveu
 will imitate us, if we do good. In time of war, the savages
art. bien m.
 of America are armed with tomahawks. Blank signatures are a
art.
 perfidious weapon in the hands of a rogue.
 2 *arme f. 1 fripon*

Of DE and À between the Substantives.

When two words following each other in English are so joined as to make a kind of compound word, the first expressing the cause, country, matter, nature, and quality of the sound; as, a *brick-house*, a *silver-spoon*, *gun-powder*, &c., the order of the words must be inverted in French, in the same manner as in the possessive case: the king's palace, *le palais du roi*.

Thus, a brick-house, *une maison de brique*, that is, made of bricks.

Two different prepositions are used, *de* and *à*.

De is used when *made* or *composed of*, *coming from*, *of the*, *belonging to*, can be understood.

EXAMPLES.

An iron gate,	that is, made of iron,	<i>une porte de fer.</i>
a silver spoon,	— made of silver,	<i>une cuiller d'argent.</i>
river-fish,	— coming from the river,	<i>poisson de rivière.</i>

À is used when *for the purpose of, by means of, or with,* may be understood.

EXAMPLES.

A tea-spoon,	spoon for the purpose of taking tea,	<i>une cuiller à thé.</i>
a paper-mill,	mill for the purpose of making paper,	<i>moulin à papier.</i>

EXERCISE.

I always wear silk stockings in summer. She has bought silver
porter
buckles and diamond ear-rings. He has bought a gold box.
pendant d'oreille
Have you in your library Rollin's Ancient History? Burgundy
wine is very dear in England. Bring me my straw hat and my
nightcap. Have you seen the water-mill which my father has
bought? No; but I have seen the wind-mill which your friend has
built at Liverpool. I found your sister's work-bag in the
construire ind. 4
dining-room. The rich make use of silver-plate, and the poor
se servir *vaisselle*
of iron forks and pewter spoons. I do not think your sister's
que
hat is here, unless Mrs. A. has put it in the bed-room.
subj. 1 *à moins que* ne subj. 3
Cæsar's valour, Cicero's eloquence, and Cato's virtue, will always
be the admiration of posterity. Where is the milk-jug?
art. *pot m.*
Bring me a wine-glass and a tea-spoon. Where is the vinegar-
ver m.
bottle? Fire-arms were not known to the ancients. On the fif-
art. f. pl. ind. 4 *de* *ancien* *
teenth of November, the army retired into winter quarters.
ind. 3 *en*

CHAP. II.

OF THE ARTICLE.

THE indefinite article *un* or *une* is used before a substantive singular, to denote one individual of a class, without specifying which one : as,

Un homme, a man ; un oiseau, a bird ; une plume, a pen.

Un, une is not expressed before substantives used adjectively ; but if the substantive is either modified by an adjective, or followed by some restrictive circumstance, or preceded by any tense of the verb *être*, accompanied by *ce* or *c'*, then *un* or *une* must be used ; thus :

I am a Frenchman of an illustrious family.

His father was a clever general.

Je suis un français d'une illustre famille.

Son père était un général habile.

The article *un* or *une* is omitted, 1. Before substantives used adjectively :

I am a Frenchman.

He is a barrister.

Je suis français.

Il est avocat.

2. Before the titles of books ; as,

A history of France.

An eastern novel.

Histoire de France.

Conte oriental.

3. In exclamations :

What a beauty !

What a fine morning !

Quelle beauté !

Quelle belle matinée !

4. Before some substantives which form but one idea with the verb preceding ; as,

To make a fortune.

To pay a visit.

Faire fortune.

Rendre visite.

EXERCISE.

Good example is a language which every one understands. An
 art. *tout le monde*
 ungrateful man is a monster in the eyes of a sensible man. Are you
 * à 2 1
 an Englishman? No; I am a German. I am an unhappy French-
Allemand
 man, who, a memorable example of the revolutions of fortune,
 * art. —
 seek an asylum where I may end my days in peace. A
chercher subj. 1 *finir* *en*
 Roman history, from the foundation of Rome to the destruction of
romain — *jusqu'à*
 the Roman empire. I come from Caen, a considerable town of
 —
 Normandy. He spends much money, a thing which displeases his
 = *die* *dépenser* *déplaître à*
 father. What a noise you make! He was an officer of uncommon
rare
 abilities, and of tried valour; to reward him for the services
talent *un éprouvé* *pour* *de* *que*
 he had rendered to the state, the queen has made him a gene-
 m. pl.
 ral. Neoptolemus had hardly told me that he was a Greek,
 = *me* *eut à peine*
 when I (cried out): "O enchanting words, after so many years of
que *s'écrier* ind. 3 *doux* *parole* f. *de*
 silence and horrid pain! O my son, what misfortune, what storm,
 2 pl. 1 *malheur* *tempête* f.
 or rather what propitious wind has brought thee hither to end my
favorable 2 1 *conduire*
 woes?" We read the account of his death; an event full of in-
mal pl. ind. 3
 terest.

On Nouns of Measure, Weight, and Purchase.

1. The English make use of *a, an*, before nouns of measure, weight, and purchase; as, Wheat is sold for *a* crown *a* bushel; Butter sells for tenpence *a* pound. But the French make use of the article *le, la*: as, *Le*

blé se vend un écu le boisseau ; Le beurre se vend dix sous la livre.

2. When speaking of time, *a* or *an* is expressed in French by the preposition *par* ; as, So much a week, *Tant par semaine* : a head is rendered by *par tête* ; a man, *par homme* or *chacun*.

EXERCISE.

I sell sugar for two guineas a (hundredweight), coffee two
 art. *quintal* art.
 shillings a pound, and tea five shillings a pound. Barley sells
 art. *orge*
 for three shillings a bushel. Beef costs eightpence a pound.
 + art.
 This riband costs a shilling a yard. Burgundy wine is sold
ruban m. *mètre m.* *le vin de Bourgogne*
 in this country seven or eight shillings a bottle. It is necessary, if
falloir
 you wish to (improve fast) that you should take a lesson
vouloir * *faire de grands progrès* subj. I *
 three times a week. He gives his son seven shillings and sixpence
à *
 a-day. We had an excellent dinner at five shillings a head.
faire ind. 4
 We go to France twice a year.

Of the definite Article.

CASES IN WHICH THE ARTICLE IS USED.

The definite article *le, la, les* is used and repeated :

1. Before common substantives taken in a general or particular sense ; as,

La vertu est aimable.

Virtue is amiable.

Le vice est odieux.

Vice is odious.

Les livres que vous lisez.

The books you read.

2. Before names of kingdoms, countries, provinces, islands, rivers, mountains, winds, and also before the four quarters of the globe ; as,

France, England, Austria,
Prussia, and Russia are powerful
states.

Normandy, Britany.

The Alps, the north wind.

The Rhine, the Danube.

Europe, Asia.

La France, l'Angleterre, l'Autriche, la Prusse, et la Russie sont des états puissants.

La Normandie, la Bretagne.

Les Alpes, l'Aquilon.

Le Rhin, le Danube.

L'Europe, l'Asie.

3. Before proper names used in a restrictive sense, and before the names of some Italian poets and artists ; as,

The God of Christians.

Modern Rome.

The god of peace.

Dante, Ariosto.

Le Dieu des Chrétiens.

La Rome moderne.

Le dieu de paix.

Le Dante, l'Arioste.

4. Before verbs, adjectives, or adverbs taken substantively ; as,

Eating and drinking.

The useful and agreeable.

The why and the wherefore.

Le manger et le boire.

L'utile et l'agréable.

Le pourquoi et le comment.

EXERCISE.

Pride and vanity are often the source of many misfortunes. Intemperance and idleness are the two most dangerous enemies of life. Heroes have their fits of fear, and cowards their art.

(brave moments). The Creator of heaven and earth is the God of moments de bravoure

Christians. France is bounded on the south by the Pyrenees and borné à sud Pyrénées

the Mediterranean, on the east by Switzerland and Savoy, on the Méditerranée f. est Suisse f. Savoie f.

north by Belgium, and on the west by the Atlantic Ocean. Sicily nord Belgique f. ouest océan m. Sicile f.

is the granary of Italy, and Italy the garden of Europe. The Italie f. art. — f.

bleak north wind never blows here, and the heat of summer is rigoureux ardeur

tempered by the cooling zephyrs which come (to refresh) the rafraîchissant 2 1 adoucir

air towards the middle of the day. The God of Abraham, Isaac,

and Jacob was the only true God. The man who lives under an
seul dans

habitual sense of the divine presence, preserves a perpetual
 2 conviction f. 1 2 — f. 1 *conserver constant*

cheerfulness of temper, and enjoys every moment the satisfaction
gaieté f. caractère jouir de à

of (thinking himself) in company with the dearest and best of
se croire dans art. de

friends.

art.

CASES IN WHICH THE ARTICLE IS NOT USED.

The definite article *le, la, les* is omitted:

1. Before a substantive having the sense of an adjective; as,

The king of Sweden.

Le roi de Suède.

A man of courage.

Un homme de courage.

A gold watch.

Une montre d'or.

2. Before names of countries when governed by the preposition *en*, or after verbs or expressions denoting coming or returning from; as,

He is in Spain.

Il est en Espagne.

I am just arrived from England.

J'arrive d'Angleterre.

However, in speaking of a country which is not in Europe, the article is required; as,

I come from Mexico.

Je viens du Mexique.

I am just arrived from Canada.

J'arrive du Canada.

3. Before proper names of persons and particular places; as,

I admire Cicero, Demosthenes.

J'admire Cicéron, Démosthène.

I have visited Naples, Florence, Venice.

J'ai visité Naples, Florence, Venise.

4. Before any number used after the Christian name of a sovereign, or in a quotation of a book, chapter, &c. ; as,

George the Fourth.	<i>George quatre.</i>
Louis the Fourteenth.	<i>Louis quatorze.</i>
Book the Sixth.	<i>Livre six.</i>
Chapter the Fifth.	<i>Chapitre cinq.</i>

5. To give more emphasis to the expression when enumerating several substantives ; as,

Women, children, old men, all *Femmes, enfants, vieillards, tout*
were put to the edge of the sword. *fut passé au fil de l'épée.*

6. When they are governed by the words *genre, espèce, sorte*, or terms of this kind ; as,

Une sorte de fruit.	<i>A sort of fruit.</i>
Un genre d'ouvrage.	<i>A kind of work.</i>
Une meute de chiens.	<i>A pack of dogs.</i>
Une bande de voleurs.	<i>A troop of robbers.</i>

7. Before nouns preceded by the determinative adjectives *mon, ton, son, notre, votre, leur, ce, nul, aucun, chaque, tout, certain, plusieurs, tel*, or before those which are preceded by a cardinal number without any relation whatever ; as,

Nos mœurs mettent le prix à nos richesses.	<i>Our manners fix the value of our riches.</i>
Chaque pays a ses coutumes.	<i>Each country has its customs.</i>
Trente soldats sont arrivés.	<i>Thirty soldiers have arrived.</i>

Remark. — When the adverbs *more* and *less* are repeated to express a comparison, they are preceded in English by the article *the* ; as, The more difficult a thing is, the more honourable it is. In French, the article is omitted ; as, *Plus une chose est difficile, plus elle est honorable.*

EXERCISE.

He has received French and Spanish wines, Italian silks, Provence oil, and English wool. We (set sail) from Holland to go to the
partir ind. 3

Cape of Good Hope. My brother likes to travel; he was last
Bonne Espérance. *aimer à* ind. 2 2

year in Italy; he is just come from Russia; he will stay this winter
 1 *rester*

in England, and will go next spring to Scotland and Ireland.
 2 1 *en Ecosse Irlande*

My friend, after having spent two years in Brazil, will embark for
passer à Brésil s'embarquer

China and Japan. Jupiter, son of Saturn and Cybele, after
Chine Japon Saturne Cybèle

having expelled his father from the throne, divided the
 inf. 2 *en partager* ind. 3

paternal inheritance with his two brothers, Neptune and Pluto.
 * *héritage*

Have you read the history of the age of Louis the Fourteenth
siècle

and of Louis the Fifteenth? You will find that anecdote page
 — f.

sixty-six, book the third, chapter the fourth. There are two kinds
sorte

of curiosity: the one of interest, which incites us to desire to learn
 = *porter*

what may be useful to us; and the other of pride, which proceeds
ce qui peut orgueil venir

from the desire of knowing what others (are ignorant of). (Old
ignorer art. viel-

age) is a sort of tyrant, who forbids, under pain of death, all the
lesse f.

pleasures of youth. That good father was happy in his children,
jeunesse ind. 2 dans

and his children were happy in him. This gold watch is new,
en montre f. neuf

offer it to your sister. Do you think your mother (will come)
 subj. 1

on Friday or Saturday? May and September are the two finest
 *

months of the year in the south of France. The more I contemplate those precious remains of antiquity, the more I am struck with
de
wonder.
étonnement.

Of the Partitive Article, DU, DE LA, DE L', DES.

1. The partitive article, *du, de la, de l', des*, is used in French before a substantive, to express an indeterminate number or portion of a thing. This article answers to *some, any*, expressed or understood.

EXAMPLE.

Donnez-moi du pain, du beurre, *Give me some bread, some butter,*
et de la viande. *and some meat.*

2. But *de* alone, without the article, is used when an adjective, an adverb of quantity, or a negation precedes the noun thus spoken of in a partial sense.

EXAMPLES.

He has good pens.	<i>Il a de bonnes plumes.</i>
Bring me much water.	<i>Apportez-moi beaucoup d'eau.</i>
Do not give me wine.	<i>Né me donnez pas de vin.</i>
How many pictures !	<i>Que de tableaux !</i>

Exception.—*Bien*, which requires the article.

Remark.—These expressions, *des jeunes gens, des petits-pâtés, des petits-mâîtres, des petites-maisons, des sages-femmes*, are not exceptions to the rule which requires *de* before an adjective, because the substantives and adjectives are to be considered as forming one and the same word.

EXERCISE.

Money gives to a woman credit, friends, rank, and even beauty.
naissance

A good Christian considers the world as a place of exile, where he
lieu exil

meets with snares, difficulties, and dangers. Spain produces
trouver * *piège* = — *Espagne*

wine, lemons, oranges, and olives. Give me some cold water and
 red wine. History affords many instances of old generals conquered
rouge *offre* *exemple* *vaincu*

by young soldiers. Lycurgus said to the Spartans, "Do you wish
 = *gue* *Spartiate* *vouloir*

to be ever free and respected? Be ever poor, and never undertake

conquests." Among the Romans, those who were convicted of having
 used illicit means to obtain an office were excluded (from it) for
employer 2 *voie* f. 1 ind. 2 *en*

ever. Whoever has many witnesses of his death, always dies with
Quiconque *bien*

courage. A noble heart, said a king of Persia, receives small presents
Perse

with one hand, and makes great ones with the other. Few people deny
de *en*

the truth of the Gospel, and yet many live as if it were not true.
cependant ind. 2

CHAP. III.

OF THE ADJECTIVE.

Of the Qualificative Adjective.

It has been said that an adjective agrees in gender and number with the substantive which it qualifies. From this rule, however, must be excepted *nu*, bare, and *demi*, half, when placed before a substantive; and *feu*, late, when before the article or an adjective possessive; as,

Il va nu pieds.
 Je suis à vous dans une demi-
 heure.
 Feu la reine, feu ma mère.

He goes barefoot.
I will be with you in half an
hour.
The late queen, my late mother.

But the agreement takes place, if *nu* and *demi* are placed after the substantive, and *feu* between the article or possessive adjective and the substantive. Thus :

Il a les pieds nus.	<i>His feet are bare.</i>
Je suis à vous dans une heure et demie.	<i>I will be with you in an hour and a half.</i>
La feue reine, ma feue mère.	<i>The late queen, my late mother.</i>

EXERCISE.

He ran through the streets like a madman, barefoot and bare-headed. His legs were bare. Give me half-a-guinea, and then you (will only owe) me a guinea and a half. I shall be at home in half an hour. Come before half-past one. The late queen was much loved. The late queen was much regretted. Cut half a yard. Send for three pounds and a half of butter. The bugle will sound at half-past ten. People to avoid, nearly as much as evil, half remedies in great evils. The Chinese have been for many ages a half-barbarous nation.

*ind. 2 * fou Il art. jambe 2 avoir 1 ne devoir plus que 2 une heure et 1 2 1 aune f. envoyez chercher clairon m. sonner On devoir cond. 1 art. mal art. art. mal*

Chinois ind. 1 depuis siècle 2 1

Adjectives of Dimension.

1. In English, the substantive of measure is placed before the substantive or adjective expressing the dimensions ; as, A tower two hundred feet high, or in height. In French, the word which expresses dimensions is placed first, if it be an adjective, and the preposition *de* is added to it as regimen ; as, *Une tour haute de cents pieds*. But if it be a substantive, or an adjective used substantively, it is placed after,

with the preposition *de*, either before the noun of measure, or of dimension; as, *Une tour de deux cents pieds de haut*, or *de hauteur*. This last mode is the most elegant.

2. The English manner of expressing dimensions, is to use the verb *to be* ; as, This tower is a hundred feet high. The French use the verb *avoir* ; as, *Cette tour a cent pieds de haut, or de hauteur.*

EXERCISE.

The monument of London is a round pillar of the Doric order,
pillier m. = que
 two hundred feet high. The beautiful column in the Place Ven-
de
 dôme in Paris, is two hundred feet high. That pond is fifteen
à étang m.
 feet deep by three hundred in circumference. The walls of our
sur
 garden are twelve feet high and two feet thick. The walls of Babylon
= ne
 were two hundred feet high, and fifty broad. The great wall
 ind. 2
 on the north of China is about fifteen hundred miles long, and the
à
 imperial canal of that empire is about eighteen hundred miles long.
2 1 — environ
 It is one of the finest stones that was ever seen; it is twenty
Ce on ait jamais vues
 feet long and six thick. The walls of Algiers are twelve feet
Alger
 thick and thirty feet high. This ditch is nine feet six inches
poucé
 deep and six feet broad.
profondeur

Of the Adjective with the Article.

1. Adjectives, used substantively, require the article.

EXAMPLES.

Le riche ne donne pas tous- *The rich man does not always*
 jours. *give.*
 J'aime mieux le noir que le *I like black better than red.*
 rouge.

2. When a noun is accompanied by two adjectives, expressing opposite qualities, the article must be repeated before each adjective.

EXAMPLES.

Le vieux et le jeune soldat. *The old and young soldier.*
 Le premier et le second étage. *The first and second floor.*

3. When a superlative relative precedes a substantive, the article serves for both; if it follow, the article must be repeated before each.

EXAMPLE.

Les plus habiles gens font quel- *The ablest men sometimes com-*
 quefois les plus grandes fautes; *mit the grossest blunders.*
 or, Les gens les plus habiles font
 quelquefois les fautes les plus
 grandes.

EXERCISE.

The wise man is great in the smallest things, and the wicked is
 *
 little in the greatest. The object of ancient and modern philoso-
 but
 phers is to encourage men to be virtuous. In the eyes of envy,
 de à
 the best established reputation is only a public error. Good and
 ne que 2 1
 bad seem to be blended together through all nature, and some-
 mêlé dans art. —f.
 times to be confounded (with each other). White and black are
 l'un avec l'autre
 two opposite colours. The wise man seeketh wisdom, but the fool
 opposé * chercher
 despiseth understanding. The man who is jealous of his reputation
 mépriser raison f.

frequents good and shuns bad company. The least excusable man is he who cannot (correct himself) of his faults. The fifteenth and celui se corriger

sixteenth centuries have been marked by great discoveries. The siècle

most ridiculous people in the intercourse of society are those personnage commerce m.

who are called coxcombs. The most sublime thoughts are none on ind. 1 de petit-maitre

thing, if they are badly expressed.

The Place of Adjectives.

RULE I. — The determinative adjectives, that is, the numeral, possessive, demonstrative, and indefinite, precede their substantive, as do generally the following sixteen: *beau, bon, brave, cher, chétif, grand, gros, jeune, mauvais, méchant, meilleur, moindre, petit, saint, vieux*, and *vrai*, when taken in their literal sense.

EXAMPLES.

mon père,	<i>my father.</i>	chétive mine,	<i>mean look.</i>
quel homme,	<i>what man.</i>	cette femme,	<i>that woman.</i>
plusieurs officiers,	<i>several officers.</i>	dix guinées,	<i>ten guineas.</i>
		brave général,	<i>brave general.</i>

Exceptions.

1. The indefinite adjective, *quelconque*; as,

D'une manière quelconque. *In whatever manner.*

2. Adjectives of number, joined to proper names, pronouns, and substantives, as quotations.

EXAMPLES.

George quatre.	<i>George the Fourth.</i>
Lui dixième.	<i>He the tenth.</i>
Chapitre dix.	<i>Chapter the tenth.</i>
Page trente.	<i>Page the thirtieth.</i>

3. The above sixteen adjectives, when connected by a conjunction with another adjective, which is to be placed after the substantive.

EXAMPLE.

C'est une femme grande et bien faite. *She is a tall, well-made woman.*

Remark.—In English, two, or even several adjectives, may qualify the substantive, without a conjunction; but in French it is generally placed before the last adjective; as, *C'est un homme aimable et poli*, He is an amiable, well-behaved man: except when custom allows the substantive to be placed between two adjectives; as, *C'est un grand homme sec*, He is a tall thin man.

EXERCISE.

Great men undertake great things because they are great, and
parceque
 fools, because they think them easy. The Mississippi has a course
 of four thousand eight hundred miles; it is the greatest river
ce fleuve l.
 in the world. A good king often loses, by the ill conduct of his
de
 ministers, the affection of his subjects. Young men hope they
 shall live long, but no one is sure he shall live till to-
 * *t personne* * *de jusqu'à*
 morrow. Thirty chambers, which (have a communication) one
communiquer
 with another, and (each of them) an iron door, with six huge
dont chacun avoir gros
 bolts, are the places where he (shuts himself up). What man
lieu sing. se renfermer
 was ever satisfied with his condition, and dissatisfied with his
de mécontent de
 abilities. Great and extensive projects, joined to a wise execution,
esprit sing. vaste

constitute the great minister. Courtiers often flatter themselves
faire
 that under a young liberal prince they (shall be able) to attain to
*pouvoir * arriver*
 a power which they never could hope for in the service of an old
*poste m. * à*
 frugal prince. Brave and trusty men are generally humane and
 merciful; while men of a base and low mind are usually insolent
rampant
 and tyrannical when they have power. Louis the Sixteenth
art. autorité
 died on the scaffold on the twenty-first of January, one thousand
 ind. 3
 seven hundred and ninety-three.

RULE II. — Adjectives formed from the participle present of verbs are generally placed after the substantives; those formed from the participle past are always so; as, *ouvrage divertissant, une porte ouverte*. Those expressing form, colour, sound, action, effect, arrangement, species, nation, are placed after, as are also those ending in *esque, il, ule, ic, ique, in*; as,

bien public,	<i>public good.</i>	nation anglaise,	<i>English nation.</i>
femme crédule,	<i>credulous woman.</i>	maison blanche,	<i>white house.</i>
jargon puéril,	<i>childish jargon.</i>	procureur actif,	<i>active attorney.</i>

EXERCISE.

An ignorant young man is despised by everybody. Have you read the Second Punic War? Humility is the basis of Christian virtues. The public good is preferable to private interest. The
particulier

central fire is the physical cause of the heat of subterraneous
art.

springs. I have bought a white gown and a black cloak. I have
source mantelet m.

heard your sister sing; she has a melodious voice. I have a
entendre 2 3 1

scholar of a solid, bright, and quick genius. French urbanity has
élève brillant vif esprit

become a proverb among foreign nations. The epic poem, whether
chez soit que

it appears in the majestic simplicity of Homer, or in the finished subj. 1

elegance of Virgil, presents an endless variety of grand and beautiful objects, which it is impossible to contemplate without a perpetual
que de

succession of agreeable emotions. It may (be said) that a magis-
on peut dire

trate is a speaking law, and the law a dumb magistrate. The
parlant muet 2 1

majestic eloquence of Bossuet is like a river, which carries away
— fleuve m. entrainer

everything in (its rapid course). The smiling images of
la rapidité de son cours riant

Theocritus, Virgil, and Gesner, excite in the soul a soft sensibility.
= te = — porter

Regimen of Adjectives.

Several qualificative adjectives have a regimen; some require the preposition *de*, some *à*, and others *envers*, before a noun or a verb, which is then called the regimen or government of the adjective; as,

Digne de récompense.

Utile à l'homme.

Content de vivre.

Affable envers ses inférieurs.

Worthy of reward.

Useful to man.

Satisfied with living.

Affable to his inferiors.

Récompense is the government or regimen of the adjective *digne*, as it is joined to it by the word *de*; and so with the rest.

Observation. — A noun may be governed by two adjectives, provided they do not require different regimens; as, *Cet homme est utile et cher à sa famille*, That man is useful and dear to his family. But it would be incorrect to say, *Cet homme est utile et chéri de sa famille*, because the adjective *utile* does not govern the preposition *de*.

EXERCISE.

Xerxes being loaded with all the advantages of fortune, and
 ——— *comblé* art.
 yet not being satisfied (with them), proposed a reward to him who
 ——— *en*
 should invent new pleasures for him. We are in vain endued with
 cond. 1 *douté*
 reason, if we are not endued with virtue. A disturbed mind is not
 ——— *troublé*
 fit to discharge its duty. Marshy places are liable to heavy fogs.
remplir lieu sujet
 That is easy to say. Rousseau, endowed with a strong and fiery
 ——— *bouillant*
 imagination, was all his life subject to frequent fits of
enclin de accès m. pl.
 misanthropy, and liable to all the variations attendant upon it. Let
 ——— *f. qui en sont la suite*
 us be kind to the poor. Scipio Africanus was respectful to his
 ——— *l'Africain*
 mother, liberal to his sister, good to his servants, just and affable to
 everybody. I do not like people who are cruel to animals. A
 young lady, mild, polite, and delicate, who sees in the advantages of
demoiselle décent
 birth, riches, wit, and beauty, nothing but incitement to virtue,
 ——— *ne que encouragement pl.*
 is certain of being beloved and esteemed by everybody.
assuré

A list of adjectives which require *de* before their
 regimen : —

absent.	digne.	jaloux.
aise.	enivré.	joyeux.
amoureux.	ennuyé.	las.
arriéré.	envieux.	libre.
assuré.	exempt.	mécontent.
avide.	fier.	orgueilleux.
capable.	fort.	plein.
complice.	fou.	redevable.
content.	glorieux.	rempli.
contrit.	honteux.	soigneux.
coupable.	incapable.	sûr.
dépendant.	indépendant.	tributaire.
désireux.	indigne.	vide, &c.
différent.	insatiable.	

And, in general, all those which signify plenty, scarcity, want.

A list of adjectives which require *à* before their regimen : —

accessible.	docile.	occupé.
adonné.	enclin.	odieux.
adroit.	exact.	pareil.
agile.	facile.	porté.
agréable.	favorable.	prêt.
aisé.	gélé.	prompt.
alerte.	habile.	redoutable.
antérieur.	hardi.	semblable.
ardent.	impénétrable.	sensible.
attentif.	inaccessible.	souple.
bon.	inconnu.	sourd.
cher.	inconcevable.	sujet.
conforme.	ingénieux.	tardif.
contraire.	insensible.	terrible.
convenable.	lent.	utile, &c.
désagréable.	nnisible.	

And, in general, all those which denote aptness, fitness, inclination, ease, readiness, or any habit.

Some adjectives require *envers* : *complaisant, généreux, affable, indulgent, prévenant, cruel, bon*, and any other expressing kindness or unkindness of feeling towards persons and animals.

Of the Determinative Adjectives — Numeral, Demonstrative, Possessive, and Indefinite.

1. *Unième* is used only after *vingt, trente, quarante, quatre-vingt, cent*, and *mille*. *C'est la vingt-unième fois*, It is the twenty-first time. *Vingt* and *cent* are the only numeral cardinal adjectives which take the sign of the plural. They take *s* when multiplied by another number : *quatre-vingts soldats*, eighty soldiers ; *trois cents chevaux*, three hundred horses ; *ils sont quatre-*

vingts, they are eighty ; *il y en a deux cents*, there are two hundred.

They do not take *s*, though multiplied, when they are followed by another number: *quatre-vingt-cinq soldats*, eighty-five soldiers; *trois cent dix chevaux*, three hundred and ten horses.

Remark. — *Vingt* and *cent*, used for *vingtième*, *centième*, are undeclined, because they qualify a noun singular, expressed or understood: *Chapitre quatre-vingt*, *page deux cent*, *en mil huit cent*; that is, *Chapitre quatre-vingtième*, *page deux-centième*, *en (l'an) mil huit centième*.

For dates, the French write *mil* ; as, *mil huit cent cinquante*.

Mille, thousand, never takes s.

The French say, *Le onze, du onze, au onze, sur les onze heures, sur les une heure*, pronouncing the words *onze* and *une* as if they were written with an *h* aspirated.

EXERCISE.

It was on the tenth of May, one thousand six hundred and thirty-

one, that the flourishing town of Magdeburg was taken, sacked, and
=bourg

fired by the imperial troops commanded by the ferocious Tilly and
brûler

the bloody Pappenheim. Above thirty-six thousand of its inha-
sanquinaire *Plus de*

bitants perished by the sword or in the flames; hardly twelve
à peine

hundred escaped to relate the mournful story. America was
triste histoire

discovered by Christopher Columbus in the year one thousand four
=phe Colomb

hundred and ninety-two. On the eleventh of last month he
* 2 1

received from Paris two hundred volumes, and eighty beautiful

engravings. If you do not alter your conduct, and (make amends
gravure * *changer de* * *et si ne réparer*
 for) your former injustice, this widow whom you have oppressed,
pas premier veuve part. f.
 this poor woman whom you have forsaken, these unfortunate beings
 part. f.
 whom you have despised, will accuse you in the day of judgment.
 part. m. pl. à
 That woman is whimsical ; she changes her resolution every day.
de
 You will find that anecdote at page three hundred.
 art. — f.

Of Possessive Adjectives.

The possessive adjectives, *mon, ton, son, ma, ta, sa, mes, tes, ses, notre, votre, leur, nos, vos, leurs*, agree in gender and number with the noun to which they are prefixed, and are to be repeated before every substantive. If they relate to things, the following rules must be observed : —

1. The possessive adjectives are always employed when the object to which they relate is either named or designated by a personal pronoun, in the same member of a phrase.

EXAMPLE.

L'Angleterre étend son commerce par toute la terre, elle envoie ses flottes dans toutes les mers. *England extends her commerce over the whole globe, she sends her fleets into every part of the ocean.*

2. Before a noun, when qualified even by a single adjective, unless the noun form the regimen.

EXAMPLE.

Ses ressources immenses sont inépuisables. *Her immense resources are inexhaustible.*

3. After every preposition.

EXAMPLE.

C'est par sa position, jointe à la sagesse de son gouvernement, qu'elle réunit dans son sein de si grands avantages. *It is by her situation, joined to the wisdom of her government, that she unites such vast advantages within herself.*

4. Before all words which can govern the preposition *de*.

EXAMPLE.

Son parlement est le sanctuaire de la plus sage politique.

On all other occasions, *its* and *their* are expressed by *en* placed immediately before the verb, and the article *le, la, les* before the substantive. So, in speaking of London, we say,

Its situation is very convenient. *La situation en est très commode.*
I particularly admire its rich warehouses. *J'en admire surtout les riches magasins.*

EXERCISE.

Such are men; their ingratitude is often the price of our favours. A good king does not (so much) consult his own dignity
tant propre

as the advantage and happiness of his subjects. The laborious man (shuts out) idleness from his house; he considers it as his greatest
bannir

enemy; he (rises up) early, he exercises his mind with
ennemie f. se lever de bon matin dans

contemplation, and his body with labour. Solomon abandons
art. — par Salomon

himself to the love of women: his understanding declines, his heart
esprit baisser

weakens, and his piety degenerates into idolatry. The trees of
s'affaiblir

that orchard have sun enough, yet its fruits are (but indifferent).
être bien exposé assez mauvais

This illness is dangerous; I know its origin and effects. Nobles, remember that an illustrious birth receives from virtue its most
se ressouvenir

shining lustre. Paris is a fine city; but its streets are too narrow,
brillant — m. *ville* *trop étroit*
 and its houses too high. History and geography (throw mutual
s'éclairer
 light on each other); a perfect knowledge (of them) ought
l'une par l'autre * *leur* *devoir* ind. l
 to enter into the plan of a good education.

The French prefix the qualifications of *Monsieur*,
Madame, *Mademoiselle* to the possessive adjectives
votre or *vos*, when they speak to persons of their re-
 lations.

EXAMPLES.

How does your mother do? *Comment se porte madame votre*

mère?

Are your sisters going to the *Mesdemoiselles vos sœurs vont-elles*
 ball? *au bal?*

When they speak to their own relations, the
 French use the possessive adjective before the words
père, mère, frère, sœur, &c.

EXAMPLES.

Sister, come here, I want to *Ma sœur, venez ici que je vous*
 speak to you. *parle.*

Father, when do you set off? *Mon père, quand partez-vous?*

Exception. — Papa, maman.

EXERCISE.

Is your mother returned from the country? Allow me to con-
campagne

gratulate you on your brother's appointment. Good night, cousin,
de *nomination*

I hope you will come soon to see my country-house and gardens.
 Your horses and carriage are very beautiful, you ought to be much
devoir * *bien*

pleased (with them). I have invited your sisters and cousin
 to dine with us, I hope they will come. Is your father at
que

home? I saw your father and mother at three o'clock, but I did not see your sister; is she ill? Lend me your knife, brother.
ind. 4

I cannot, sister, (I want it). Where are you, daughter?
en avoir besoin

Here I am, father. I believe that his father and mother are dead.
me voici

Mother, mother, (here is) a gentleman who has brought us a letter
voici monsieur
from papa.

When there exists any doubt whether the possessive adjective ought to be used or not before a noun that is the regimen, the following rule is to be observed :

The article, not the possessive adjective, must be placed before a noun forming the regimen, when a pronoun which is either subject or regimen sufficiently supplies the place of that possessive adjective, or when there is no sort of ambiguity.

EXAMPLES.

J'ai mal à la tête.	<i>I have a pain in my head.</i>
Il faudrait lui couper la jambe.	<i>It would be necessary to take off his leg.</i>
Il a perdu l'esprit.	<i>He has lost his senses.</i>
La tête me fait mal.	<i>My head aches.</i>

But should either the personal pronoun, or circumstances, not remove all ambiguity, then the possessive adjective must be joined to the noun ; as,

Je vois que ma jambe enfle.	<i>I see that my leg is swelling.</i>
Il lui donna sa main à baiser.	<i>He gave him his hand to kiss.</i>

Remark 1. — Although verbs which are conjugated with two pronouns of the same person generally remove every kind of amphibology, yet custom authorises some familiar expressions, in which the possessive adjective seems to be redundant ; as,

Il se tient ferme sur ses pieds. *He stands firm upon his feet.*
 Je l'ai vu de mes propres yeux. *I have seen it with my own eyes.*

2. When speaking of an habitual complaint, the possessive adjective is properly used ; as,

Sa migraine l'a repris. *His headache is returned.*

When speaking of anything done to any part of the body, or of the understanding, such as to wash one's hands, to enrich one's memory, a pronoun, governed by the preposition *à*, is added to the verb, to show whose hands, whose memory, are thus affected.

If the thing is done to ourselves, and by ourselves, the verb is reflected.

I wash my hands. *Je me lave les mains.*
 Thou cuttest thy finger. *Tu te coupes le doigt.*
 We have washed our hands. *Nous nous sommes lavé les mains.*

You improve your mind. *Vous vous formez l'esprit.*

If the thing is done to another, the indirect regimen, *me, te, lui, nous, vous, leur*, are used with the verb ; as,

You hurt my hand. *Vous me blessez la main.*
 You have broken his arm. *Vous lui avez cassé le bras.*
 Did I tread on your foot ? *Vous ai-je marché sur le pied ?*

EXERCISE.

In this bloody battle he received a (wound by a shot) in his right arm, and another in his left leg ; by dint of care his arm

*coup de feu à
à force*

was saved ; but it was necessary to amputate his leg.
on with the active voice falloir ind. 3

The man who fell from the roof of our house disjoined his wrist, broke his right leg, dislocated his shoulders, and hurt his head. I have the ear-ache and he has the tooth-ache. In the last battle our general lost his leg, my brother was wounded in his shoulder, and I, who stood by him, had my thigh carried

*ind. 3 se démettre
poignet m. se disloquer se blesser*

moi être ind. 2 auprès de j'eus emporté

off. It (would be better for) a man of probity to lose his life
vaudrait mieux que * subj. 2
 than his honour by a criminal action. My brother broke his leg
 2 1
 yesterday morning; our carriage ran unfortunately over his body,
passer sur
 broke his leg, and bruised his left shoulder. Do not tread upon
meurtrir 2 1 marcher
 my foot. You will cut your finger. Who has cut your hair?
cheveux pl.
 Where did he lose his leg? She courageously presented her arm
 ind. 4 *donner*
 to the surgeon. Whatever he may do, he always finds himself
Quoique subj. 1
 safe.
sur ses jambes

Of the Indefinite Adjectives.

Indefinite adjectives, as it has been said before, determine the signification of the substantive, in adding to it, for the most part, an idea of generality.

Aucun, aucune, signifying *pas un*, not one, excludes all idea of plurality; the same may be said of *nul, nulle*, when preceding a substantive: they require *ne* before the verb.

EXAMPLES.

Aucune raison ne peut justifier le mensonge. *No argument can justify lying.*

Il n'a nulle raison de m'en vouloir. *He has no cause to be angry with me.*

Exception. — *Aucun* and *nul* take the plural with a substantive which has no singular, and with those which, in some particular sense, are better employed in that number : as,

Il n'a fait aucunes dispositions.
Nulles troupes ne sont mieux disciplinées.

*He has made no preparations.
No troops are better disciplined.*

Chaque always requires a substantive after it; as,

Chaque pays a ses plantes *Each country has its particular plants.*
particulières.

Même is adjective or adverb. It is adjective,
1. when it precedes the substantive; as,

Les mêmes arguments. *The same arguments.*

2. When it is placed after a pronoun or a single substantive; as,

Les dieux eux-mêmes devin- *The gods themselves became*
rent jaloux des bergers. *jealous of the shepherds.*
Ces murs mêmes peuvent avoir *These very walls might have*
des yeux. *eyes.*

Même is adverb, 1. when it is placed after two or several substantives; as,

Les animaux, les plantes même *Animals, plants even, were among*
étaient au nombre des divinités *the number of Egyptian divi-*
égyptiennes. *nities.*

2. When it qualifies a verb; as,

Exempts de maux réels, les *Free from real evils, men create*
hommes s'en forment même de *even chimerical ones.*
chimériques.

EXERCISE.

He will submit to no authority. No troops have showed more courage than the three hundred Spartans who died fighting for
Spartiate
their country at the defile of the Thermopylæ. I have no knowledge
= les nul
of it. Every country has its customs, laws, and ceremonies.
en
Several poems of the first merit appear obscure, because the reader
paraître
is not sufficiently acquainted with the ancient fables, historical
* connaître *

facts, or natural objects to which the poet alludes. When we
faire allusion

apply to several sciences, we seldom succeed in any. The
s'appliquer réussir aucun

same virtues which serve to conquer an empire serve also to
 ——— m.

preserve it. It is the same sun which lights all the nations of the
 earth. A thing worthy of admiration: among the immense num-
 * dans

ber of men who people the earth, you cannot find two exactly
peupler on en

alike either in face or features. Several, in attempting to deceive
 * trait vouloir *

others, have deceived themselves.

Quelque is written in three different ways:

1. *Quelque que*, joined to a substantive, either alone, or accompanied by an adjective, takes the sign of the plural; and the verb following is put in the subjunctive; as,

Quelques efforts que vous fas- *Whatever efforts you may make.*
 siez.

Quelques grandes fautes que *However great faults you may*
 vous ayez commises. *have committed.*

2. *Quelque que*, joined to an adjective separated from its substantive, does not take the sign of the plural; as,

Quelque sincères que soient les *However sincere men are.*
 hommes.

Quelque éclairés que soient les *However enlightened the minis-*
 ministres. *ters are.*

3. *Quelque que* and *quel que* joined to a substan-
 tive, have the same meaning, although they are not
 used indifferently for each other. If the pronoun

tout homme, toute femme, tous les hommes, toutes les femmes; nous sommes tous sujets à la mort.

2. *Tout* adverb signifies *tout-à-fait*, quite, entirely; *quelque, quoique*, however: as,

Tout spirituels qu'ils sont. *Witty as they may be.*

RULE. — *Tout* before an adjective, or a substantive used adjectively, never takes either gender or number, except when immediately followed by an adjective feminine beginning with a consonant or *h* aspirated; as,

Les enfants tout aimables qu'ils sont.	<i>Children amiable as they may be.</i>
Ils sont tout interdits.	<i>They are quite disconcerted.</i>
Ces images, tout amusantes qu'elles sont.	<i>These images, entertaining as they may be.</i>
Elle est toute stupéfaite.	<i>She is quite stupified.</i>
Toute hardie qu'elle est.	<i>Bold as she is.</i>
Toutes spirituelles qu'elles sont.	<i>Witty as they are.</i>

EXERCISE.

Philosophers, learned as they are, are sometimes mistaken. Your
 * *se tromper*
 sister is quite changed by her illness. Virtue, austere as it is, makes
 us enjoy real pleasures. These peaches are quite as good as those
jour de
 of the South of France. Although that absurd pedant is an incessant
 2
 scribbler, yet (his head is altogether) empty. (Far be) from us
 1 *il n'en a pas moins la tête vide.* loin
 those maxims of flattery, that kings are born (with talents), and
 ind. 1 *habile*
 that their favoured souls (come out) of God's hands quite wise and
privilegié *sortir*
 learned. The wife, mother, and daughter of Darius, afflicted as
 they were, when Alexander took them prisoners, could not forbear
 = *dre faire* f. pl. *s'empêcher*
 admiring his generosity.
 de inf. 1

CHAP. IV.

OF THE PRONOUN.

Of the Personal Pronouns.

1. PERSONAL pronouns, employed as subjects, are placed before verbs. The person who speaks always names himself last, and the person addressed is generally named first. In interrogations, they are placed after the verbs.

EXAMPLES.

J'intéressai sa gloire.	<i>I interested his glory.</i>
Il trembla pour sa vie.	<i>He trembled for his life.</i>
Nous irons ce soir à la campagne, vous, votre frère, et moi.	<i>We will go this evening into the country, you, your brother, and I.</i>

2. With respect to pronouns acting as regimen, the following rules have been established : —

RULE I. — The pronouns *me, te, se, le, la, les, leur, y, and en* are generally placed before verbs, as are *nous, vous, and lui*, when without a preposition.

EXAMPLES.

Il me dit,	<i>he tells me.</i>	Je lui parle,	<i>I speak to him.</i>
Je le vois,	<i>I see him.</i>	J'y songerai,	<i>I will think of it.</i>
Je les écoute,	<i>I listen to them.</i>	J'en suis ravi,	<i>I am delighted at it.</i>

RULE II. — The pronouns *moi, toi, soi, nous, vous, lui, eux, elle, and elles* are placed after verbs, when they are preceded by a preposition.

EXAMPLES.

Cela dépend de moi.	<i>That depends on me.</i>
Je pense à toi.	<i>I think of thee.</i>
On s'occupe trop de soi.	<i>We are too attentive to ourselves.</i>
Que dit-on d'eux ?	<i>What is said of them ?</i>

EXERCISE.

In the long winter evenings, my father, my brothers, and I,
de 2 1
 (used to spend) two hours in the library, and read there
nous passer ind. 2 bibliothèque f. nous ind. 2 y
 (in order to) (unbend our minds) from the serious studies of the
pour nous délasser 2 1
 day, those amiable poets who interest the heart most by the charms
2 1
 of a lively imagination, and make us love truth by disguising
riant 2 1 art. en inf. 3
 it under the mask of an ingenious fiction. In the education of
traits m. pl. 2 — 1
 youth we ought to instruct them in the religious worship
art. jeunes gens on devoir 2 1
 which God requires of them. Never judge from appearances;
demander sur art.
 they are often deceitful: the wise man examines them, and does
 * *
 not decide upon them till he has had time to fix his
se décider d'après f. que lorsque art. de
 judgment. The love of enemies consists in desiring their welfare,
d leur désirer du bien
 in praying for them, and in speaking well of them when occasion
 requires it. The minister is your enemy; if you apply to him
demandeur s'adresser
 you will never succeed.
réussir

RULE III. — In imperative phrases, when affirmative, *moi, toi, nous, vous, lui, leur, eux, elle, elles, le, la, les, y* and *en* are placed after verbs; but, with a negation, *me, te, nous, vous, lui, leur, le, la, les, y* and *en* are placed before verbs.

EXAMPLES.

AFFIRMATIVE.

Dites-moi.
 Donnez-m'en la moitié.
 Songez-y sérieusement.

Tell me.
 Give me half of it.
 Think of it seriously.

NEGATIVE.

Ne me dites pas.	<i>Do not tell me.</i>
Ne m'en donnez point.	<i>Do not give me any.</i>
N'y songez pas.	<i>Do not think of it.</i>

Remark 1.—If the pronouns *me, te, moi, toi* intervene betwixt an imperative and an infinitive, *me, te* are used when the imperative is without a regimen direct.

EXAMPLES.

Venez me parler.	<i>Come and speak to me.</i>
Va te faire coiffer.	<i>Go and get thy hair dressed.</i>

But *moi, toi* are used if the imperative have a regimen direct.

EXAMPLES.

Laissez-moi faire.	<i>Let me do it.</i>
Fais-toi coiffer.	<i>Get thy hair dressed.</i>

2. If *moi, toi*, when placed after the imperative, be followed by the pronoun *en*, they are changed into *me, te*.

EXAMPLE.

Donnez-m'en, <i>Give me some.</i>	Retourne-t'en, <i>Go back.</i>
-----------------------------------	--------------------------------

3. When two imperatives are joined together by the conjunctions *et, ou*, it is most elegant to place the second pronoun before the verb.

EXAMPLES.

Polissez-le sans cesse, et le repolissez.	<i>Polish and repolish it continually.</i>
Gardez-les, ou les renvoyez.	<i>Keep them, or send them back.</i>

EXERCISE.

Hang thyself, brave Crillon, we have conquered without thee.
vaincu

Believe me, go and speak to them, but do not insult them. Tell it

to my father, but do not tell it to my mother. I give you these books, but do not lend them to your brother. Think of us, and write to us as soon as you can. Since these people have

pouvoir ind. 7 puisque gens

deceived you, do not trust them (any more). Repeat to them con-

** se fier plus*

tinually that, without honesty, one can never succeed in this world.

réussir

Do not repeat to them continually the same things. Love your enemies, and do them good when you can. O fathers! con-

bien m. le pouvoir

sider the importance of your obligations towards your children :

envers

make them useful members of society, teach them mo-

en de art. art. enseigner à

desty, and they will be reserved ; teach them charity, and they will be loved ; teach them temperance, and they will enjoy

porter à art. — f. jouir d'une

good health. Listen to him, and forgive him. Never consent to

it. Trust to him, but do not trust to them.

se fier

RULE IV. — When several pronouns accompany a verb, *me, te, se, nous, vous* must be placed first ; *le, la, les* before *lui, leur* ; and *y* before *en*, which is always the last.

EXAMPLES.

Prêtez-moi ce livre ; je vous le rendrai demain ; si vous me le refusez, je saurai m'en passer.

Lend me that book ; I will return it you to-morrow ; if you refuse me, I can make shift without it.

Aurez-vous la force de le leur dire ?

Will you have resolution enough to tell it them ?

Il n'a pas voulu vous y mener. Je vous y en porterai.

He would not take you there. I will bring you some there.

Exception. — In an imperative sentence, when affirmative, *le, la, les* are always placed first : as, *Donnez-le moi*, Give it me ; *Lend it to him*, *Prêtez-le lui* ; *Yield them to us*, *Cédez-les nous* ; *Conduisez-les y*,

Conduct them thither. But *moi* is placed after *y*, as, *Menez-y-moi*, Take me thither; and *nous* will precede *y*, as, *Menez-nous-y*, Take us thither.

Remark. — The word *même* is often added to the pronouns *moi*, *toi*, *soi*, *nous*, *vous*, *eux*, *lui*, *elle*, *elles*, to specify more particularly the person or thing spoken of.

EXAMPLE.

Ils se sont perdus eux-mêmes. *They have ruined themselves.*

EXERCISE.

A Gascon said to somebody, Lend me three pistoles. That is
 — ind. 2 *pistole f.*
 impossible, for I possess but half a pistole. Lend it to me
ne que
 (all the same), and you will owe me two pistoles and a half. You
toujours
 have promised me a watch; when will you give it me? I have
montre f. quand
 bought some new books; I will send them to you if you will return
 them to me next week. If they ask you a favour, will you refuse
prochain
 it them? He will not sell it to them, but he will give it to you.
 Carry it to them. He likes your house very much, for we showed
car
 it to him. Forgive the wrongs of which I am guilty, and restore me
tort rendre
 your friendship. I (am going) to visit the country of Themistocles,
partir pour = de
 accompany me thither, and nothing (will be wanting) to my
y manquer
 enjoyment. Vices contain in themselves whatever can make them
satisfaction f. — m. tout ce qui rendre
 odious. The world prizes many things which in themselves are
estimer bien
 worthless. It is certain that old Gêronte has refused his daughter
méprisable art.
 ter to Valère; but because he does not give her to him, it does not
 follow that he will give her to you.
s'ensuivre

Personal Pronouns used as Regimens.

The personal pronouns *me, te, se, leur, le, la, les, y* and *en*, are always used as regimens: direct, when acted upon by the verb; indirect, when governed by the prepositions *à* or *de*. They always precede the verb, except in the imperative affirmative, and can never be separated from it by any other word, except *tout, rien*, and *jamais*, which may intervene before an infinitive.

EXAMPLES.

C'est leur tout refuser.	<i>It is refusing them everything.</i>
Il a juré de ne lui jamais pardonner.	<i>He has sworn never to pardon him.</i>

Me, te, se, form a regimen sometimes direct and sometimes indirect; direct, when they represent *moi, toi, soi*; indirect, when they supply the place of *à moi, à toi, à soi*.

EXAMPLES.

Vous me soupçonnez mal à propos.	<i>You suspect me unjustly.</i>
Il se perd de gaieté de cœur.	<i>He ruins himself out of wantonness.</i>
Vous me donnez un sage conseil.	<i>You give me prudent advice.</i>
Je te donne cela.	<i>I give thee that.</i>

Leur is always indirect, as it is used for *à eux* or *à elles*.

EXAMPLE.

Je leur représentai le tort qu'ils or qu'elles se faisaient.	<i>I represented to them the injury they did themselves.</i>
--	--

Le, la, les are always direct; as,

Je le vois, je la vois, je les vois, for je vois lui, je vois elle, je vois eux.

Y and *en* are always indirect; as,

Je n'y entends rien, for Je n'entends rien à cela.

Ces fruits sont bons, en voulez-vous? Voulez-vous d'iceux?

EXERCISE.

Vice often deceives us under the mask of virtue. God is a
masque *le*
 father to those who love Him, and a protector to those who fear
de
 Him. Epaminondas refused the presents of Darius, and told those
ind. 3 *à ceux*
 who offered them to him from that king, "If he desires nothing
de la part *demande*
 of me but (what is) just, (there is no occasion) for presents; and
 * *que de* *il ne faut pas de*
 if he has other designs, let him know that he is not rich enough
savoir subj. 1
 to bribe me." Francis the First erected Vendôme into a dukedom,
pour *= çois* *ériger* *en* * *duché*
 in favour of Charles of Bourbon, whom afterwards he took to Italy,
mener en
 where he behaved gallantly. When the king was taken prisoner
faire
 at Pavia, the duke refused to accept the regency, and continued to
 serve well after the prince had been restored to his subjects. Pos-
après que *rendre*
 terity renders to men of merit the justice which their contemporaries
= rain
 often refuse them. Enjoy the pleasures of the world, I consent
jouir de
 to it; but never (give yourself up) to them. Have you received some
se livrer
 copies of the new work? Yes I have (received some).
exemplaire

The pronouns which are sometimes the subject and sometimes the regimen, are *nous*, *vous*, *moi*, *toi*, *lui*, *elle*, *eux*, *elles*.

Nous and *vous* are the subject in *nous aimons*, *vous aimez*; the regimen direct in *ils nous aiment*, *ils vous aiment*; and indirect in *ils nous parlent*, *ils vous parlent*.

In general, *moi*, *toi* are only the subject by re-duplication or apposition, whether they precede or follow the verb; as,

Moi, dont il déchire la réputation.

I, whose reputation he destroys.

Toi, qui fais le brave.

Thou, who lookest so valiant.

Moi, trahir le meilleur de mes amis !

I, betray the best of my friends !

Lui can only be the object after *ne que*, signifying only ; as,

N'aimez que lui, je ne le trouve pas mauvais ; mais ne me haïssez pas.

That you should like him only I do not disapprove, but do not hate me.

Eux is used in the same manner as *lui*, but with this difference, that it cannot be the regimen indirect, except after a preposition ; as,

Parlez-vous d'eux, est-ce à eux que vous parlez ?

Lui and *eux* may be the subject in distributive phrases without being in apposition ; as,

Mes frères et mon cousin m'ont secouru ; eux m'ont relevé, et lui m'a pansé.

My brothers and cousin assisted me ; they took me up, and he dressed my wounds.

EXERCISE.

What ! you would suffer yourself (to be overwhelmed) by adversity ! We imagine that when we are rich we are happy ; but

se laisser cond. 1

abattre

Nous

we are very often mistaken ; for the more we have, the more we wish to have. Some people told us that (they were speaking)

personne

on parler ind. 2

of peace in Germany. Who was calling me ? It was not I. My

ind. 2

father commanded the horse, and I commanded the foot. How

cavalerie

infanterie

darest thou answer thy master in so insolent a manner ? thou

à

de

whom he loves, thou for whom he takes so much pains. It is neither

Ce ni

I, nor thou, nor he, who have broken the windows, but it is they

casser

ce

who have done it. He and they, not being able to agree, were
 obliged to part. When the robbers appeared, my companions
 ran away. and I remained alone. When you are at Rome, write
 to us as often as you can, and give us an account of everything
 that can interest us. Would you ruin me, who am your ally?

** s'accorder*
se séparer *paraître*
s'enfuir ind. 3 *rester ind. 3 seul*
ind. 7 *le détail* *tout*
ce qui *perdre*

Of the Pronoun SOI.

The pronoun *soi* is always singular ; it is used for persons and things : when applied to persons, it is only employed with a vague expression ; as, *on, chacun, personne, quiconque, &c.* *On doit rarement parler de soi,* We ought seldom to speak of ourselves ; *Quiconque rapporte tout à soi, a peu d'amis,* Whoever refers all to himself, has few friends ; or with an infinitive, *Ne vivre que pour soi, c'est être déjà mort.* To live only for one's self is to be already dead.

EXERCISE.

The palm-tree incessantly rises of itself, whatever efforts
 are made to depress it. The remedy which you propose is
 harmless of itself. Virtue is amiable in itself. He is dissatisfied
 with himself. She is never satisfied with herself. That is good in
 itself. Men often reject truth, though evident in itself, because
 the sight (of it) displeases them. To love only ourselves, is
 being good (for very little). To think (in this manner) is
 to blind one's-self.

palmier *se relever*
faire subj. 1 *courber*
innocent en *en* *mécontent*
de
en *déplaire à* *soi* *ce*
inf. *à rien* *** *ainsi* *ce*
s'aveugler

Cases where the Pronouns ELLE, ELLES, EUX, LUI, LEUR, may apply to Things.

The personal pronouns *elle* and *elles*, *lui* and *eux*, when the regimen, generally apply to persons only. Thus, speaking of a woman, we must say, *je m'approchai d'elle, je m'assis près d'elle*; but in speaking of a table, *je m'en approchai, je m'assis auprès*.

However, with the prepositions *avec, après, à, de, pour, en, &c.*, they may be applied to things. Thus, of a river :

Cette rivière est si rapide quand elle déborde, qu'elle entraîne avec elle tout ce qu'elle rencontre ; elle ne laisse après elle que du sable et des cailloux.

That river is so rapid when it overflows, that it carries away everything it meets with in its course ; it leaves nothing behind but sand and pebbles.

Of things, reasons, truth, &c. ; as,

Ces choses sont bonnes d'elles-mêmes.

These things are good in themselves.

After the verb *être*, they are only applied to persons, and likewise when they are followed by the relatives *qui* and *que* ; as,

C'est à elle, c'est d'elles que je parle, c'est elle-même qui vient.

The same may be said of the pronoun *eux*, which is also generally applied to persons only, yet custom allows us to say,

Ce chien et ces oiseaux font tout mon plaisir ; je n'aime qu'eux ; je ne songe qu'à eux.

This dog and these birds are my only pleasure ; I love nothing but them ; I think of nothing else.

Lui and *leur* are generally applied to persons, but are sometimes used in speaking of animals, plants, and even inanimate objects ; as,

Difficulty respecting the Pronoun LE explained.

The pronoun *le* may supply the place of a substantive, of an adjective, or even of a member of a sentence.

There is no difficulty when it relates to a whole member of a sentence; it is then always put in the masculine singular; as,

On doit s'accommoder à l'humeur des autres autant qu'on le peut.

We ought to accommodate ourselves to the temper of others as much as we can.

When it represents a substantive, or an adjective taken substantively, the pronoun agrees in gender and number with that substantive or adjective taken substantively; as,

Are you Madame de Genlis?
No, I am not.

*Etes-vous Madame de Genlis?
Non, je ne la suis pas.*

Are you the mother of that child? Yes, I am.

*Etes-vous la mère de cet enfant?
Oui, je la suis.*

Are you the King's ministers?
Yes, we are.

*Etes-vous les ministres du roi?
Oui, nous les sommes.*

Are you the patient? Yes, I am.

Etes-vous la malade? Oui, je la suis.

Are you the married couple?
Yes, we are.

Etes-vous les mariés? Oui, nous les sommes.

When it represents an adjective or a substantive taken adjectively, the pronoun *le* remains undeclined; as,

Madame, êtes-vous malade?
Je le suis.

Etes-vous ministres? Nous le sommes.

Messieurs, êtes-vous mariés?
Nous le sommes.

Etes-vous mère? Je le suis?

EXERCISE.

Children ought to apply to their studies as much as they can. I
devoir *
thought your brother was diligent, but I was mistaken, for he is
ind. 2 que ind. 4

not, and never will be. The laws of nature and decency equally
bienséance
 oblige us to defend the honour and interest of our friends, when we
 can do it without injustice. Is that the horse which you bought of
Est-ce là
 my brother? Yes, it is. Are you the ladies whom my mother
 expects? Yes, we are. Madam, are you married? Yes, I am.
attendre
 Madam, are you the bride? Yes, I am. Are you the sister of
marlée
 Colonel —? Yes, I am. Is your mother sick? No, she is not.
 Are these young people the scholars whom you have taught? Yes,
jeunes gens *enseigné m. pl.*
 madam, they are.

Repetitions of the Personal Pronouns.

RULE I.—Pronouns expressing the first and second persons, when subjects, must be repeated before all verbs, if those verbs are in different tenses; it is even better to repeat them when the verbs are in the same tense.

EXAMPLES.

Je soutiens et je soutiendrai toujours.	<i>I maintain, and will always maintain.</i>
Vous dites et vous avez tou- jours dit.	<i>You say, and (you) have always said.</i>

In all cases these pronouns must be repeated, though the tenses of the verbs do not change, if the first of these is followed by a regimen; as,

I love, honour, and respect her. *Je l'aime, je l'honore, et je la
respecte.*

RULE II.—Any personal pronoun, when the subject, must be repeated before verbs when passing from an affirmation to a negation, and *vice versâ*, or

when the verbs are joined by any conjunction, except *et* and *ni*.

EXAMPLES.

Il veut et il ne veut pas.	<i>He will and he will not.</i>
Il donne et reçoit.	<i>He gives and receives.</i>
Il ne donne ni ne reçoit.	<i>He neither gives nor receives.</i>

EXERCISE.

I study geography, and apply seriously to it. I cast my eyes upon
porter art. vue f.

the objects which surrounded me, and saw with pleasure that all was calm and tranquil. You said it to me yesterday, and repeat it to-
ind. 3

day. I have seen them, but I have not scolded them. We detest the wicked, because we fear them. He says so, but he does not
parceque

think so. God has said, "You shall love your enemies, bless those that curse you, do good to those that persecute you, and pray for those who slander you." What a difference between this morality
calomnier de morale f.

and that of philosophers. The soldier was not repressed by au-
à celle réprimer

thority, but stopped by satiety and shame. She is really very
ind. 3 par par

whimsical; from one moment to another she will and she will not.

RULE III.—The pronouns of the third person, when they form the subject, are hardly ever repeated before verbs, except when those verbs are in different tenses.

EXAMPLES.

Il n'a jamais rien valu, et ne vaudra jamais rien.	<i>He never was good for any thing, and never will be.</i>
Il est arrivé ce matin, et il repartira ce soir.	<i>He arrived this morning, and (he) will set off again this evening.</i>

However, perspicuity requires the repetition of the pronoun, when the second verb is preceded by a long incidental phrase; *as,*

Il fond sur son ennemi, et après l'avoir saisi d'une main victorieuse, il le renverse comme le cruel aquilon abat les tendres moissons qui dorent la campagne.

RULE IV. — Pronouns, when they form the regimen, are repeated before any verb.

EXAMPLE.

L'idée de ses malheurs le poursuit, le tourmente et l'accable. *The idea of his misfortunes pursues (him), torments (him), and overwhelms him.*

Exception. — It is not repeated before such compound verbs as express the repetition of the same action, when the verbs are in the same tense ; as,

Je vous le dis et redis, il le fait sans cesse.

EXERCISE.

(A graceful manner) spoils nothing ; it adds to beauty, heightens
La bonne grâce gâter relever
 modesty, and gives it lustre. He spoke to his father yesterday
y —m. ind. 4
 about his sister's marriage, and obtained his consent. She is and
de ind. 4
 will always be modest. He took the strongest cities, conquered the
 most considerable provinces, and overturned the most powerful
 empires. He marshals the soldiers, marches at their head, advances
ranger en bataille
 in good order towards the enemy, attacks and breaks them, and
renverser
 after having entirely routed them, (he) cuts them to pieces. Beauty
mettre en déroute tailler en
 often seduces and deceives us. A well-bred child, who knows the
né
 extent of his duties towards his parents, far from offending and
envers —
 vexing them, cherishes, honours, and respects them. The Holy
 Scriptures teach us what we ought to be ; let us therefore read them,
*écriture f. s. devoir * * * imper.*
 meditate upon, and make them the rule of our conduct. Man
** en*
 embellishes nature itself ; he cultivates, extends, and polishes it.
 He does and undoes it twenty times a day.
par

Of the Possessive Pronouns.

The possessive pronouns —

le mien, la mienne, les miens, les miennes, *mine*.
 le tien, la tienne, les tiens, les tiennes, *thine*.
 le sien, la sienne, les siens, les siennes, *his, hers, its*.
 le nôtre, la nôtre, les nôtres, *ours*.
 le vôtre, la vôtre, les vôtres, *yours*.
 le leur, la leur, les leurs, *theirs*.

must always refer to a substantive expressed before; as,

Votre jardin est plus grand que le mien. *Your garden is larger than mine.*

When the possessive pronouns, *mine, thine, &c.*, are joined to the verb *to be*, in the sense of *to belong*, they are expressed in French by *à moi, à toi, à lui, à elle, à nous, à vous, à eux, à elles*; as,

Ce cheval est-il à vous? *Is that horse yours?*
 Cette maison est à nous. *That house is ours.*

When the possessive pronouns, *mine, thine, his, hers, &c.*, preceded by the preposition *of*, are placed after a substantive to which they relate, they are expressed in French by *mes, tes, ses, &c.*, before the substantive, which is put in the plural.

EXAMPLES.

A friend of mine. *Un de mes amis.*
 A book of yours. *Un de vos livres.*

As if it were, *one of my friends, one of your books*; and so on.

Les miens, les tiens, les siens, les nôtres, les vôtres, les leurs, are used to express one's family, relations, clients, &c.

Il est allé en Amérique avec tous les siens. *He has gone to America with all his family.*

EXERCISE.

Sir, (here is) one of your books among mine. A book of mine,
voici
 you say; let me see it. No, it is not mine; it is my brother's.
 2 1 *montrez-le-moi*
 Cæsar, determined to pass over into Britain, despatched Volsenius,
 * *en Bretagne* *envoyer*
 a lieutenant of his, to cruise on the coast of that island. He sold
 * *croiser sur*
 me a knife, but that knife was not his; it was a friend of his who
 had lent it to him. Her house is more convenient than ours, but
commode
 yours is not so well situated as theirs. I lost a book of mine, and a
ind. 4
 friend of yours found it. Whose gardens are these? Mine. Take
ind. 4 à qui
 that watch, and carry it to your brother; I think it is his. No,
 certainly, it is not his; he has no watch. I fear neither you nor
 yours. He left France with all his family, at the revolution of one
 thousand eight hundred and forty-eight.

Of the Demonstrative Pronouns.

The demonstrative pronouns, *ceci*, this, *cela*, that, are used to indicate some object, without specifying what it is. When they meet in the same sentence, *ceci* denotes the nearest object, and *cela* the remotest.

EXAMPLES.

Ceci est bon.

This is good.

Cela est mauvais.

That is bad.

Ceci and *cela* are masculine, and apply only to things. However, in the familiar style, custom authorises us to say, in speaking of one person individually, or of many collectively, *Cela est heureux!* That person is happy, or Those people are happy; *Cela est gueux et fier*, That man is poor and proud, or Those persons are poor and proud.

Ce, joined to the verb *être*, always governs this verb in the singular, except when it is followed by the third person plural; as,

C'est moi, c'est toi, c'est lui, c'est nous, c'est vous.

But in different cases we must say,

Ce sont eux, ce sont elles.	Est-ce les Allemands que vous
Ce furent vos ancêtres qui.	favorisez ?
Fût-ce nos propres fils qui.	Sera-ce les honneurs que vous
Sont-ce les Anglais qui ont fait	ambitionnez ?
cela ?	

Ce, when relating to a person or thing mentioned before, supplies the place of *il* or *elle*. *Ce* must always be used when the verb *être* is followed by a substantive, accompanied by the article, or the adjective determinative.

EXAMPLES.

Lisez Homère et Virgile; ce	Read Homer and Virgil; they
sont les plus grands poètes de	are the best poets of antiquity.
l'antiquité.	

Avez-vous lu Platon? C'est	Have you read Plato? He is
un des plus beaux génies de	one of the greatest geniuses of
l'antiquité.	antiquity.

But when the verb *être* is followed by an adjective, or by a substantive used adjectively, *il* or *elle* must be employed.

EXAMPLES.

Lisez Démosthène et Cicéron,	Read Demosthenes and Cicero,
ils sont très éloquents.	they are very eloquent.

J'ai vu l'hôpital de Green-	I have seen Greenwich Hos-
wich; il est superbe, et digne	pital; it is magnificent, and worthy
d'une grande nation.	of a great nation.

EXERCISE.

Give me this, and take that. I prefer this to that. Do not do that, I will do it myself. That is good to eat. You are very

curious ; you always ask why this and why that. It is my duty to act so. Gentleness, affability, and a certain urbanity distinguish the man that frequents (polite company) ; these are the marks
vivre dans le grand monde

by which he may be known. Is Mrs. B. pretty ? She is the
à on active voice

prettiest woman I know. Would you rely upon him ? do you not
subj. 1 compter

know he is a man who will never abandon his first opinions.
** * à revenir de idée*

It was the Egyptians that first observed the course of the
= m. les premiers cours m.

stars, regulated the year, and invented arithmetic. You will be
astre

(the person) to enjoy it. You (keep late hours) and it displeases
*qui * ind. 7.2 en 1 rentrer tard*

him. Peruse attentively Plato and Cicero ; they are the two
à Lire

philosophers of antiquity who have given us the most sound and
sain

luminous ideas upon morality.
morale f.

CE QUI, CE QUE, CE DONT, CE À QUOI.

Ce qui, ce que relate to things only. They are always singular masculine, as they denote a vague object, which is not sufficiently specified to know its gender and number ; as,

Ce que je désire le plus.
Ce qui me fâche.

*What I wished for most.
What provokes me.*

When *ce qui* or *ce que* begins a sentence of two parts, the word *ce* is repeated before the auxiliary *être*, if it is followed by a substantive, a pronoun, or a verb.

EXAMPLES.

What I fear most is treason.

Ce que je crains le plus c'est la trahison.

What I say is the truth.

Ce que je dis, c'est la vérité.

What provokes me, is the injustice of that man.

Ce qui m'indigne, ce sont les injustices de cet homme.

When the verb *être* is followed by an adjective, the demonstrative pronoun is not repeated.

What I have eaten was very good. *Ce que j'ai mangé était excellent.*

EXERCISE.

That which flatters is more dangerous than that which offends. Go and tell my father what has passed here, and do not forget what
* *se passer*

you have seen and heard. May I know what causes your grief and sadness? That which supports man amidst the greatest reverses
soutenir au milieu de

is hope. What provokes me is to see the rich pride themselves on
révolter de

their riches, as if a guilt bed relieved the pain of a sick man,
soulager ind. 2 malade

or a brilliant fortune made a fool more (worthy of esteem).
rendre subj. 2 estimable

What the miser thinks least of is to enjoy his riches. I do not
avare penser à

know of what he is accused, I hope he will be able (to clear
se jus-

himself). Think of what the law of God commands, and of what
tifier
society requires of you. What we justly admire in Racine are
demander

those characters always natural and always well sustained. What
* *soutenu*

you expected has not taken place.
s'attendre à avoir lieu

CELUI DE, CELUI QUI.

Celui, celle, ceux, celles, are followed by the preposition *de* when placed before a substantive; as,

Il dépense tout son bien, et celui *He spends all his fortune, and*
de sa femme. *that of his wife.*

Prenez ces chevaux ou ceux de *Take these horses or those of my*
mon fils. *son.*

They are followed by a pronoun relative when placed before a verb; as,

Cette maison est plus grande que celle que j'ai vendue.	<i>This house is larger than that which I have sold.</i>
L'homme dont je vous ai parlé est celui que vous voyez.	<i>The man of whom I spoke to you is he whom you see.</i>

Remark.—When in English the personal pronouns are the antecedents of *who*, *that*, or *which*, they are expressed in French, *he who* by *celui qui*; *she who* by *celle qui*; *they who* by *ceux qui* masc. and by *celles qui* fem.

EXAMPLE.

They who despise learning know not its value.	<i>Ceux qui méprisent les sciences n'en connaissent pas le prix.</i>
--	--

Celui is sometimes omitted, and this turn adds strength and elegance to the expression; as,

Qui veut trop se faire craindre, se fait rarement aimer.	<i>He who wishes to make himself too much feared, seldom makes him- self beloved.</i>
---	---

EXERCISE.

The sight of the mind is more extensive than that of the body.
The goods of fortune are not to be compared with those of the
bien * * *comparable à*
mind. The system of Copernicus, which asserts that the earth
Copernic
turns round the sun, is more probable than that of Ptolemy, who is
Ptolémée
of a contrary opinion. The pleasures of the wise, resemble in
en
nothing *d* those of the dissipated, man. He who cannot keep a secret
is incapable of governing. Nobody is more speedily oppressed
than he who fears nothing; because security is often the beginning
of calamity. They who are not satisfied with what they possess at
de *avoir*
present, will probably never be pleased with what they may possess
content *pouvoir ind.?*

in future. He that judges of others by himself is liable to many
à l'avenir *d'après* *exposé*
 mistakes. He who is easily offended, discovers his (weak side),
méprise *s'offenser* *faible*
 and affords his enemies an opportunity of (taking advantage) of
fournir à *profiter*
 it. He is contemptible who supports idleness. They do not
encourager
 always succeed who take their measures best.
réussir

Remark. — When the relative pronouns *who*, *that*, or *which* are separated in English from their antecedents *he*, *she*, or *they*, they must be joined in French, and the second part of the sentence is put first; as,

They are happy who are contented with little. *Ceux qui se contentent de peu sont heureux.*

CELUI-CI, *this* ; CELUI-LÀ, *that*.

Celui-ci, *celle-ci*, opposed to *celui-là*, *celle-là*, denote the nearest objects, and *celui-là*, *celle-là*, the remotest; as,

Voici deux maisons ; celle-ci (*nearest*) est la plus élégante, *Here are two houses ; this is the most elegant*, et celle-là (*remotest*) la plus commode. *and that is the most convenient.*

The objects mentioned last being the nearest, are represented by *celui-ci*, *ceux-ci* ; those, on the contrary, spoken of before, being the remotest, are designated by *celui-là*, *ceux-là* ; as,

Le corps périt, et l'âme est immortelle ; cependant on néglige celle-ci, et tous nos soins sont pour celui-là. *The body perishes, the soul is immortal ; however, we neglect this, and all our cares are for that.*

The former, *le premier* ; the latter, *le dernier*, are also construed by *celui-ci* and *celui-là*.

EXERCISE.

The state of the brute is very different from that of man ; that is
 —f.
 clothed and armed by nature, this is not ; that soon attains its
vêtu *arriver à*
 vigour and perfection, this continues long in infancy. Which
rester *Laquelle*
 of these two houses do you advise me to buy ? This will cost me
 * *de*
 six hundred pounds, and that nine hundred and fifty. I do not like
 either of them ; if, however, you take one, I would advise you to
ni l'une ni l'autre *en* *de*
 buy this, rather than that. A Frenchman and a Scotchman fought
Ecossais
 yesterday with swords ; the former was wounded in the shoulder,
à
 and the latter in the arm. In the last engagement which took place
à *avoir lieu* ind. 3
 between the Austrians and the French, the former lost two thousand
Autrichien
 men, and the latter fifteen hundred. Learn this lesson, it is not so
 difficult as that.

Of the Relative Pronouns.

The relative pronoun *qui*, when subject, relates both to persons and things, and is of both genders and numbers.

EXAMPLES.

L'homme qui joue perd son *The man who games loses his*
 temps. *time.*
 Le livre qui est sur la table. *The book that is on the table.*

But when it is the regimen, direct or indirect, it can only be used of persons, or of things personified.

EXAMPLES.

Je ne sais qui vous accusez.	<i>I do not know whom you accuse.</i>
L'homme à qui appartient ce beau jardin est très riche.	<i>The man to whom that fine garden belongs is very rich.</i>
Pour qui est cette lettre?	<i>For whom is this letter?</i>

Qui must not be separated from its antecedent, when that antecedent is a noun; any other place would make its relation equivocal.

EXAMPLE.

Un jeune homme qui est docile aux conseils qu'on lui donne, et qui aime à en recevoir, aura du mérite.	<i>A young man who is obedient to the advice that is given him, and who loves to receive it, has merit.</i>
--	---

Remark.—When the regimen indirect is expressed by *de*, then *dont* should be preferred to *de qui*. It is better to say, *La femme dont vous parlez*. However, when the verb expresses a kind of transfer or conveyance, *de qui* must be used; as,

Celui de qui je tiens cette nouvelle.	<i>The person from whom I have that intelligence.</i>
---------------------------------------	---

EXERCISE.

Cicero was one of those who were sacrificed to the vengeance of the triumvirs. The man who caresses and flatters you is the most

dangerous being	I know.	Thyself,	O my son,	my dear son,
2	m. 1	que	subj. 1	
thou thyself,	that now enjoyest	a youth so cheerful and so full		
*		f. vif fécond		
of pleasure,	remember that this delightful age	is but a flower,		
en	beau ne que			
which will be withered almost as soon as blown.	You must			
1 sécher 3	2	éclore	Il vous	
have a man that loves nothing but truth and you, who will speak				
falloir ind. 1	que	subj. 1		

the truth in spite of you, who will force all your entrenchments:
 subj. 1
 and this necessary person is the very man whom you have
 être m. même 2
 (sent into exile). The young man of whom I have spoken to you,
 exiler
 deserves to be encouraged. The same pride which makes us blame
 de
 the faults from which we think ourselves free, induces us to con-
 se croire exempt porter
 demn the good qualities which we have not. The woman to whom
 I have lent so much money, and spoken so often, is dead. Remember,
 my son, that thy station on earth is appointed by the wisdom of the
 état fixer
 Eternal, who knows thy heart, who sees the vanity of thy wishes,
 =el connaître
 and who often rejects thy prayer.

QUE, whom, which.

Que relates both to persons and things, and is of both genders and numbers. It is always the regimen direct, and cannot be used without an antecedent expressed, which it generally follows; as,

L'homme que je vois.	<i>The man whom I see.</i>
La pêche que je mange.	<i>The peach which I eat.</i>

Remark. — There are instances where *que* is apparently used as regimen indirect for *à qui* or *dont*; as,

C'est à vous que je parle.	<i>It is to you that I speak.</i>
C'est de lui que je parle.	<i>It is of him that I speak.</i>
De la manière que j'ai fait la chose.	<i>The manner in which I did the thing.</i>

But in this case *que* is a conjunction.

EXERCISE.

A man whose manners are innocent, and behaviour blameless,
 mœurs f. irréprochable
 is the man whom we ought to cherish and honour. Choose a

man whom you esteem, who is able and willing to serve you
avoir le pouvoir *volonté de*
 (in need).^{*} There are two things which we must patiently endure,
au besoin
 on pain of finding life insupportable : the inclemency of seasons,
sous
 and the injustice of men. The good which we hope for presents
bien ***
 itself to us, and disappears like an empty dream, which (vanishes
s'envoler *vain* *le réveil*
 when we awake); to teach us that the very things which we think
fait évanouir *2* *1*
 we (hold fast) in our hands, may slip away in an instant. There
** tenir le mieux * * ** *échapper*
 he deplored the misfortune of a nation which the mad ambition of a
 king hurries into its ruin. Ye, who are here assembled to
entraîner à *pour*
 defend the country against its enemies, or to cause the (justest)
patrie *faire* *2*
 laws to flourish, listen to a man whom fortune has persecuted.
** 1 **
 Respect those whom God has placed over you ; respect those
placé m. pl.
 whom He has made the true representation of His providence upon
image *— f.*
 earth. They spoke to her of the just gods whom she had offended :
On *m. pl.*
 instead of showing the confusion and repentance which her faults
 merited, she looked up to heaven with contempt and arrogance,
ind. 2
 as if to insult the gods.
comme pour

LEQUEL, LAQUELLE, LESQUELS, LESQUELLES.

The relative *qui*, preceded by a preposition, never relates to things, but to persons only. *Lequel, laquelle, lesquels, lesquelles* are used instead, when speaking of animals or things ; as,

Les rois à qui on doit obéir. *The kings whom we should obey.*
 La gloire à laquelle les héros sacrifient. *Glory to which heroes sacrifice.*

Lequel and *dont* relate both to persons and things. However, *lequel* ought never to be used either as a subject or object, except to avoid ambiguity; for whenever the sense is clear, *qui* or *que* must be used.

Lequel, with the preposition *de*, is either followed or preceded by a noun, which it unites to the principal sentence. If it be followed, *dont* is preferable to *duquel*, both for persons and things; as,

La Tamise, dont le lit.

Le prince, dont la protection.

If *lequel* be preceded by the noun, we can only make use of *duquel* when speaking of things; and it is perhaps better to use it when speaking of persons; as,

La Tamise, dans le lit de laquelle.

Le prince, à la protection duquel.

EXERCISE.

It is evident that there is a God by whom (all things) are governed.
tout

He who gets riches knows not for whom he gets them, nor for
amasser

whose sake he (takes so much interest). The canal of Languedoc
* *s'intéresser tant* art. — m.

runs across a river, over which a bridge is built in the form of an
passer sur *

aqueduct, under which the river continues its course. Men do not
aqueduc m. *cours m.*

reflect enough on all the dangers to which they are exposed. Regulus, in his expedition against Carthage, had to contend with an
combattre

enormous serpent, against whom it was necessary to employ the
falloir

whole Roman army. The Japanese endure with admirable
fortitude all the inconveniences of life on which they do not set
constance *incommodités* *de* *ne faire pas*

much value. The ambitious man sees nothing but pleasure in
beaucoup de cas *

the possession of the offices to which he aspires with so much

eagerness, instead of seeing the trouble that is inseparable from them. It is Fontenelle who has introduced into sciences that phi-

losophy to which they (are indebted for) the rapid progress which
devoir pl.

they made in France. Parmenio and Clytus were two celebrated
ind. 3 = *nion*

captains, whose genius and valour posterity admires. Homer, whose genius is grand and sublime, like nature, is the greatest poet, and perhaps the most profound moralist of antiquity.

QUOI, *what.*

Quoi only relates to things; it is always placed after the word to which it refers, and is generally followed by the subject of the phrase with which it is connected. It is always preceded by a preposition; as,

La chose à quoi on pense.

Voilà les conditions sans quoi la chose ne peut se faire.

Οὐ, Δ'Οὐ, PAR Οὐ.

Où, d'où, par où, relate only to things. They are never used but when the nouns to which they refer express some kind of motion or rest, at least metaphorically. They are used instead of *auquel, duquel*; thus.

Voilà le but où il tend.

That is the end he aims at.

C'est une chose d'où dépend
le bonheur public.

It is a thing upon which public happiness depends.

Les lieux par où il a passé.

The places through which he passed.

EXERCISE.

There is nothing by which we are more affected than the loss of
à on sensible
 fortune, although, being frail and perishable by its nature, it cannot
de

contribute to our happiness. Many learned men do not adopt
 * art. *savant* *
 the principles from which the system of Descartes is derived. If I

had known before, the deplorable condition to which you are reduced,
 I would certainly have sent you some money. The allies of Rome,
 ashamed to acknowledge as their head a city from which

pour * *maitresse*
 liberty seemed banished, (shook off) a yoke which they bore
secouer *porter* ind. 2
 with pain. Philip said to his son Alexander, on giving him Aristotle
 = *pe* *en* *Aristote*
 for his preceptor, "Learn, under so good a master, to avoid the
 faults into which I have fallen." What a young man who
Ce à

begins the world ought principally (to attend to) is not to give
entrer dans *s'attacher*

it a high opinion of his understanding, but to gain numerous
y *idée* *esprit* *se faire* *beaucoup de*
 friends by the qualities of his heart. No one could tell which way
 ind. 2

I (came into) the room. To what shall we apply ourselves?
entrer ind. 4

At what were you playing when I came in? There is nothing for
 ind. 4 *à*

which he is not fit. Of what does your sister complain? The
 subj. 1 *se plaindre*

town to which he is gone is the same through which we passed
passer

in coming up to London.

Of the Absolute and Interrogative Pronouns.

These pronouns are *qui*, *que*, *quoi*, *quel*, and *lequel*.

Qui relates only to persons presenting a vague and indeterminate idea. It signifies *quel homme*, what man? *quelle personne*? what person? as,

Qui vous a dit cela?

Qui sont ces femmes-là?

Who told you that?

Who are those women?

Que, quoi, relate to things only, and signify *quelle chose ? what thing ?* as,

Que dit-on ?

What do they say ?

A quoi pensez-vous ?

What are you thinking of ?

Que is sometimes used for *à quoi ? de quoi ?* as,

Que sert la science sans la vertu ?

What avails learning without virtue ?

Que sert à l'avare d'avoir des trésors ?

What use is it to the miser to possess treasures ?

that is, *à quoi sert ? de quoi sert ?*

If *que* or *quoi* be followed by an adjective, it requires the preposition *de* before that adjective ; as,

Que dit-on de nouveau ?

What news is there ?

Quoi de plus amusant ?

What is more entertaining ?

In interrogations, or after a verb, *quel* is used to ask the name or qualities of a person or thing.

Quel homme est-ce ?

What man is it ?

Quel temps fait-il ?

What weather is it ?

Lequel, duquel, auquel, &c., are used to mark a distinction between several objects ; as,

Lequel aimez vous le mieux de ces deux tableaux ?

Which do you prefer of these two pictures ?

Où, d'où, par où, relate only to things ; as,

D'où vient-il ?

Where does he come from ?

Par où avez-vous passé ?

Which way did you come ?

EXERCISE.

Who doubts that a young man who loves virtue and science

enjoys more solid happiness than he who spends his life in
subj. 1 *passer*

dissipation and pleasure. Of all these pictures, which do you like best, and which do you think (is worth) (most money) ? What
valoir le plus

Instead of *on*, we must say *l'on*, to avoid some disagreeable sounds which take place, particularly after *et*, *si*, *ou*: *et l'on dit, si l'on voit, ou l'on verra*. However, we must make use of *on* before *le*, *la*, *les*, *lui*: *et on le dit, si on la voit, ou on le verra*, to avoid the disagreeable repetition of the articulation of *l*.

2. *Quelqu'un* means *un, une*, one: *nous attendons des hommes, il en viendra quelqu'un*; we expect men, some one will come.

Quelqu'un, taken absolutely and substantively, is of both genders, and means *une personne*, a person; as,

J'attends ici quelqu'un.

I wait here for somebody.

Quelques-uns signifies *plusieurs dans un plus grand nombre*, several out of a great number; as,

Quelques-uns assurent.

Some people affirm.

Quiconque, whoever, signifies *quelque personne que ce soit, qui que ce soit*, any person whatever. It takes no plural, and is used only of persons; as,

Ce discours s'adresse à qui-conque est coupable.

This speech is addressed to whoever is guilty.

Chacun, each, every one, is used either distributively or collectively; it has no plural.

Distributively, it means *chaque personne, chaque chose*, each person or thing; it is then used likewise in the feminine, and requires the preposition *de* after it.

Chacun de nous vit à sa mode.

Each of us lives as he pleases.

Voyez séparément chacune de ces médailles.

Look at each of these medals separately.

Collectively, it means *toute personne*, every person; as,

Chacun a ses défauts.

Every one has his faults.

EXERCISE.

Do you sincerely believe, said Charlotte to her sister, that when women are sensible and pretty they are ignorant of it? No, they
on *ignorer **

know it very well; but if they are watchful over their character,
savoir jaloux de réputation

they are not proud of these advantages. We are not slaves,
s'enorgueillir on des

to receive such treatment. Do you know what they do here?
essuyer de on

They eat, they drink, they dance, they play, they sing; in a word, they kill time (in the gayest manner) possible. Whoever is bold
le plus gaiment

enough to slander me, I will make him repent it. Has ever any-
médire de en

body seriously doubted the immortality of the soul? Do not speak all at once, but each in his turn. (These are) beautiful
à la fois à Voilà de

pictures; I should like to buy some. What is the price of each separately? They have all brought offerings to the temple
offrande

every one according to his means and devotion. Go into my library, and put every book which has been sent back into
à

its place. Thierry charged Uncelanus to carry his orders to
aller porter

the mutineers, and make them retire, each under his colours.
mutin drapeau

Each of them has brought his offering, and fulfilled his religious
remplir
 duty.

Remark. — *Chacun*, preceded by the plural, takes after it sometimes *son*, *sa*, *ses*, and sometimes *leur*, *leurs*.

Chacun takes *son*, *sa*, *ses* when it is placed after the regimen direct, or when the verb has no regimen of that nature; as,

Ils ont apporté leurs offrandes Ils ont opiné, chacun à son
 chacun selon ses moyens. tour.

Les deux rois se sont retirés,
 chacun dans sa tente.

Chacun takes *leur*, *leurs*, when it precedes the regimen direct ; as,

Ils ont apporté, chacun, leurs offrandes. Ils ont donné, chacun, leur avis.

Autrui means *les autres personnes*, others, other people. It only applies to persons, is never accompanied by an adjective, has no plural, and is always preceded by a preposition ; as,

La charité se réjouit du bonheur d'autrui. Charity rejoices in the happiness of others.

Personne, indefinite pronoun, has a vague meaning, takes neither article nor any determinative adjective ; it signifies nobody whosoever, is always masculine singular, and requires *ne* before the verb ; as,

Personne n'est assez sot pour le croire. Nobody is foolish enough to believe it.

Remark 1. — The negative is sometimes understood ; as,

Y a-t-il quelqu'un ici ? Personne. Is there anybody here ? Nobody.

Remark 2. — In interrogative phrases without negation, or in those expressing doubt, *personne* signifies *quelqu'un*, anybody ; as,

Personne oserait-il nier ? Would anybody dare deny ?

Remark 3. — When *personne* is placed in the second member of a comparison, it means *anybody* ; as,

Cette place lui convient mieux qu'à personne. That place suits him better than anybody.

Rien, nothing, which is masculine and singular, is used with or without negation: When with a negation, it means *nulle chose*, nothing.

EXAMPLE.

Il ne s'attache à rien de so- *He applies himself to nothing*
lide. *fixed.*

When used without a negation, it means *quelque chose*, something.

EXAMPLE.

Je doute que rien soit plus *I doubt whether anything be*
propre à faire impression. *more suited to make an impression.*

The negation is sometimes understood: *Que vous a coûté cela? Rien.*

It always requires the preposition *de* before the adjective or participle that follows it, and then the verb is understood as well as the negative; as,

Rien de beau que le vrai. *Nothing is noble but truth.*

EXERCISE.

Do not speak ill of other people, if you (will have) nobody speak
vouloir que
ill of you. Always remember that principle of natural law,
2 *se souvenir* 1 *de*
do not to others what you would not wish that they should do to
vouloir on subj. 2
you. What are other people's troubles if they be compared with our
peine on à
own? Did ever anybody know in what happiness consists? An
* * ind. 4
egotist loves nobody, not even his own children. Nobody could
égoïste propre ind. 2
be happier than she; but as a consequence of that levity which
la — f. légèreté
you (know she has), she has lost all the advantages that she had
lui connaissez
received from nature and education. He whom nobody pleases,
m. pl. *à*
is more unhappy than he who pleases nobody. He believes nothing
à
that you have told him. Nothing is more common than the word
mot

friendship, and nothing more rare than a true friend. I doubt
véritable
 if there be anything more calculated to exalt the soul than
 subj. 1. 2 1 *propre*
 the contemplation of the wonders of nature. There was in his
merveille art.
 conduct nothing but what was dignified and noble.
que

Nul and *pas un*, not any, not one, are accompanied by the negative, assume the feminine, have no plural, and may be followed by the preposition *de*.

EXAMPLES.

Nul de tous ceux qui y ont été *Not one of all those who went*
n'en est revenu. *there has returned.*
Pas un ne croit cette nouvelle. *Not one believes that intelli-*
gence.

Autre, other, is sometimes used to express a person, but indeterminate; as,

J'aime mieux que vous l'appreniez de tout autre que de moi. *I had rather you learn it of any other than of me.*

Un is sometimes opposed to *autre*; in which case, these two words are preceded by the article, supply the place of the substantives to which they relate, take their gender and number, and form the pronouns *l'un l'autre*, *l'un et l'autre*, and *ni l'un ni l'autre*.

L'un l'autre, each other, one another, applies both to persons and things. It takes both gender and number, and requires the article before the two words of which it is composed. If there be any preposition, it is placed before the last. When these two words are used in conjunction, they express a reciprocal relation between several persons or things.

EXAMPLE.

Il faut se secourir l'un l'autre. *We ought to assist each other.*

When used separately, they denote a difference.

EXAMPLE.

Les passions s'entendent les unes avec les autres ; si l'on se laisse aller aux unes, on attire bientôt les autres. *Our passions correspond with each other ; if we indulge some, the others will soon follow.*

EXERCISE.

No one in this world is free from fault ; no one can pretend to be perfectly happy in this land of misery. Your brother has lost his books ; shall I give him others ? The soldiers have all returned ; all have rejoined their colours ; not one has remained behind. I had many friends, yet not one has relieved me. All the soldiers have been taken prisoners ; not one has escaped. Of the great number of friends who surround us in prosperity, there often remains not one in adversity. Not one of these engravings displays any great talent. Another would not have forgiven you so easily as I did. Reason and faith equally demonstrate that we were created for another life. What ! say they, do not men die fast enough without destroying each other ? Are they sent into the world to tear each other to pieces, and to make themselves wretched.

L'un et l'autre, les uns et les autres, give merely an idea of plurality ; *l'un l'autre, les uns les autres*, to the idea of plurality add that of reciprocity.

EXAMPLES.

L'un et l'autre furent deux grands poètes. *Both were great poets.*
Ils s'estimaient l'un l'autre. *They esteemed each other*

Ni l'un ni l'autre mark separation. The verb is generally in the plural, when both receive at the same time the action expressed by the verb.

EXAMPLE.

Ni l'un ni l'autre n'ont fait leur devoir. *Neither has done his duty.*

But whenever the action applies to a single object, the verb must be in the singular.

EXAMPLE.

Ni l'un ni l'autre ne sera nommé à cette ambassade. *Neither will be appointed to that embassy.*

Tel, such, expresses a person indeterminately.

EXAMPLE.

Tel fait des libéralités qui ne paie pas ses dettes. *The same man is liberal in giving, who does not pay his debts.*

Plusieurs, several, many, employed absolutely as a substantive, means *plusieurs personnes*, several persons; the verb must be in the plural.

EXAMPLE.

Plusieurs aiment mieux mourir que de perdre leur réputation. *Many would rather die than forfeit their character.*

Tout, all, means everything, every kind of thing, all things.

EXAMPLE.

Tout nous abandonne au moment de la mort. *Everything forsakes us at the moment of death.*

Tout ce qui, subject of the verb, *tout ce que*, object, all that, everything that, and whatever signifying all that, are always masculine and singular.

EXAMPLES.

Tout ce qui brille n'est pas or. *All is not gold that glitters.*
 Tout ce que vous dites est vrai. *All that you say is true.*

EXERCISE.

Celestial bodies attract each other, in proportion to their mass
s'attirer *en raison de*
 and distance. Newton and Galileo both greatly contributed to
= lée *ind. 4*
 the progress which the physical sciences have made. I ex-
m. pl.
 pected my two best friends yesterday, but neither came. Many
 would rather suffer the loss of life than of a good name.
aimer mieux ind. 1 *celle* *réputation f.*
 Everything that is lofty, vast, or profound, expands the imagina-
élevé *étendre*
 tion, and dilates the heart. All that does not tend to the glory of
dilater
 God, or to the good of society, is mere vanity. The same man
ne que * *
 sows who often reaps nothing. All is in God, and God is in all.
semer *recueillir*
 Such a one is rich to-day, who may be poor to-morrow. Such as
 * * *être ind. 7*
 laugh to-day, will cry to-morrow. The happiness of the people
sing. *pleurer*
 makes that of the prince; their true interests are connected with
lier à
 one another. Neither of these two generals will be appointed to the
 command-in-chief of the army.

Qui que, whoever, is only said of persons, and signifies *quelque personne que*, whatever person; it requires the verb following to be in the subjunctive mood.

EXAMPLES.

Qui que ce soit qui ait fait cela,	Whoever has done that, is a man
c'est un habile homme.	of talent.
Qui que je sois.	Whoever I may be.
Qui que c'ait été.	Whoever it may have been.
Qui que c'eût été.	Whoever it might have been.
Qui que ce puisse être.	Whoever it may be.

When *qui que*, followed by *ce soit*, is used with a negative, it signifies *aucune personne*, nobody; as, *Je n'y trouve qui que ce soit*, I find nobody there.

Quoi que, whatever it be, is used only of things, and signifies *quelque chose que*, whatever thing; it requires the verb following in the subjunctive mood.

EXAMPLES.

Quoi que ce soit qu'il fasse, ou *Whatever he does or says, he is*
qu'il dise, on se méfie de lui. *mistrusted.*

Quoi que vous disiez, je le ferai. *Whatever you may say, I will*
do it.

Remark. — When *quoi que*, followed by *ce soit*, is used with a negation, it signifies *aucune chose*, not anything.

EXAMPLE.

Sans application on ne peut *Without application it is impos-*
réussir en quoi que ce soit. *sible to succeed in anything what-*
ever.

EXERCISE.

Whoever attentively considers the misery of human life, will certainly prepare for a better. Whoever abandons himself to his
se préparer

passions, makes himself unhappy. Whoever we may be, high or
se rendre

low, let us fulfil the duties which are imposed upon us. Of whom-
remplir *à*

soever you speak, avoid calumny. To whomsoever you apply,
s'adresser

you will receive the same answer. To whomsoever you speak, be civil and polite. Whatever happens to him, he is always the same.

Whatever you may say, the man just and constant in his principles lives at peace with himself. To whatever you apply, give it all
en *s'appliquer* *y*

your attention. Whatever you may say, you will not persuade me.

Whatever happens to a virtuous man, he never murmurs against Divine Providence. Whatever you may say, your brothers shall be punished, if they deserve it. Who is the man that has stolen her
voler

money? I know not; but whoever he is, and whatever he may say, if the police catch him, he will be punished.

— *f. attraper*

[Upper Second.]

SECTION II.

CHAP. V.

OF THE VERB.

Agreement of the Verb with the Subject.

RULE I.—The verb must be of the same number and person as its subject.

Je donne, <i>I give,</i>	tu donnes, <i>thou givest,</i>	il donne, <i>he gives.</i>
nous qui parlons, <i>we who speak,</i>	vous qui parlez, <i>you who speak,</i>	eux qui parlent, <i>they who speak.</i>

RULE II.—If several substantives or several pronouns form the subject, the verb is put in the plural, and agrees with the first person in preference to the other two, and with the second in preference to the third.

Vous, votre frère et moi, nous étudions.	<i>You, your brother, and I study.</i>
Vous et lui, vous étudiez.	<i>You and he study.</i>
Votre frère et votre sœur étudient.	<i>Your brother and sister study.</i>

EXERCISE.

1. Philosophy easily triumphs over past evils, but present evils triumph over her.

2. I should like to have seen those valiant legions ; if they had not been destroyed, the Roman republic would still exist.

3. Regulus found himself more happy amidst the most excruciating tortures, than he would have been in growing old in his

1. triumphs over, *triumpher de.*

3. amidst, *au sein de* ; excruciating, *cuisant* ; grow old, *vieillir.*

house with the opprobrium of having sullied the honours of the consulate by perjury.

4. All men are inclined to idleness, but the savages of hot countries are the laziest of all.

5. You, your friend, and I have each a different opinion.

6. Narbal and I admired the goodness of the gods, who take such tender care of those who risk everything for virtue.

7. It was I who destroyed the fortifications of that city, and thus contributed to the surrender of the enemy.

8. You that wish to enrich your mind with thoughts vigorously conceived and nobly expressed, should read the works of Homer and Plato.

Exceptions.

The verb agrees with the last substantive in the following cases: —

1. When the subjects of the verb are synonymous, as,

Son courage, son intrépidité étonne les plus braves.

Since there is unity in the mind, there must be unity in the words.

2. When the words forming the subject are placed in gradation; as,

Votre intérêt, votre honneur, Dieu l'exige.

In all gradations, the last word is the prominent expression, that which outdoes all others, to draw the attention on itself. Indeed, *interest* disappears before *honour*; *human honour* before *God*: *God* alone remains, and therefore the verb agrees with it.

3. When the words forming the subject are united by the disjunctive conjunction *ou*,

La crainte ou l'impuissance le rendait immobile,

4. are inclined to, *tendre à*.

6. take care, *avoir soin*.

7. was, ind. 3; destroyed, ind. 3.

8. with, *de*; vigorously, *fortement*.

7. Your mien, your deportment, your voice, your language, everything betrays you.

8. Envy, like ambition, is a blind passion.

9. There is no rank, sex, or age, but ought to aspire to happiness.

10. Ranks, dignities, virtues, strength, weakness, riches, poverty, all is confounded in a common calamity.

Of Collective Nouns.

Any general collective, as, *famille, assemblée, peuple, armée, &c.*, governs the verb in the singular; as,

Le peuple désire la paix, l'armée L'infinité des perfections de Dieu
vent la guerre. m'accable.

But when the verb has for subject a partitive collective, the verb agrees with the noun which follows the collective, because that noun expresses the principal idea; as,

Une troupe de barbares désolèrent le pays.

The reason is obvious: the general principally collective fixes the attention, it is the prominent word; the partitive collective, on the contrary, is only accessory, and it is on the following substantive that the mind dwells.

Remark. — The adverbs of quantity, *peu, beaucoup, assez, trop, infiniment, &c.*, are to be considered as partitive collectives. Then we must say, *peu de gens négligent leurs intérêts*, making the verb agree with the substantive *gens*, placed next to the adverb of quantity *peu*.

When *peu, beaucoup*, and *la plupart* relate to a substantive plural expressed before, the verb is put in

7. mien, *air*; deportment, *démarche*.

9. ought, *devoir*, subj. 1.

the plural, the agreement taking place with a plural understood : as, *la plupart sont sujets à l'erreur ; peu aiment l'étude* ; as if it were, *la plupart des hommes sont sujets à l'erreur : peu d'enfants aiment l'étude*.

EXERCISE.

1. The nation love their queen ; they will protect her.
2. The people wish for peace, but the parliament has voted for the continuance of the war.
3. The army of the insurgents has been completely routed.
4. The forest of Fontainebleau had twenty-eight thousand six hundred acres, now it has more than thirty-three thousand two hundred.
5. The great number of monuments and embellishments lately executed in Paris make it one of the finest cities in the world.
6. The enemy presented themselves before the gates of our town, and began the attack on Tuesday ; our garrison made a vigorous sally on Thursday, and obliged them to raise the siege.
7. At the time of the invasion of Spain by the Moors, an innumerable multitude of people retired into the Asturias, and there proclaimed Pelagius king.
8. Many people approve of the maxims of morality, but very few strive to put them into practice.
9. A troop of nymphs, crowned with flowers, whose lovely tresses flowed over their shoulders, and waved with the wind, swam in shoals behind her car.
10. A third part of the enemy was left dead on the field ; the rest surrendered at discretion.

Place of the Subject with regard to the Verb.

RULE. — The subject, whether a noun or pronoun, is generally placed before the verb ; as,

-
2. wish for, *désirer*.
 5. make it, *en faire*.
 6. gates, *porte* ; sally, *sortie*.
 7. Moors, *Maures* ; Asturias, *Asturies*, pl. ; Pelagius, *Pélage*.
 8. approve of, *approuver*.
 9. lovely tresses, *beau cheveu*, pl. ; flowed, *pendre* ; waved, *flotter* ; with, *au gré de* ; swam, *nager* ; shoals, *foule* ; car, *char*.
 10. a third part, *un tiers* ; enemy, pl. ; surrendered, *se rendre*.

Charlemagne protégea les let- J'inventai des couleurs, j'armai
tres, et ceux qui les cultivaient. la calomnie.

Exceptions — 1. In these interrogative phrases the question is made either with a pronoun or a noun; if with a pronoun, it is always placed after the verb; as,

Où suis-je ?	Qu'ai-je fait ?
Que dois-je faire encore ?	De qui parle-t-on ?

If with a noun, the noun is placed sometimes before and sometimes after the verb; it stands before, when the personal pronoun which answers to it asks the question; as,

Cette nouvelle est-elle sûre ?	L'homme de bien craint-il la calomnie ?
--------------------------------	---

It stands after, when a pronoun absolute, or an interrogative adverb, placed at the beginning of the sentence, allows the suppression of the personal pronoun; as,

Comment se porte votre mère ?	Que veulent ces gens-là.
Où demeure votre ami ?	

Remark. — When *je* stands after a verb ending in *e* mute, that *e* mute is changed into *é* acute; as, *aimé-je ? dussé-je ?* But the transposition of *je* after the verb sometimes becomes harsh; euphony then requires another turn; so instead of *cours-je ? sens-je ? dors-je ? rends je ?* which would be intolerable, we must say, *Est-ce que ie cours ? Est-ce que je dors ?* &c.

EXERCISE.

1. Gelo, king of Syracuse, having compelled the Carthaginians to conclude peace, imposed upon them, as the first condition, the abolishing of human sacrifices.

1. Carthaginians, *Carthagoins*; give up, *renoncer à*.

2. Foulques, vicar of Neuilly, announced the second crusade ; he chose the moment, to preach it, when the great and the nobility were assembled at a tournament.

3. We are indebted to Jenner for the discovery of vaccination ; the first trials were made in Scotland, in the year one thousand seven hundred and ninety-six.

4. Sennamor, an Arabian architect, flourished towards the year fifteen hundred ; the Arabs are indebted to him for two palaces which they have placed among the wonders of the world.

5. What will posterity say of you, if, instead of devoting to the happiness of your fellow-creatures the great talents which you have received from nature, you make use of those talents only to deceive and corrupt them ?

6. Has not the boundless ambition of a few men, in all ages, been the real cause of the revolutions of empires ?

7. Why are the works of nature so perfect ? because each work is a whole, and because she labours upon an eternal plan, from which she never deviates.

8. What will honest men think of you, if you speak ill of your friends ?

2. Incidental sentences which express that we are quoting somebody's words ; as,

Je meurs innocent, a dit	<i>I die innocent, as Louis XVI.</i>
Louis XVI.	<i>said.</i>
Je le veux bien, dit-il.	<i>I am very willing, said he.</i>

3. Impersonal verbs, and the words *tel, ainsi, &c.*

Tel croit vivre long-temps, qui meurt le lendemain.	<i>Such a one thinks he will live long, who dies the next day.</i>
---	--

Ainsi s'est terminée sa carrière oragense.	<i>Thus ended his stormy career.</i>
--	--------------------------------------

Il s'est passé de grands événements.	<i>Great events have taken place.</i>
--------------------------------------	---------------------------------------

4. When the verb is preceded by one of these words, *aussi, peut-être, encore, toujours, en vain,*

2. when, *où.*

3. indebted for, *devoir ;* Scotland, *Ecosse.*

4. flourished, ind. 2.

5. devoting, *consacrer ;* fellow-creatures, *hommes ;* make use of, *se servir de.*

6. boundless, *effréné ;* in, *de ;* ages, *temps.*

7. because, *parceque ;* and because, *et que.*

8. speak ill, *dire du mal.*

du moins, au moins ; aussi est-il votre ami ; peut-être avez-vous raison ; en vain prétendons-nous.

5. When the subjunctive is used to express a wish, or for *quand même* and a conditional ; as,

Dussé-je, après dix ans, voir Puissé-je de mes yeux y voir
mon palais en cendres ! tomber la foudre ?

EXERCISE.

1. I shall only think myself happy, said a good king, when I make the happiness of my people.

2. Strange extremity, replied he : to wish to appear too powerful, you ruin your own power ; and whilst you are abroad the object of the fear and hatred of your neighbours, you waste yourself with-in by the efforts necessary to carry on such a war.

3. May all nations be convinced that there is no greater scourge than revolutions in states.

4. Thus ended, by the humiliation of Athens, that dreadful war of twenty-seven years to* which ambition gave rise, which hatred made atrocious, and which was as fatal to the Greeks as their ancient confederation had proved advantageous to them.

5. Speak quickly : whatever you ask, all your wishes shall be granted ; were you, I have said, and will repeat it, to ask the half of my powerful empire.

6. May both yourselves and your posterity prove worthy scions of those ancient Romans, whose reputation once filled the whole earth.

7. May the gods grant that you never experience such misfortunes.

8. For the support of a stormy minority and regency, there* had risen already at court one of those men in whom God places His gifts of understanding and counsel ; and whom He draws, from time to time, from the treasure of His providence, to assist kings and govern kingdoms.

1. when I make; ind. 7.

2. abroad, *au-dehors* ; waste yourself, *s'épuiser* ; within, *au-dedans*.

3. be convinced, *se convaincre*.

4. ended, *se terminer* ; gave rise to, *faire naître* ; made, *rendre* ; had proved, *être*.

5. were, *devoir*.

6. prove, *se montrer* ; scions, *descendant*.

7. grant, *faire* ; experience, *éprouver de*.

8. had risen, *s'élever* ; understanding, *intelligence* ; draws, *tirer* ; treasure, *trésor*, pl.

Government of the Verb.

When the regimen of a verb is a noun, it is generally placed after the verb; but to this rule there is one exception.

In an interrogative sentence, the regimen is placed before the verb, when this regimen is joined to an absolute pronoun.

EXAMPLES.

Quel objet voyez-vous ?	<i>What object do you see ?</i>
A quelle science vous appliquez-vous ?	<i>To what science do you apply yourself ?</i>

Remark. — A verb can never have two regimens direct; therefore, when a verb has two regimens, both nouns, one must necessarily be preceded by a preposition, and that second regimen is called indirect; as,

Donnez ce livre à votre frère.	<i>Give that book to your brother.</i>
On a accusé Cicéron d'imprudence et de faiblesse.	<i>Cicero has been accused of imprudence and weakness.</i>

Though the natural order of the ideas seems to require that the regimen direct be placed before the indirect, the perspicuity of the sentence does not allow it in all cases.

RULE. — When a verb has two regimens, the shorter is generally placed first; but if they are of equal length, the regimen direct will precede the indirect.

EXAMPLES.

Les hypocrites s'étudient à parer le vice des dehors de la vertu.	<i>Hypocrites make it their study to deck vice with the exterior of virtue.</i>
Les hypocrites s'étudient à parer des dehors de la vertu	<i>Hypocrites make it their study to deck with the exterior of virtue</i>

les vices les plus honteux et les *the most shameful and most odious*
plus décriés. *vices.*

L'ambition sacrifie le présent *Ambition sacrifices the future*
à l'avenir, mais la volupté sa- *to the present, but pleasure sacri-*
crifie l'avenir au présent. *fices the present to the future.*

RULE. — A noun may be governed at once by two verbs, provided those two verbs do not require different regimens.

EXAMPLES.

Honorez et respectez les *Honour and respect old men.*
vieillards.

Ce général attaqua et prit la *That general attacked and took*
ville. *the town.*

But do not say,

Cet officier attaqua et se rendit *That officer attacked and made*
maître de la ville. *himself master of the city.*

A different turn should be given to the sentence, by placing the noun after the first verb, and adding *en* before the second; as,

Cet officier attaqua la ville et *That officer attacked the town*
s'en rendit maître. *and made himself master of it.*

EXERCISE.

1. O my dear Aristias, if you love your country, may the gods preserve you from wishing her that success which would hasten her decline and ruin.

2. The army began to march, and soon the air resounded with the flourish of the warlike trumpet.

3. Man's first fault was to rebel against his Creator; and to use all the advantages which he had received from that Creator to offend Him.

4. How could ambitious men* make prudent use of a victory so calculated to elate with pride the most moderate men?

1. decline, *décadence*.

2. flourish, *fanfare*, f. pl.

3. received, m. pl.

4. calculated, *propre*; elate with pride, *enivrer d'orgueil*.

5. He afterwards informed the king of many atrocities committed by those two men, which the king had never heard of, because nobody dared to accuse them.

6. Let us oppose a stoical fortitude to the insinuations and injuries of the wicked.

7. Believe that virtue is preferable to riches, and that God rewards those who practise it.

8. Among the Spartans, public education had two objects: one to harden their bodies by fatigue; the other, to excite and nourish in their minds the love of their country and an enthusiasm for great things.

Of the Use of Auxiliary Verbs.

The verb *avoir* marks action, *il a aimé*; the verb *être* the state, *il est aimé*; hence it follows:—

1. That most neuter verbs, expressing an action, are conjugated with the auxiliary *avoir*: *j'ai succédé, il a régné, nous avons dormi, vous aviez marché, il a paru, &c.*

Exception. — *Aller, arriver, choir, décéder, mourir, naître, tomber, venir* and the derivatives, *devenir, parvenir, revenir*, which take the auxiliary *être*, although the action which they express requires the verb *avoir*; but custom has decided otherwise.

2. That a certain number of neuter verbs, as, *accourir, disparaître, croître, cesser, périr, monter, descendre, entrer, sortir, passer, partir, vieillir, grandir, rester, &c.*, take sometimes *avoir* and sometimes *être*: *avoir* when it is the action which the verb expresses that is considered, and *être* when state is the principal idea that one wishes to express. It is the circumstances by which the verb is accompanied that indicate which of these two objects we consider.

5. informed of, *découvrir à*; heard of, *entendre parler de*; because, *parceque*.

8. Among the Spartans, *A Sparte*; to, *de*; harden, *endurcir*; by, *à*; "their" must be rendered by the article.

Thus, I will say with *avoir*: *elle a disparu subitement*; *la fièvre a cessé hier*; *la rivière a monté rapidement*; *le baromètre a descendu de plusieurs degrés en peu d'heures*; *il a passé en Amérique en tel temps*; *le trait a parti avec impétuosité* (Acad.): and with the verb *être*; *elle est disparue depuis quinze jours*; *la fièvre est cessée depuis quelque temps*; *il est monté*; *il est descendu depuis une heure*; *les chaleurs sont passées*; *les troupes sont parties pour six mois* (Acad.).

Remark.—Some of these verbs are sometimes employed actively, that is, with a direct regimen; and then they take, like active verbs, the auxiliary *avoir*: *on les a descendus dans une île*; *il a monté l'escalier*; *on l'a sorti d'une affaire désagréable*; *j'ai passé la nuit sans dormir* (Acad.).

3. Some neuter verbs change their auxiliary by changing their acceptation:—

Convenir, meaning *to suit*, to become *être convenable*, takes *avoir*; and *être* when it means *to agree*: *cette maison m'a convenu*, *et je suis convenu du prix* (Acad.).

Demeurer takes *être* when the subject does not change state: *deux cents hommes sont demeurés sur le champ de bataille*; and *avoir* when the subject passes from one state to another: *il a demeuré dix ans en province* (Acad.).

We say *cette faute m'est échappée*, to mean that *I made it*; and *elle m'a échappé* to mean that *I have not noticed it*.

Expirer takes *être* when used of things, and *avoir* when it is said of persons: *la trêve est expirée*; *cet homme a expiré*.

Remark.—*Expirer*, applied to persons, requires, like all verbs conjugated with *avoir*, that its auxiliary should never be understood.

Of the Use of Moods and Tenses.

INFINITIVE.

The infinitive is employed as subject and as regimen. Employed as subject, the infinitive always requires the verb to be in the singular; as,

Manger, boire et dormir, c'est leur unique occupation.	<i>To eat, drink, and sleep is their only occupation.</i>
---	---

Used as regimen, it must not only relate to a word expressed in the sentence, but also refer to it without ambiguity; as,

Il vaut mieux être malheu- reux que criminel.	<i>It is better to be unfortunate than criminal.</i>
--	--

The infinitive may be the regimen of another verb, either without the help of a preposition, or with the assistance of some prepositions, such as *de*, *à*, *pour*.

The infinitive takes no preposition after *aimer mieux*, *aller*, *croire*, *daigner*, *déclarer*, *devoir*, *entendre*, *envoyer*, *espérer*, *faillir*, *faire*, *falloir*, *laisser*, *nier*, *ôter*, *paraître*, *prétendre*, *pouvoir*, *savoir*, *sembler*, *souhaiter*, *soutenir*, *venir*, *voir*, *vouloir*.

EXAMPLES.

Je voudrais inspirer l'amour de la retraite.	<i>I wish to inspire the love of solitude.</i>
Daignez m'écouter.	<i>Deign to listen to me.</i>

The infinitive is preceded by the preposition *à* after *accoutumer*, *admettre*, *aider*, *aimer*, *apprendre*, *autoriser*, *condamner*, *chercher*, *consister*, *disposer*, *donner*, *employer*, *encourager*, *engager*, *exhorter*, *inviter*, *penser*, *persister*, *porter*, *pousser*, *rester*, *travailler*, *renoncer*, *répugner*, &c.

EXAMPLES.

J'aime à danser.

I like to dance.

J'apprends à chanter.

I learn to sing.

The infinitive is preceded by *de* after *accuser, affecter, apprehender, avertir, blâmer, cesser, commander, conjurer, conseiller, craindre, défendre, détourner, différer, dire, dispenser, dissuader, écrire, empêcher, enjoindre, entreprendre, essayer, feindre, finir, menacer, mériter, négliger, offrir, omettre, ordonner, oublier, parler, permettre, persuader, plaindre, prescrire, presser, prier, promettre, proposer, refuser, remercier, résoudre, sommer, soupçonner, supplier.*

EXAMPLES.

Il affecte de l'aimer.

He affects to like it.

Je vous prie de lui pardonner.

I entreat you to forgive him.

The infinitive is preceded by *pour* when we intend to express the end, the cause for which a thing is done; and whenever the preposition *to* can be changed into *in order to*.

EXAMPLES.

Men are born to live in society.

Les hommes sont nés pour vivre en société.

Remark. — The preposition *de* may be suppressed after the verbs *désirer, détester, espérer, souhaiter*; as, *Je désire de sortir*, I wish to go out; or, *Je désire sortir*. Taste and the ear decide it.

The infinitive is preceded by the preposition *à* or *de* after *continuer, contraindre, déterminer, s'empreser, engager, essayer, faillir, forcer, obliger, résoudre, solliciter, souffrir, tarder*. Taste and the ear must equally be consulted.

EXAMPLES.

Il contraignit cinq légions romaines à poser les armes sans combat.

Et lui-même au torrent nous contraint de céder.

It is in the genius of the French language to admit two infinitives one after the other, and in such case the second is regimen of the first; as, *Je veux le lui faire savoir; Je n'ose leur permettre d'écrire.* But three or four infinitives thus employed make the style diffused, disagreeable to the ear, and ought to be avoided.

EXERCISE.

1. God has created you to love Him, not to understand Him.
2. The fear of torture, or of an approaching death, could not compel St. Louis to consent to pay a ransom for his deliverance.
3. A polite man does not like to gainsay; still less does he like to flatter.
4. A young man who likes to adorn himself like a woman, is unworthy of wisdom and glory: glory is only due to a heart that knows how* to suffer pain and trample upon pleasure.
5. To speak too much is dangerous: to study is agreeable.
6. Men often think of death when it is too late, and begin to study how* to live when they should learn how* to die.
7. Palamedes invented the game of chess to divert his soldiers, and to teach them the stratagems of war.
8. You cannot go there without disobeying your father.
9. People are often afraid of seeing themselves such as they are, because they are not what they should be.
10. If there is a remedy for the evils which befall us, courage and patience will make us surmount them.

OF THE PARTICIPLE.

The participle is a part of the verb which partakes of the properties both of a verb and an adjective: of a verb, as it has its signification and regimen; of an

-
2. approaching, *prochain.*
 3. polite, *bien élevé.*
 4. to adorn, *parer*; trample upon, *fouler aux pieds.*
 6. study how, *apprendre.*
 7. Palamedes, *Palamède*; chess, *échecs*; divert, *amuser.*
 9. people, *on*; are afraid, *craindre*; because, *parceque*; should, *devoir.*
 10. for, *à*; befall, *arriver.*

adjective, as it expresses the quality of a person or thing.

There are two participles: the present and the past.

Of the Participle Present.

The participle present always terminates in *ant*; as, *aimant, finissant, recevant, rendant*.

RULE.—The participle present is undeclined, that is, it takes neither gender nor number; as,

Une montagne, des montagnes dominant sur des plaines immenses.

The present participle expresses an action, and may be replaced by another tense of the verb preceded by *qui*, or by one of the conjunctions, *lorsque, parceque, puisque, &c.*: *C'est un homme d'un bon caractère, obligeant ses amis, quand l'occasion s'en présente*, He is a man of an amiable disposition, obliging his friends when opportunity offers. We may say, *qui oblige ses amis. Les personnes aimant tout le monde, n'aiment ordinairement personne*. We may say, *Les personnes qui aiment*.

But when, like an adjective, it expresses simply a quality, it takes both the gender and number of the substantive; as, *un homme obligeant, une femme obligeante, la religion dominante, à la nuit tombante*.

It is then called a verbal adjective, and marks the state, the manner of being of the word to which it relates, and can be construed with one of the tenses of the verb *être*: *Ce sont des hommes obligeants; ces hommes prévoyants ont aperçu le danger; les personnes aimantes ont plus de jouissances que les autres*. We may say, *Des hommes qui sont obligeants; des hommes qui sont prévoyants; les personnes qui sont aimantes*.

EXERCISE.

1. Were it not for the camels crossing the desert with the rapidity of lightning, most caravans would be buried in the moving sand.

2. It is difficult to silence people suffering, murmuring against magistrates who have not been sufficiently provident to relieve their pressing wants.

3. Men existing in society are, notwithstanding the difference of their fortune and rank, dependent upon one another.

4. The winds roaring with impetuosity, and agitating aloud the moving summits of the surrounding woods, announced one of those terrific storms desolating every year that unfortunate country, and threatening everything with destruction.

5. Men obliging by necessity or by force, seldom find grateful hearts.

6. The Egyptians were wise men, cultivating every science, and undertaking the greatest things.

7. We remained during eight days motionless in the midst of the ocean, vainly striking with our oars the waters standing still around us.

8. What are, in these places, the objects not answering our desires? We have for the winter soft clothes, defending our limbs from the piercing cold; in the different seasons we find abundant food; and every tree produces, in summer, refreshing fruits.

9. Obliging men have generally a noble, generous heart.

10. The grace of God works upon us by suggesting good thoughts, and keeping off bad ones.*

Of the Participle Past.

The participle past may either agree with its subject or its regimen.

1. were it not for, *sans*; moving, *mouvant*.

2. to silence, *imposer silence*; people, *peuple*, pl.; provident, *prévoyant*; relieve, *subvenir à*.

4. aloud, *avec fracas*; with destruction, *de détruire*.

7. remained, ind. 4; motionless, *immobile*; standing still, *dormant*.

8. places, *lieu*; not answering, *manquer à*; soft, *moelleux*; clothes, *habit*; defending, *garantir*; from, *contre*; cold, pl.; refreshing, *rafraichissant*.

10. works, *opérer*; by, *en*; keeping off, *éloigner*.

Agreement of the Participle Past with its Subject.

RULE I.—The participle past, employed without auxiliary, agrees, like the adjective, in gender and number, with the substantive to which it refers.

EXAMPLES.

Que de remparts détruits, que de villes forcées ;
Que de moissons de gloire en courant amassées !

RULE II.—The participle past, accompanied by the auxiliary *être*, agrees with the subject of the verb.

EXAMPLES.

Mon frère est tombé.	<i>My brother is fallen.</i>
Mes frères sont tombés.	<i>My brothers are fallen.</i>
Ma sœur est tombée.	<i>My sister is fallen.</i>
Mes sœurs sont tombées.	<i>My sisters are fallen.</i>
Le fer est émoussé.	<i>The sword is blunted.</i>
Les bûchers sont éteints.	<i>The stakes are extinguished.</i>

Sometimes the subject is placed after the participle, without changing the rule of the agreement ; as,

Quand il vit l'urne où étaient renfermées les cendres d'Hippias, il versa un torrent de larmes.

EXERCISE.

1. Secret and hidden enmities are more to be feared than open and declared animosities.

2. Rewards granted to merit ought never to be the reward of intrigue.

3. The most subtle body is like a world, in which millions of parcels are united, and arranged in the most admirable order.

4. The great phenomena of nature are easily explained ; eternal gravitation being supposed a true principle.

1. to be feared, *à craindre*.

2. reward, *prix*.

3. parcels, *parties*.

4. are explained, *s'expliquer*.

5. Men pass away like flowers, which, blown in the morning, are, towards evening, withered, and trampled under foot.

6. My brothers are gone to Dover, and intend to pay you a visit when they return.

7. The wicked are always tormented, and the righteous comforted, by their own conscience.

8. When the soul is agitated, the human face becomes a living picture, in which passions are represented with as much delicacy as energy; in which all the emotions of the soul are manifested by a single expression, and in which every action is designed by a character, the lively and deep impression of which outstrips the will, and betrays us.

RULE III. — The participle past, when it follows the verb *avoir*, never agrees with its subject; as,

Nous avons reçu votre lettre.

We have received your letter.

Ils ont perdu leurs livres.

They have lost their books.

J'ai récompensé mes fils.

I have rewarded my sons.

Remark.—The participle past of the verb *être*, and of all the neuter verbs which are conjugated with the auxiliary verb *avoir*, never vary; as, *il* or *elle a été*, he or she has been; *ils* or *elles ont été*, they have been; *il* or *elle a dormi*, he or she has slept; *ils* or *elles ont nui*, they have injured.

We shall write also, with the participle unchanged, *ils ont répondu à notre attente*, *nous avons chanté*, *cette armée a péri*, because the verbs *répondre*, *chanter*, *périr*, have here no regimen direct.

EXERCISE.

1. The faults of Peter the Great have tarnished his great and admirable qualities.

2. All the animals and vegetables that have existed since the

5. pass away, *passer*; blown, *épanouir*; withered, *sécher*; trampled under foot, *fouler aux pieds*.

6. Dover, *Douvres*; intend, *se proposer*; are come back, ind. 8.

7. righteous, *juste*; comforted, *consoler*.

8. in which, *où*; expression, *trait*; outstrips, *dévançer*; betrays, *décéler*.

2. Vegetables, *végétal*; returned, *rendre*; of it, *en*.

creation of the world, have successively drawn from the surface of the terrestrial globe the matter of their body, and have returned to it, at their death, what they had borrowed from it.

3. Men who have lived longest are not those who have reckoned the greatest number of years, but those who have made the best use of the time which God has given them.

4. Demetrius being* informed that the Athenians had overthrown his statues, "They have not," replied he, "overthrown the valour which has caused them to be erected to me."

5. The errors of Descartes proved very useful to Newton.

6. That officer has forced the soldiers to march.

Agreement of the Participle Past with its Regimen.

RULE I.—The participle past, accompanied by the auxiliary *avoir*, agrees with its regimen direct, when that regimen is placed before the participle.

EXAMPLES.

Voici la lettre que j'ai reçue.	<i>Here is the letter which I have received.</i>
Voici les lettres que j'ai reçues.	<i>Here are the letters which I have received.</i>
Où est ton livre? Je l'ai perdu?	<i>Where is thy book? I have lost it.</i>
Où est ta plume? Je l'ai perdue.	<i>Where is thy pen? I have lost it.</i>
Où sont tes livres? Je les ai perdus.	<i>Where are your books? I have lost them.</i>
Ils m'ont félicité.	<i>They have congratulated me.</i>
Il nous a félicités.	<i>He has congratulated us.</i>
Quelle peine j'ai éprouvée!	<i>What pain I have suffered!</i>
Que de soins je me suis donnés!	<i>What pains I have taken!</i>
Combien de livres avez-vous lus?	<i>How many books have you read?</i>

In the above examples, the participles *reçu*, *reçues*, *perdu*, *perdue*, *perdus*, *félicité*, *félicités*, &c., agree with

3. longest, *le plus*; reckoned, *compter*; the greatest number, *le plus de*; made the best use, *le mieux user*; given, *départir*.

4. overthrown, *détruire*; caused, *faire*; to be erected, *élever*.

5. proved useful, *servir*.

their regimens direct, *que, le, la, les, nous, &c.*, because they are preceded by them.

Remark. — The regimen which precedes the participle is either one of these pronouns, *que, me, te, se, le, la, les, nous*, and *vous*, or a noun sometimes joined to the pronoun *quel*, sometimes preceded by the word of quantity, *combien*, or *que* signifying *combien*, as may be seen in the foregoing examples.

EXERCISE.

1. The tribunes demanded of Clodius the execution of the promises which the Consul Valerius had made them.

2. O magnificent mountains, who has established you on your foundations? Who has raised your summits even above the clouds? Who has adorned you with verdant forests, with those fruit-trees, with those plants so useful and so varied, with so many sweet flowers?

3. The dépôt of tradition is composed of recollections which time has impaired, and of fictions which imagination has created.

4. Such was the queen through the whole course of her life. God had raised her to the throne, that she might honour religion; and united her to the greatest king in the world, in order that her virtue might be more prominent.

5. It is the affection, the love which Louis the Twelfth showed towards his people, which have procured for him the surname of Father of the People.

6. O Telemachus, be fearful of falling into the hands of Pygmalion, our king; he has imbrued them in the blood of Sichæus, his sister Dido's husband. Dido, filled with the desire of revenge, has fled from Tyre with several ships. The greater number of those who love virtue and liberty have followed her.

7. We have seen frightful and cruel Death, the daughter of Sin; we have seen her enter our cottages, where crime has brought her.

1. demanded of, *demander à*; given, *faire*.

2. foundations, *fondement*; summit, *tête*; even above, *jusqu'au dessus*; verdant, *verdoyant*; fruit-trees, *arbre fruitier*; sweet, *agréable*.

3. impaired, *altérer*.

4. through, *durant*; prominent, *regardé*.

5. procured for him, *lui mériter*.

6. imbrued, *tremper*; filled with, *plein de*; revenge, *vengeance*; fled, *se sauver*; Tyre, *Tyr*; greater number, *plupart*.

7. brought, *conduire*.

8. How many obstacles these two great men have overcome ! What difficulties they have conquered ! What perils they have run ! How many nations still barbarous they have subjected and civilised !

RULE II.—The verb *être* being used for *avoir* in pronominal verbs, the participle past of such verbs follows absolutely the same rule as the participle conjugated with *avoir* ; that is, that the participle of a pronominal verb agrees with the regimen direct when preceded by it, and that it remains invariable when the regimen direct is placed after, or when there is none.

Thus we write with agreement—

La lettre qu'ils se sont adressée.	Ils se la sont montrée.
	Ils se sont blâmés.

because the participles *adressée*, *montrée*, *blâmés*, are preceded by their regimen direct, *que, la, se*.

But we write without agreement—

Ils se sont adressé une lettre.	Ils se sont imaginé que je plaisantais.
---------------------------------	---

For the participles *adressé* and *imaginé* are followed by their regimens direct, *une lettre, que je plaisantais*.

RULE III.—The participles past of verbs essentially pronominal always agree, because these verbs have for regimen direct their second pronoun.

We write—

Nous nous sommes abstenus de toute réflexion.	<i>We have refrained from all reflection.</i>
Mes amis, vous vous êtes repentis de votre légèreté.	<i>My friends, you have repented your unsteadiness.</i>
Les troupes se sont emparées de la ville.	<i>The troops have taken possession of the town.</i>

In the above examples, the participles *abstenus*,

repentis, emparées, agree with the regimens direct, *nous, vous, se*, placed before.

EXERCISE.

1. The cities which those nations have built for themselves are but a collection of huts.

2. How is it, I said to Narbal, that the Phœnicians have made themselves masters of the commerce of all nations?

3. Some of our authors have imagined that they surpassed the ancients.

4. As long as they lived, Racine and Boileau gave each other marks of the most sincere esteem.

5. The city of Liverpool has rendered itself flourishing by its trade.

6. Many heroes have subjected provinces, but few have restrained their passions, and have conquered themselves.

7. How many kings have succeeded each other on the throne of France?

8. The chimeras which she has got in her head are beyond all belief.

9. It is from Greece that poetry passed into Italy. Homer, the most celebrated of the poets whom the Greeks had, was born three hundred and forty years after the taking of Troy. Seven cities contested the glory of having given him birth.

Remarks on the Use of certain Participles.

Remark 1. — The participle past of an impersonal verb is always invariable; as,

Il est arrivé de grands malheurs.	<i>Great misfortunes have happened.</i>
-----------------------------------	---

Le mauvais temps qu'il y a eu.	<i>The bad weather which we have had.</i>
--------------------------------	---

Les chaleurs qu'il a fait.	<i>The heat which we have had.</i>
----------------------------	------------------------------------

1. built for themselves, *se bâtir*; but, *ne que*; collection, *amas*.
 2. How is it, *d'où vient*; Phœnicians, *Phéniciens*; made themselves, *se rendre*.

3. have imagined, *s'imaginer*.

4. as long as, *tant que*; marks, *preuve*; gave, ind. 4.

6. restrained, *réprimer*; conquered themselves, *se vaincre soi-même*.

8. has got, *se mettre*; are beyond, *passer*.

9. taking, *prise*; contested, *se disputer*; birth, *jour*; passed, ind. 4; had, ind. 4.

Remark 2. — The participle placed between two *que's* is likewise invariable; as,

Les réponses que j'avais prévu *The answers that I had fore-*
qu'on vous ferait. *seen they would give you.*

Les embarras que j'ai su que *The difficulties that I knew you*
vous aviez. *were in.*

The reason is, that this participle has for its regimen direct the end of the sentence: *J'avais prévu quoi? Qu'on vous ferait des réponses. J'ai su quoi? Que vous aviez des embarras*; and as these regimens are placed after the participles *prévu* and *su*, they are undeclined.

Remark 3. — The participle past is undeclined, when it has for regimen direct *l'*, representing a member of a sentence, because then *l'*, being equivalent to *cela*, is masculine and singular, and cannot, for that reason, communicate the agreement to the participle of which it is the direct regimen. We write then without agreement —

Cette lettre est plus intéressante que je ne l'avais cru. L'affaire fut moins sérieuse que
je ne l'avais pensé.

As if it were, *Cette lettre est plus intéressante que je n'avais cru qu'elle était intéressante; l'affaire est moins sérieuse que je n'avais pensé qu'elle serait sérieuse.*

Remark 4. — The participle past, immediately followed by an infinitive, agrees, when it has for direct regimen the pronoun which precedes; and it is undeclined, if, on the contrary, it has for its direct regimen the infinitive which follows; as,

Cette femme chante bien, je *That woman sings well, I have*
l'ai entendue chanter. *heard her sing.*

J'ai entendu qui? I have heard whom? Elle chanter, her sing: la is the direct regimen of the

participle, and as it precedes, the agreement takes place.

Cette romance est charmante, *That ballad is beautiful, I have*
je l'ai entendu chanter. *heard it sung.*

J'ai entendu quoi? I have heard what? *Chanter*, sing, the ballad. *Chanter* is the direct regimen of the participle, and as it comes after, the agreement does not take place. -

Again :

Je les ai laissés partir. *I allowed them to go.*

J'ai laissé qui? I allowed whom? *Eux* .*partir*. *Les* is the direct regimen of the participle, and as it precedes it, it agrees.

Ils se sont laissé surprendre *They have suffered themselves*
par l'ennemi. *to be surprised by the enemy.*

Ils ont laissé quoi? They have suffered what? *Surprendre eux*. *Surprendre* is the direct regimen of the participle, and as it is placed after, there is no agreement.

EXERCISE.

1. The storm which we had yesterday has done a great deal of damage to our ships.
2. The heavy rains which we have had this week have prevented us from going into the country.
3. How many imprudent steps were taken on that occasion !
4. The scarcity which there was last winter, has afforded the opportunity of doing much good.
5. The succours which you pretended that I should receive have proved illusive.

-
1. we had, *y avoir*, ind. 3 ; has done, *causer*.
 2. heavy, *grand* ; have had, *y avoir*.
 3. imprudent, *faux* ; steps, *démarche* ; were taken, *se faire*, ind. 4 ; on, *en*.
 4. Scarcity, *disette* ; there was, ind. 4 ; has afforded, *donner* ; good, *bien*.
 5. have proved, *être* ; pretended, ind. 4.

6. The affair appearing more serious than they had at first thought, the consuls determined on beginning the war.

7. The eruption of Vesuvius is one of those spectacles which nature has reserved to herself to exhibit alone to the admiration of men.

8. Our voyage has been as prosperous as we had wished ; and with respect to the fertility of the island, we have not been disappointed in the hope we had entertained.

9. The passions which you have suffered to foment, end with subjugating you.

10. When Jugurtha had hemmed in a Roman army, and had allowed it to go, on the faith of a treaty ; they employed against him the very troops whom he had spared.

11. We have seen Charlemagne surpass the deeds of his ancestors, and confer on France a splendour of which they would not have thought her susceptible.

12. It was not long before we discovered that the threats of our enemies were more serious than we had believed.

The participle past *fait*, followed by an infinitive, is never declined, for this participle, with the infinitive which follows, presents an indivisible meaning, and forms as it were but one verb ; so that the direct regimen belongs neither to *fait* nor to the infinitive, but to both verbs united ; as,

Louis XI fit taire ceux qu'il *Louis XI. silenced those whom*
avait fait parler si bien. *he had caused to speak so well.*

The infinitive is sometimes understood after the participle past of the verbs *devoir*, *pouvoir*, *vouloir* ; as,

Je lui ai rendu tous les services	que j'ai du,	understand	lui rendre.
"	"	que j'ai pu	— lui rendre.
"	"	que j'ai voulu	— lui rendre.

6. determined on, *résoudre de*.

7. Vesuvius, *le Vésuve* ; to exhibit alone, *de montrer seule*.

8. voyage, *traversée* ; prosperous, *heureux* ; with respect to, *quant à* ; been disappointed, *se tromper*, ind. 4 ; entertained, *concevoir*.

9. end with, *finir par*.

10. hemmed in, *enfermer* ; they, *on* ; spared, *sauver*.

11. Deeds, *actions* ; confer on, *donner à* ; splendour, *éclat*.

12. It was not long, *nous ne pas tarder*, ind. 3 ; before, *à*, inf. 1.

And in this case the participle remains invariable, its regimen direct being the infinitive understood.

Le peu has in French two meanings: it means a *small quantity*, or *want*.

In the former case, the substantive placed after *le peu* determines the agreement; in the latter, on the contrary, it is with *le peu*, and not with the substantive, that the agreement takes place; as,

Le peu d'affection que vous lui	<i>The little affection you have</i>
avez témoignée lui a rendu le	<i>shown him has restored him his</i>
courage.	<i>courage.</i>

Le peu means in a *small quantity*, for there is some affection shown: *que*, direct regimen, represents consequently the substantive *affection*, and the participle is put in the feminine; but,

Le peu d'affection que vous lui	<i>The little affection you have</i>
avez témoigné l'a découragé.	<i>shown him has discouraged him.</i>

Here *le peu* means *want*, for without the want of affection, he would not have been discouraged. *Que*, direct regimen, represents *le peu*, a word masculine and singular, and the participle adopts the gender masculine and the number singular.

The pronoun *en*, a vague word, which means *de cela*, is always employed as an indirect regimen, and cannot have any influence over the participle. Thus we write, in speaking of fruits:

J'en ai mangé.

I have eaten some.

and of letters:

J'en ai reçu.

I have received some.

These sentences are elliptical: *j'ai mangé une certaine quantité de fruits*; *j'ai reçu un certain nombre de lettres*; and the participles *mangé*, *reçu* are unde-

clined, because their regimens direct, *une certaine quantité, un certain nombre*, are not expressed.

EXERCISE.

1. Alexander destroyed more towns than he founded.
2. The little moderation which those two men showed in prosperity has made them pass for being * proud and senseless.
3. She has obtained all the favours which she wished.
4. We have given him all the assistance that we could.
5. All these laws might have some exceptions with us, as they had among the Greeks.
6. Serpents seem deprived of all means of moving, and appear only intended to live on the spot where fate has caused them to be born.
7. They uttered cries of joy on again beholding the companions whom they had believed to be lost.
8. It is true that, carried away by the torrent, they found themselves far from the road they had resolved to follow.
9. Love of vainglory has made them speak without reflection.

OF THE INDICATIVE.

Of the Present.

The present is used to express an existing state ; as,

Je suis ici.

I am here.

an habitual state ; as,

Je me promène tous les jours.

I walk every day.

a future near at hand ; as,

Il est demain fête.

To-morrow is a holiday.

a past, to make the narrative more lively and animated ; as,

1. founded, *en fonder*, ind. 4.
2. showed, ind. 4.
3. wished, *vouloir*, ind. 4.
4. could, *pouvoir*, ind. 4.
5. had, *en avoir*, ind. 4 ; among, *chez*.
6. moving, *se mouvoir* ; intended, *destiné* ; on the spot, *à l'endroit* ; has caused them to be born, *faire naître*.
7. uttered, *pousser* ; to be lost, *perdu*.
8. carried away, *entraîné*.

J'ai vu, seigneur, j'ai vu notre malheureux fils
 Traîné par les chevaux que sa main a nourris,
 Il veut les rappeler, et sa voix les effraie.

In English, the verb *to be* is frequently used with the participle present ; as, *I am reading, I was translating, I shall be writing.*

This construction is not adopted in French ; and whenever it occurs, it is to be translated simply by the verb, put in the same tense expressed by the verb *to be* : thus, *I am reading* must be expressed by *je lis* ; *I shall be writing* by *j'écrirai*.

EXERCISE ON THE USE OF THE PRESENT.

1. Tamerlane, rapid as Cæsar in his conquests, and who, like him, also wrote his commentaries, thus relates his return among the former companions of his battles. "At the sight of me," said he, "their joy bursts forth into transports; they leap on the ground, throw themselves at my feet, bathe them with tears, and kiss my stirrups. I, not less moved than they, alight from my horse, press them to my heart, lay my turban on the head of the first, pass my scarf about the neck of the second, give my cloak to the third, and together we invoke the master of heaven. I then take them to my tent ; we celebrate our meeting by a joyful repast ; hope and liberty embellish the desert for us."

2. The number of those brave men rapidly increases ; several tribes crowd to their colours. Timur, at their head, re-enters his country, attacks, breaks through, pursues, disperses the invaders of his fatherland. The country beyond the Oxus is delivered by his courage, and his equals choose him for their ruler.

3. Truth, eternal by its nature, is immutable as God himself.

Of the Imperfect.

The imperfect is used to express an action not finished, or going on whilst another took place, and

1. the sight of me, *ma vue* ; bursts forth, *éclater* ; into, *en* ; on, *à* ; I, *moi* ; moved, *attendri* ; they, *eux* ; to, *sur* ; lay, *poser* ; about, *à*.

2. brave men, *brave* ; crowd, *se ranger* ; to, *sous* ; colours, *drapeaux* ; breaks through, *enfoncer* ; invaders, *dominateurs* ; fatherland, *patrie* ; the country beyond the Oxus, *La Transoxiane*.

3. by, *de* ; immutable, *immuable*.

then it answers to the English expression, *I was doing*; as,

I was writing when you entered. *J'écrivais lorsque vous êtes entré.*

It is also used to denote the recurrence of an action at a time which is past; as,

Quand j'étais à Paris, j'allais souvent aux Champs Elysées. *When I was at Paris, I often went to the Champs Elysées.*

EXERCISE ON THE USE OF THE IMPERFECT.

1. I then tried to touch whatever I saw; I wished to touch the sun; I extended my arms to embrace the horizon, and I only found the vacuum of the air.

2. What were you doing this morning in my room when I found you there?

3. In that corrupt age, goodness appeared weakness; the humanity of the prince excited the audacity of the most ambitious, who were then conspiring against the head of the empire.

4. The new emperor drew the eyes of the people upon himself, commanded respect by his lofty stature, by the majesty of his deportment, by the eloquence of his speeches; but more proud than virtuous, and more vain than skilful, he did not fulfil public expectation.

5. The tyranny of that woman made every triumph useless; she unceasingly disposed the minds to sedition; while the provinces gave the sceptre to Brienne, the armies of the East proclaimed Emperor Nicephorus, who descended from Phocas, and pretended to derive his illustrious origin from the ancient Roman family of the Fabii.

6. That general was then drawing to his standards all the commanders of troops in Asia, making for himself a powerful party in the senate, and finding the means of securing the support of the clergy.

1. tried, *essayer*, ind. 2; vacuum, *vide*; air, pl.

2. age, *siècle*.

3. head, *chef*.

4. drew upon himself, *s'attirer*; deportment, *maintien*; expectation, *attente*, f.

5. made, *rendre*, ind. 2; east, *orient*; derive, *tirer*; family, *maison*; Fabii, *Fabius*.

6. drawing to, *attirer sous*; securing, *s'assurer*.

Of the Past Definite.

The past definite is used to express a fact or event completely past, and of which nothing remains; as,

Je reçus une lettre hier, la semaine dernière, le mois dernier, ou l'année dernière. *I received a letter yesterday, last week, last month, or last year.*

To use this tense, there must be the interval of at least one day. It is most used in the historic style, and for that reason it is called *parfait historique*.

EXERCISE ON THE USE OF THE PAST DEFINITE.

Alexander achieved a great conquest. The measures he took were sound. He set out only after having completely subdued the Greeks; he left nothing behind against him. He attacked the maritime provinces, and made his land army follow the sea-coast, not to be separated from his fleet. He made an admirable use of discipline against numbers; and if it is true that victory gave him everything, he did everything also to obtain victory. In the beginning of his enterprise, that is, at a time when a check could ruin him, he put little to chance: when fortune placed him above events, rashness was sometimes one of his means. When it is necessary to fight the naval forces of the Persians, it is rather Parmenio who shows boldness, it is rather Alexander who displays prudence. The battle of Issus gave him Tyre and Egypt; the battle of Arbella gave him the whole world. This is the way in which he made his conquests; let us see how he preserved them.

Of the Past Indefinite.

The past indefinite is used to express an action that has been done in a time which is not completely over; as,

Achieved, *faire*; sound, *juste*; land army, *armée de terre*; made follow, *faire suivre à*; numbers, sing.; when, *où*; could, ind. 2; chance, *hasard*; it is necessary, *il s'agit*; Persians, *Perse*; rather, *plutôt*; Tyre, *Tyr*; Egypt, *Egypte*; Arbella, *Arbelles*; This is the way in which, *voilà comme*.

J'ai reçu une lettre cette semaine, ce mois, cette année. *I received a letter this week, this month, this year.*

It is used for a past indeterminate ; as,

J'ai voyagé en Italie. *I have travelled in Italy.*

For a future just approaching ; as,

Avez-vous bientôt fini ? *Will you soon have done ?*
 Oui, j'ai fini dans le moment. *Yes, I shall have done in a moment.*

EXERCISE ON THE USE OF THE PAST INDEFINITE.

Valiant supports of the empire, when, having scarcely past the age of infancy, they invested me with the purple, to confer on me a title without authority, the favour of the gods brought me to your provinces, and threw me into your arms. Since that time, labours, hardships, cares, anxieties, dangers, and glory, all has been common between us : I have found your property given up to the rapacity of magistrates guilty of peculation, your fields laid waste by foreign soldiers, your towns invaded by barbarians : everything failed us but courage ; it has sufficed to put an end to our misfortunes. I have marched at your head, and Gaul has been delivered. Which of you could ever lose the recollection of that battle of Strasburg, so glorious for the empire, when the multitude of barbarians and their kings, falling under your blows, have stained with their blood your swords, the banks and the waters of the Rhine ? The dismayed Franks have fled before you ; I have given you, as reward for so many achievements, peace at home, security abroad ; you, as the price of my zeal, have raised me to the highest rank. Now, your duty is to defend and uphold your work ; mine to reward your devotion by guarding you against every injustice.

Having past the age, *sortir de* ; they, *on* ; confer on, *donner* ; brought, *conduire* ; property, *bien*, pl. ; guilty of peculation, *concussionnaire* ; laid waste, *ravager* ; barbarians, *barbare* ; failed, *manquer*, ind. 2 ; but, *hors* ; Gaul, *Gaule*, f. ; could, *pouvoir*, cond. 1 ; battle, *journée* ; Strasburg, *Strasbourg* ; when, *où* ; falling, *succombant* ; Rhine, *Rhin*, m. ; Franks, *Franc* ; at home, *au-dedans* ; abroad, *au-dehors* ; highest, *suprême* ; by, *en* ; guarding against, *garantir de*.

Of the Past Anterior, and Pluperfect.

The past anterior is used to express an action past immediately before another, at a time entirely elapsed; as,

As soon as I had dined, I went out. *Dès que j'eus dîné, je sortis.*

The past anterior is generally accompanied by an adverb of time, or a conjunction; such as, *dès que, aussitôt que, lorsque, quand, à peine, après que.*

The pluperfect expresses the completion of an action at the moment another took place; as,

J'avais soupé quand il entra. *I had supped when he came in.*

The pluperfect, like the imperfect, serves to express habitual things, repetition, and description; as,

J'allais à la chasse dès que j'avais déjeuné. *I went out shooting as soon as I had breakfasted.*

It is also generally accompanied by *dès que, aussitôt que, quand, lorsque, à peine.*

EXERCISE.

1. As soon as I was sensible of my error, I was ashamed of my previous ill conduct towards him.
2. As soon as that news had spread, the Romans who had taken refuge at Veii, and all those who had dispersed through the neighbouring villages, assembled, and when they had elected a chief, they marched against the enemy.
3. When I had heard the news of your appointment to the office to which you aspired, I hastened to communicate it to our mutual friends.

1. was sensible of, *reconnaître*; previous ill conduct, *mauvais procédés*; towards him, *à son égard*.

2. had spread, *se répandre*; taken refuge, *se réfugier*, ind. 6; Veii, *Veies*; through, *dans*.

3. appointment, *nomination*; mutual, *commun*.

4. The Daunians, as soon as Adrastus was dead, instead of deploring their defeat, and the loss of their chief, rejoiced in their deliverance, and gave their hands to the allies, in token of peace and reconciliation.

5. Marshal de Villars often said that the two greatest pleasures he had ever felt had been the first prize he had obtained at college, and the first victory he had gained over the enemy.

6. I had only received, like most of the great, an education in which I had imbibed nothing but sentiments of pride and insensibility; that is, they had done everything in their power to stifle in me the happy and benevolent dispositions which I had received from nature.

Of the Future.

The future absolute is used to express that an action will take place at a time which does not yet exist; as,

J'irai demain à la campagne. *I shall go to-morrow into the country.*

The future anterior is used to express that, at a time when a thing will take place, another thing will already have taken place; as,

Quand j'aurai fini, je sortirai. *When I have done I shall go out.*

Remark. — The English often put the verb in the present after *when*; in French the future must always be used when speaking of things to come; as,

Je vous le montrerai, quand j'aurai fini. *I will show it to you when I have done.*

Quand il viendra, faites-le-moi savoir. *When he comes, do let me know.*

4. rejoiced in, *se rejouir de*; gave their hands, *tendre la main*; in token, *en signe*.

5. greatest, *vif*; had felt, subj. 4.

6. imbibed, *puiser*; they, *on*; in their power, *ce qu'on pouvoir*, ind. 6; stifle, *étouffer*; benevolent, *bienfaisant*.

The future is also used after *si*, when it means *whether*, that is, when a doubt is expressed ; as,

Je ne sais si mon père viendra. *I do not know whether my father will come.*

When *si* means *if*, the future must not be used ; as,

Nous irons à la campagne demain, s'il fait beau. *We shall go into the country to-morrow, if it is fine.*

The future is used in such sentences : Do as you please, *Faites comme il vous plaira*, or *comme vous voudrez*.

EXERCISE.

1. I will save my capital, or be buried under its ruins.
2. Thou shalt see thy father, who is not dead ; but, when thou seest him, thou shalt not know him : and, though thou shalt meet him in Ithaca, thou shalt first suffer the severest persecutions of fortune.
3. Generous warrior, alone worthy of commanding so many famous heroes, who owe to your valour and conduct the laurels which they have gathered ; your glory will not end at Hercules' Pillars ; it will resound everywhere, and fill the whole of Asia with the recital of the achievements that have made your arms illustrious.
4. As soon as my education is finished I shall proceed to Italy, to visit the Roman antiquities.
5. When you have read the celebrated discourse of Bossuet on universal history ; and studied in it the causes of the rise and fall of states ; you will be less astonished at the revolutions, more or less sudden, that modern empires have experienced, though they appeared to you in the most flourishing state.

1. I shall be buried, *s'ensevelir*.
2. though thou shalt meet, *ne se réunir à* ; Ithaca, *Ithaque* ; severest, *cruel*.
3. commanding, *commander à* ; conduct, *sagesse* ; Hercules' Pillars, *colonnes d'Hercule* ; made illustrious, *illustrer*.
4. proceed, *aller* ; visit, *voir*.
5. have read, ind. 8 ; and, *et que vous* ; in it, *y* ; rise, *grandeur* ; fall, *chute* ; sudden, *subit* ; (that have experienced the modern empires which, &c.), experienced, *éprouver* ; appeared, subj. 2.

Of the Use of the CONDITIONALS, Present and Past.

The present of the conditional is used to express that a thing would be done, or would happen, on certain conditions ; as,

Je serais content de vous voir unis et heureux. *I should be glad to see you harmonious and happy.*

The past conditional is used to express that a thing would have been done, or would have happened, at a time which no longer exists, dependent on certain conditions ; as,

J'aurais or j'eusse fait votre affaire, si vous m'en aviez or m'en eussiez parlé. *I would have settled your business if you had mentioned it to me.*

The conditional is used, 1. to express a wish ; as,

Que je serais or que j'aurais été content de réussir dans cette affaire ! *How glad I should be or should have been to succeed in that affair.*

2. With *si*, if, whether, expressing a doubt ; as,

Demandez-lui s'il serait venu avec nous, supposé qu'il n'eût pas eu affaire. *Ask him whether he would have come with us had he not been busy.*

3. Before or after the imperfect or pluperfect of the indicative, preceded by *si* ; as,

Nous nous épargnerions bien des peines, si nous savions modérer nos désirs. *We should spare ourselves much pain did we know how to moderate our desires.*

4. With *quand*, used instead of *si*, *quoique*, or *quand même* ; the verb preceded by *quand* is generally in one of the conditionals ; as,

Quand l'avare posséderait tout l'or du monde, il ne serait pas encore content. *Were the miser to possess all the gold in the world, still he would not be satisfied.*

EXERCISE.

1. What would be the felicity of man if he always sought his happiness in himself?
2. We would taste many enjoyments if we knew how to make good use of time.
3. Inquire whether he would have consented to those conditions if he had thought himself able to fulfil them.
4. He would not have published his work had he not thought it might be useful.
5. If your person were as gigantic as your desires, the whole world would not contain you; your right hand would touch the east, and your left the west, at the same time; and, if you were to conquer all mankind, you would attempt to subdue nature.
6. Were that young man to be virtue itself, he would soon be ruined if he continued to live in such bad company.
7. Were you to possess an immense fortune, you could not dispense with being prudent; or you would be exposed to the risk of being ruined sooner or later.
8. Could you ever have thought him capable of deserting the good cause to go and side with rebels?

Remark.—The conditional is often used for various tenses of the indicative; as,

Croiriez-vous votre fils ingrat? which means croyez-vous.
L'auriez-vous soupçonné d'un tel crime? for l'avez-vous, &c.

OF THE IMPERATIVE.

The imperative is used to command, exhort, entreat, or reprove. In many verbs a compound of the imperative may be used to express an injunction to have a thing done previously to another; as,

Have dined before I return. *Ayez dîné avant que je revienne.*

2. taste, *goûter*; enjoyments, *jouissance*.
3. enquire whether, *s'informer si*; had thought himself, *se croire*, ind. 6; able, *capable*.
4. had thought, ind. 6; might be, subj. 2.
5. right, *droit*; east, *orient*; west, *occident*; all mankind, *le monde entier*; attempt, *entreprendre*.
7. when you should possess; sooner or later, (soon or late).
8. deserting, *abandonner*; to go and side with, *pour se ranger sous les drapeaux de*.

EXERCISM.

I only fight to procure victory and peace for the nations whose cause I have espoused; I do not fight for vengeance and blood. Live then, but live to atone for your past faults: restore the dominions you have usurped; restore tranquillity and justice on the coast of great Hesperia, which you have so long polluted by cruelty and perfidy; live, and become another man. Learn, from your defeat, that the Gods are just; that the wicked are miserable; that they mistake in seeking felicity in violence, inhumanity, and deceit; and that, at length, nothing is so sweet and happy as constant virtue and integrity. As a pledge of your sincerity, give us your son, and twelve chiefs of your nation, as hostages.

OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

The subjunctive is the mood of doubt and indecision. It is used,

1. After all verbs expressing wish, command, will, doubt, fear, &c.:

Il veut	} que vous fassiez votre devoir.
Il exige	
Il désire	

2. After a verb used interrogatively or negatively:

Je ne crois pas.	} qu'il vienne.
Croyez-vous	

Exception.—The subjunctive is not used when the interrogation is of an oratorical form, which, far from expressing doubt, serves only to affirm with more force:

————— Madame, oubliez-vous
Que Thésée est mon père, et qu'il est votre époux ?

To procure, *obtenir*; for, *par*; blood, *pour répandre le sang*; atone for, *expier*; restore, *rendre*; dominions, *états*; restore, *rétablir*; Hesperia, *Hespérie*, *f.*; polluted, *souiller*; from, *par*; deceit, *mensonge*; integrity, *justice*; as a, *comme*; pledge, *garant*; as, *pour*.

3. After an impersonal verb, or employed impersonally :

Il semble	} qu'il vienne.
Il convient	
Il faut	
Il est juste	

Exception. — *Il semble*, accompanied by an indirect regimen of person, *il y a*, *il paraît*, *il résulte*, *il est certain*, *il est vrai*, and some other impersonal verbs expressing something positive, require the indicative :

Il me semble	} qu'il a raison.
Il vous paraît	
Il est sûr	
Il résulte	

4. After a pronoun relative or the adverb *où*, when either is preceded by *peu*, *le seul*, *l'unique*, *le premier*, *le dernier*, and a superlative :

Le chien est le seul animal dont la fidélité soit à l'épreuve.	C'est le plus grand éléphant qu'il y ait.
Il y a peu d'hommes qui sachent supporter l'adversité.	C'est le meilleur homme qu'il y ait.
C'est la seule place où vous puissiez aspirer.	

5. After a relative pronoun or the adverb *où*, when the following verb expresses something doubtful, uncertain :

Je cherche quelqu'un qui me rende ce service.	J'irai dans une retraite où je sois tranquille.
---	---

6. After *quelque . . . que*, *quel que*, *quoi que*, *quoi que* :

Quelque riche que vous soyez.	Quoi que vous disiez.
Quels que soient vos talents.	Quoique vous soyez son ami.

7. After certain conjunctions, such as, *afin que*, *à moins que*, *avant que*, *bien que*, *de craint que*, *pour que*, &c.

Remark. — *De façon que, de sorte que, de manière que, si ce n'est que, sinon que,* require sometimes the subjunctive and sometimes the indicative; the subjunctive, when the idea expresses doubt, and future :

Conduisez-vous de manière que vous obteniez l'estime des honnêtes gens.

and the indicative, when it is positive, and refers to the present or past :

Il s'est conduit de manière qu'il a obtenu l'estime des honnêtes gens.

EXERCISE I.

1. I doubt whether he will write to you.
2. It is important that you should be there.
3. Do you know that the queen is going to the opera?
4. Do you think that he is gone to church?
5. Are you not very sorry he has not succeeded?
6. He is the greatest man I know.
7. Tell me of a place where that can be found.
8. Give me the best pen you have.
9. Show me a man who calls himself perfectly happy.
10. Give me your letter that I may send it to the post-office.
11. He says he will not marry until he has a profession.
12. We shall not go into the country, unless he consents to come with us.
13. It does not seem to me that one can think differently.
14. I know nobody who is so unhappy as she.
15. I am delighted that you have made his acquaintance.
16. It is the first time that I have been mistaken.

EXERCISE II.

1. I doubt whether the Romans would ever have triumphed

1. whether, *que*.
7. tell of, *indiquer*.
9. calls himself, *se dire*.
10. post-office, *poste*, *f*.
11. until, *que ne*; profession, *état*.
12. unless, *que ne*.
16. to be mistaken, *se tromper*.

1. would have triumphed over, *triompher de*, subj. 4; Gauls, *Gaulois*.

over the Ganks, if the different chiefs of this warlike people had not been disunited.

2. I fear lest it should be said that you feed on chimeras, and that you take the shadow for the reality.

3. The new philosophers will have colour to be a sensation of the soul.

4. I will have you to be as honest and disinterested as you seem to be.

5. Telemachus is the finest work that virtue has inspired to genius.

6. Although the wicked are sometimes successful, do not believe them to be happy.

7. It seems that time is an enemy against which mankind have conspired.

8. Tell me of a master whose lessons are as profitable as those of experience.

9. However powerful Carthage was, it could not stand against Roman valour.

10. They read to the king the deeds of great men, that he might govern his states according to their maxims.

11. Choose a retreat where you may be quiet, a post whence you may defend yourself.

12. There is not in the heart of man a good impulse that God does not produce.

OF THE USE OF THE TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present or Future, and Past.

1. The subjunctive being always under the dependence of another verb, it is the tense of the preceding verb which determines what tense of the subjunctive is to be used.

2. After the present and future of the indicative,

2. it, *on ne*; feed upon, *se repaître de*.

3. will have, *vouloir*; colour to be, that colour be.

6. are successful, *prosperer*; them to be, that they are.

7. mankind, *hommes*.

8. tell of, *indiquer*.

9. stand against, *résister à*.

10. They, *on*; read, ind. 2.

12. impulse, *mouvement*.

we use the present of the subjunctive to express a present or a future, and the past is used to express a past.

Je doute } que vous veniez.
Je douterai }

Je doute } que vous soyez venus.
Je douterai }

Exception.— After the present and future of the indicative, we use the imperfect of the subjunctive instead of the present, and the pluperfect instead of the past, if the verb in the subjunctive is followed by a conditional expression :

Je doute } que vous étudiassiez maintenant, demain, si l'on ne
Je douterai } vous y contraignait.

Je doute } que vous eussiez étudié hier, si l'on ne vous y eût
Je douterai } contraint.

EXERCISE.

1. We all wish that our officers and soldiers should behave nobly, and perform prodigies of valour, though the enemy are superior in numbers, and have the advantage of the ground.

2. I fear lest you should sacrifice the finest days of your life to a foolish and chimerical happiness.

3. He will wish that the love, which we ought to have for one another, be the principle of all our actions, as it is the basis of all virtues.

4. I doubt whether an honest man will ever consent to a meanness, though they offer him the greatest advantages.

5. Do not seek, to govern you, a man who has conquered others in the exercises either of the mind or of the body, but one who has conquered himself; seek a man who has your laws written upon his heart, and whose life is the practice of those laws: may the gods give you such a king.

1. nobly, *bravement*; perform, *faire*; ground, *terrain*.

2. lest you, *que vous ne*; foolish, *insensé*.

4. though, *quoique*; they, *on*.

5. exercises, *jeux*; conquered himself, *se vaincre*; upon, *dans* may, *pouvoir*.

6. I do not think that the age of Louis the Fourteenth would have become so celebrated had it not been for the eminent writers, who have made it one of the most brilliant periods of our literature.

7. Do you think they would have come, if it had been fine weather?

Imperfect and Pluperfect.

After the imperfect, the pluperfect, the past definite, the past indefinite, and the two conditionals, we use the imperfect of the subjunctive to express a present or future, and the pluperfect to express a past.

Je doutais	}	que vous étudiassiez aujourd'hui, demain.
Je doutai		
J'ai douté		
J'avais douté		
Je douterais		
J'aurais douté	}	que vous eussiez étudié la semaine passée.
Je doutais		
Je doutai		
J'ai douté		
J'avais douté		
Je douterais	}	
J'aurais douté		

Exception. — Instead of the imperfect, we use the present of the subjunctive, when the action of the verb in the subjunctive takes place at the instant we speak: as, *Il m'a trahi, quoiqu'il soit mon ami*, He has betrayed me, though he be my friend; or may be done at all times: as, *Dieu nous a donné la raison afin que nous discernions le bien d'avec le mal*, God has given us reason that we may distinguish good from evil.

6. age, *siècle*; had it not been for, *sans*; eminent, *distingué*; it, *en*.
 7. had been, *faire*.

EXERCISE.

1. The Emperor Caligula wished that all the citizens of Rome had but one neck, that he might behead them all at once.

2. The bark of trees was used to write upon, before paper was known.

3. I did not know that you had studied mathematics.

4. Those who had shown the greatest zeal for the state and for my person, did not think themselves obliged to undeceive me, after so terrible an example. I myself was afraid lest truth should break through the clouds, and reach me, in spite of all my flatterers. I trembled lest it would raise in me bitter remorse.

5. God has surrounded the eyes with very thin tunicks, transparent on the outside, that we may see through them.

6. Do you think that, in forming the republic of bees, God has not had in view to teach kings to govern with mildness, and subjects to obey with love.

7. May he live, reign, and long constitute the happiness of a nation which he loves, and by which he is adored !

8. A man just and firm is not shaken, either by the clamours of an inconsiderate mob, or by the threats of an imperious tyrant ; though the whole world were to fall into ruins, he would be struck by it, but not moved.

Remark. — The subjunctive is elegantly used in elliptical phrases, where the principal proposition is omitted ; as,

Qu'il vive ! (*means* je souhaite qu'il vive).

Qu'il se soit oublié jusqu'à ce point ! (*means* je suis surpris qu'il).

1. but, *ne que*.

2. write upon, *écrire* ; was known, *être en usage*.

4. think themselves, *croire* ; obliged, *devoir*, subj. ; was afraid, *craindre* ; break through, *percer* ; cloud, *nuage* ; reached, *parvenir jusqu'à* ; raised in, *causer à*.

5. surrounded with, *entourer de* ; thin, *mince* ; on the outside, *au dehors* ; through them, *à travers*.

6. had in view, *vouloir*.

7. May he (repeated before every verb) ; constitute, *faire* ; loves, *chérir*.

8. is shaken, *ébranler* ; inconsiderate, *insensée* ; mob, *populace* ; imperious, *fier* ; though the whole world, *le monde entier* ; fall into ruins, *s'écrouler* ; by it, *en*.

SECTION III.

CHAP. VI.

OF THE ADVERB.

1. *DESSUS, dessous, dedans, dehors*, being adverbs, have no regimen. Do not say, *Dessus la terre, dessous le ciel*; say, *Sur la terre, sous le ciel*.

Exception 1.—When they are used in opposition: *Les ennemis sont dedans et dehors de la ville*.

Exception 2.—When they are preceded by a preposition: *Par dessus les murs*; *On a tiré cela de dessous la table*.

2. *Alentour, auparavant, davantage*, have no regimen. Do not say, *Alentour de, auparavant de, auparavant que, davantage de, davantage que*; say, *Autour de, avant de, avant que, plus de, plus que*.

Davantage is not used either instead of *le plus*. Instead of saying, *De toutes les fleurs, la rose est celle qui me plaît davantage*, say, *qui me plaît le plus*.

3. *Plus tôt* refers to time, and is opposed to *plus tard*: *Il partira plus tôt* (Acad.). *Plutôt* denotes an idea of preference:

— *Le travail, aux hommes nécessaire,
Fait leur félicité plutôt que leur misère.*

4. *Si, aussi* are joined to adjectives and adverbs: *Si modeste, aussi éloquent, si modestement, aussi éloquemment*. *Tant, autant* to other expressions: *tant d'éloquence, autant de préjugés, il travaille tant, autant estimé que chéri*.

Remark.—*Si* cannot qualify adverbial expressions. Do not say, *Il était si en peine, si en colère, si à l'aise, il est venu si à propos*: say, *il était si fort en peine, si fort en colère, si bien à son aise; il est venu si bien à propos*.

Aussi, autant express comparison: *César était aussi éloquent que brave, on l'admirait autant qu'on le craignait*: *si, tant* denote extension: *Il est si faible, il a tant fatigué.*

5. *De suite*, successively, without interruption: *Il ne saurait dire deux mots de suite. Tout de suite*, immediately: *Il faut que les enfants obéissent tout de suite.*

6. *Tout-à-coup*, suddenly: *Cette maison est tombée tout-à-coup. Tout d'un coup*, all at once: *Il gagna mille écus tout d'un coup.*

Use of the Negation.

The negation is composed of *ne, ne pas, ne point*: *Je n'ose, je n'ose pas, je n'ose point.* *Ne* is the weakest of the negations; *ne point* is the strongest; *ne pas* holds the middle course.

The conjunctive expressions, *à moins que, de peur que, de crainte que*, and the verb *empêcher*, always require the negative *ne* after them: *À moins que vous ne lui parliez, de peur qu'on ne vous trompe.*

La pluie empêchât qu'on ne se promenât dans les jardins. Les fautes d'Homère n'ont pas empêché qu'il ne fût sublime.

The negation *ne* is used also after *autre, autrement, plus, mieux, moins*, and the verbs *craindre, avoir peur, trembler, appréhender*: *Il est tout autre qu'il n'était; il parle autrement qu'il n'agit; il est plus modeste qu'il ne le paraît; je crains qu'il ne vienne.*

Exception.—The use of *ne* ceases when the verb of the preceding proposition is accompanied by a negative: *Il ne parle pas autrement qu'il agit; il n'est pas plus modeste qu'il le paraît; je ne crains pas qu'il vienne.*

Remark.—After *craindre*, *appréhender*, *avoir peur*, *trembler*, we use *ne pas* instead of *ne*, when we wish the success of the action expressed by the second verb: *Je crains qu'il ne réussisse pas*.

Nier, *désespérer*, *disconvenir*, *douter*, are followed by *ne*, only when they are accompanied by a negation: *Je ne nie pas*, *je ne doute pas que cela ne soit*; but we say, without negation: *Je nie*, *je doute que cela soit*, because *nier* and *douter* are employed affirmatively.

The conjunctive expressions, *avant que*, *sans que*, and the verb *défendre*, are never followed by *ne*: *Avant qu'il fasse froid*; *j'ai défendu que vous fissiez cette chose*.

Pas and *point* are suppressed when there is in the proposition an expression, the meaning of which is negative: as, *Jamais*, *guère*, *nul*, *nullement*, *aucun*, *rien*, *personne*, *ni* repeated, *ne . . . que*, signifying *seulement*:

Un méchant ne sait jamais pardonner.

Ne dites rien qui attaque la réputation d'un homme de bien.

Je ne vois personne qui ne vous loue.

Il n'a ni talent ni bonne volonté.

L'honnête homme ne connaît que ses devoirs.

CHAP. VII.

OF THE PREPOSITION.

Au travers requires *de*, *à travers* requires a direct regimen: *au travers d'un buisson*; *à travers les champs*.

Près de denotes an idea of proximity; *auprès de*,

an idea of assiduity, of sentiment: *Il demeure près de l'église ; cet enfant n'est heureux qu'auprès de sa mère.*

Vis-à-vis is only used for an opposition of place, and means opposite to: *Il loge vis-à-vis de mes fenêtres.*

Vis-à-vis, *en face*, *proche*, *près*, *hors*, require the preposition *de* after them: *vis-à-vis de l'île de Ténédos ; près du mont Athos ; hors des rangs ennemis*, &c., except in conversation, and in the very familiar style: *Il loge près l'arsenal, vis-à-vis la nouvelle rue.*

Entre is used in speaking of two objects: *entre Rome et Carthage.* *Parmi* is said of a greater number of objects, and requires a plural after it: *parmi les hommes ;* or a collective: *parmi la foule.*

Voici refers to what follows, and *voilà* to what precedes:

Voici trois médecins qui ne se trompent pas,
Gaité, doux exercice, et modeste repas.

La droiture du cœur, la vérité, l'innocence, l'empire sur les passions, voilà la véritable grandeur.

Of the Repetition of Prepositions.

A, *de*, *en*, are always repeated before each regimen.

Il dut la vie à la clemence et On trouve les mêmes préjugés
à la magnanimité du vainqueur. en Europe, en Asie, en Afrique,

Il est doux de servir sa patrie, et jusqu'en Amérique.
et de contribuer à sa gloire.

The other prepositions, especially those which have only one syllable, are repeated when the regimens offer no resemblance in the signification: *Dans la paix et dans la guerre ; par la force et par l'adresse ; avec courage et avec inhumanité.* On the contrary, they are not repeated when the regimens are synonymous expressions: *Dans la mollesse et*

l'oisiveté ; par la force et la violence ; avec courage et intrépidité ; à travers les dangers et les obstacles.

CHAP. VIII

OF THE CONJUNCTION.

Et adds to the thought affirmatively ; *ni* adds to it negatively.

Hence it follows that *et* is used :

1. To unite incidental propositions dependent on a principal affirmative ; as,

Il croit que la terre est une planète, et qu'elle tourne autour du soleil.

2. To unite the similar parts of an affirmative proposition :

Il cultive les lettres et les sciences. Il agit lentement et prudemment.

Cet enfant est instruit et modeste.

That *ni* is used :

1. To unite incidental propositions dependent on a principal one negative ; as,

Il ne croit pas que la terre soit une planète, ni qu'elle tourne autour du soleil.

2. To unite the similar parts of a negative proposition :

Il ne cultive pas les lettres, ni les sciences. Il n'agit pas lentement ni prudemment.

Cet enfant n'est pas instruit, ni modeste.

Remark. — It is more elegant to suppress *pas* and *point*, and to repeat *ni* :

Il ne cultive ni les lettres, ni les sciences. Il n'agit ni lentement ni prudemment.

Et precedes *sans* ; *ni* supplies its place :

Sans joie et sans murmure, Sans crainte, ni pudeur ; sans
elle semble obéir. force, ni vertu.

Parce que (in two words) means *attendu que* :

Parce qu'elle meurt, faut-il que vous mouriez ?

Par ce que (in three words) means *par la chose que*, or *par les choses que* :

Par ce qu'on voit tous les jours, il est facile de comprendre combien le mauvais exemple est pernicieux.

Quoique (one word) means *bien que*, although :

Quoique vous soyez instruit, soyez modeste.

Quoi que (two words) means *quelque chose que*, whatever thing :

Quoi que vous lui disiez, il ne vous écoutera pas.

Quand, conjunction, means *lorsque*, when, à *quelle époque* ?

Venez quand vous aurez fini. Quand partez-vous ?

Quant, preposition, means *à l'égard de*, with respect to : it is always followed by the preposition *à* :

Quant à cet affaire, je m'en inquiète peu.

A cause que, *devant que*, *durant que*, *malgré que*, are almost obsolete. *A cause que* is superseded by *parce que*, *devant que* by *avant que*, *durant que* by *pendant que*, and *malgré que* by *quoique*.

The conjunction *que* is used in several ways :

1. To join two verbs together ; as,

Je crois que l'âme est immortelle.

2. To unite the two terms of a comparison ; as,

Démosthène était plus éloquent que brave.

3. To form, with the assistance of the preposition *de*, certain expressions only adapted to our language, and in consequence called gallicisms.

C'est peu que de posséder des richesses.
C'est un devoir que d'obliger ses amis.
C'est être sage que de se défier des méchants.
Quel plaisir que de revoir sa patrie !
Il ne laisse pas que d'être généreux.

Remark. — Custom allows in that case to suppress the conjunction *que*, and to say, *C'est peu de posséder des richesses ; c'est un devoir d'obliger ses amis, &c.*

4. To avoid the repetition of certain conjunctions, such as, *quand, lorsque, si, quoique, comme, &c.* : *Quand on est riche, et qu'on est généreux, on ne manque pas d'amis ; Si vous avez des amis, et que vous désiriez les conserver, prouvez-leur votre estime.* In the first example, *que* supplies the place of *quand* ; and in the second, it is used instead of *si*.

CHAP. IX.

OF THE INTERJECTION.

1. *AH!* expresses joy, pain: *Ah! quel bonheur! ah! que je souffre!* *Ha!* marks surprise: *Ha! vous voilà! Ha! ha! je n'en savais rien.*

2. *Oh!* expresses surprise or affirmation: *Oh! oh! je croyais le contraire; Oh! pour le coup je vous tiens!*

Ho! is used to call: *Ho! venez ici.* It also marks surprise: *Ho! que faites-vous là?*

O is applied to oratorical apostrophe: *O mon fils! adorez Dieu, et ne cherchez pas à le comprendre; O suprême plaisir de pratiquer la vertu!*

3. *Eh!* expresses grief, complaint, pity: *Eh! qui n'a pas pleuré quelque perte cruelle?*

4. *Hé!* is used to call, to warn: *Hé! venez donc; Hé! que dites-vous?*

FREE EXERCISES.

I.

Servilius, accused of having lost some Troops in the Pursuit 1 of the Enemy after his Victory, defends himself before the People.

"If you have called 2 me here to render an account of what took place 3 in the last battle in which I commanded, I am ready to inform 4 you of it; but if it be only a pretence to destroy 5 me, as I suspect, spare me useless words: here are my body and my life which I give up to you, you may dispose of them."

Some of the most moderate from among 6 the people having called 7 out to him to take 8 courage, to continue his defence:

"Since I have to deal 9 with judges, and not with enemies," added he, "I will tell you, Romans, that I was 10 made Consul with Virginius at a time when the enemy was master of the country, and when dissension and famine were in the city. It is at such an unfortunate conjuncture that I was called to the government of the state. I marched against 11 the enemy, whom I defeated in two battles, and whom I compelled to shut himself up in his stronghold; and, whilst he kept himself there in some measure concealed by the terror of your arms, I laid waste 12 his territory; I drew from it a prodigious quantity of corn, which I caused to be brought 13 to Rome, where I have restored abundance.

"What fault have I committed thus far? Will you 14 consider me criminal in having gained two victories? But I have, it is said, lost many men in the last action. Is it then possible 15 to give battle to a warlike nation, that defends itself nobly, without blood being shed 16 on both sides?

1. In the pursuit, *en poursuivant*. 2. you, *on*; have called, *faire venir*. 3. took place, *se passer*, ind. 4. 4. inform, *instruire*. 5. destroy, *faire périr*. 6. from among, *d'entre*. 7. called, *crier*. 8. to take, to continue, subj. 2. 9. to deal, *avoir affaire à*. 10. was, ind. 4. 11. marched against, *marcher à*. 12. laid waste, *ravager*. 13. to be brought, inf. active. 14. you, *on*. 15. Is it possible, *pouvoir*. 16. Being shed, inf. active. 17. pledged to, *s'engager envers*.

"What divinity has pledged¹⁷ itself to the Roman people, to enable them to obtain victories without loss? Are you ignorant that glory is only acquired through¹⁸ great perils? I have fought with troops more numerous than those you have entrusted to me: after an obstinate struggle however¹⁹ I have broken through them: I have routed their legions, which, at length, have taken to flight. Could I refuse²⁰ victory, marching²¹ before us? Was it even in my power to restrain your soldiers, carried away by their courage, and who pursued²² with ardour a panic-stricken²³ enemy? Had I ordered the retreat to be sounded, had I brought back our soldiers to their camp, would not your tribunes accuse me to-day of being in correspondence²⁴ with the enemy? If your enemies have rallied, if they have been supported by a body of troops advancing to their assistance; in short, if it has been necessary to renew the battle; and if, in that last engagement, I have lost some men, is it not the common fate of war? Will you find generals willing²⁵ to undertake the command of your armies, on condition of bringing back to Rome all the soldiers who might have left it²⁶ under their conduct? Do not examine, therefore, if at the end of the battle I have lost some soldiers, but judge²⁷ my conduct by my victory. If it is true that I have driven the enemy from your territories, that I have killed many²⁸ of their men, that I have forced the wrecks of their armies to shut themselves up in their fortresses, that I have enriched Rome and your soldiers with the booty which they have collected in the enemy's country; let your tribunes rise, and reproach me where I have failed in²⁹ the duties of a good general.

"But this is not what I fear: these accusations only serve as a pretence to be able to exercise with impunity their hatred and animosity against the Senate and against the Order of the Patricians. My real crime, as well as that of the illustrious Menenius, is in not having³⁰ appointed, during our consulships, both³¹ those decemvirs whom you have been wishing³² for so long. But could we do so in the agitation and tumult of arms, whilst the enemy was at our gates, and division in the city? And, had we been able to do it, know, Romans, that Servilius would never have sanctioned a law which cannot be put in³³ force without bringing on an infinity of lawsuits, and without ruining the first families of the republic, which are the firmest supports of it.

18. through, *par*. 19. I have, however, broken through, *ne pas laisser d'enforcer*. 20. refuse me, *refuser à*. 21. marching, *ind.* 2. 22. pursued, *ind.* 2. 23. panic-stricken, *effrayé*. 24. to be in correspondence, *être d'intelligence*. 25. willing, *vouloir*, subj. 1. 26. left it, *en sortir*, cond. 2. 27. judge, *juger de*. 28. many men, *beaucoup de monde*. 29. failed in, *manquer à*. 30. in not having, *de n'avoir pas*. 31. both, *l'un et l'autre*. 32. you have been wishing for,

"Must you never demand anything of the Senate that is not³⁴ prejudicial to the general welfare of the country, and demand³⁵ it with sedition? If a senator dares to represent to you the injustice of your pretensions; if a consul does not use³⁶ the seditious language of your tribunes; if he defends with courage the sovereign power with which he is invested, they cry out³⁷ 'tyrant.' Hardly has he left office³⁸ when he is overwhelmed with accusations. It is thus that by our unjust *plebiscitum*³⁹ you have taken away⁴⁰ the life of Menenius, as great a captain, as good a citizen. Ought you not to die with shame for⁴¹ having so cruelly persecuted the son of that Menenius Agrippa, to whom you are indebted for your tribunes, and that power which makes you now so furious?

"You will think, perhaps, that I am speaking to you with too much freedom in the present condition of my fortunes; but I do not fear death: condemn me if you dare; life can be but a burden⁴² to a general who is reduced to justify himself for his victories: after all, a fate similar to that of Menenius cannot dishonour me."

VERTOT.

II.

Madame de Maintenon to her Niece.

I LOVE you too well¹, my dear niece, not to tell you the truth; I do not fail to speak² it to the young ladies of St. Cyr, and how could I neglect you, whom³ I consider as my own daughter? I know not if it is you who inspire⁴ them with the pride which they show, or if it is they who communicate⁵ to you what people⁶ admire in you. However this may be, you will be insupportable if you do not become humble. The tone of authority which you affect does not become you.

Do you fancy yourself an important person⁷, because you are educated⁸ in a house where the King goes every day? On the morrow of his death, neither his successor, nor all those who flatter you,

soupirer après. 33. put in force, *observer.* 34. that is not, *qui ne soit.* 35. *ne demander*, subj. 1 with *par.* 36. use, *parler.* 37. they cry out, *on crie au.* 38. left office, *sortir de charge.* 39. *plebiscitum*, *plébes cité.* 40. taken away, *ôter à.* 41. for having, *d'avoir.* 42. be a burden, *être à charge.*

1. too well, *trop.* 2. I do not fail to speak it, *dire bien.* 3. whom, *vous que.* 4. inspire with, *inspirer.* 5. communicate, *donner.* 6. people, *on.* 7. person, *personnage*, m. 8. educated, *nourri.* 9. will

will care 9 for you, or St. Cyr. If the King dies before you are married, you will marry a country 10 gentleman with little property and a great deal of pride. If, during my life, you marry a nobleman, he will esteem you, when I am no more 11, only as long as you will please him: and you will please him only by gentleness, of which you have none. I am not prejudiced against you; but I see in you odious pride. You know the Gospel by heart; of what use is it 12, if you do not behave according to its precepts?

Reflect that it is only your aunt's fortune that has made your father's, and which will make yours, and care not 13 for the respects paid to you. You wish to raise yourself above me; do not flatter yourself; I am not much 14, and you are nothing.

I address 15 you as a reasonable girl, because you have the sense 16 of one. I would willingly consent to your having less 17, provided you lost that self-conceit 18, ridiculous in the eyes 19 of men, and criminal in the eyes of God. May I 20 find you, on my return, modest, gentle, timid, docile; I shall love you the more. You know how it grieves me to chide you, and how happy I feel 21 in procuring you pleasure.

III.

Charles XII.

LET us pause 1 a moment before Charles XII.; as people 2 stop before those pyramids of the desert, of which the astonished eye contemplates the enormous proportions, before reason inquires into 3 their utility. We 4 admire, in this extraordinary man, such a rare alliance of private virtues and heroic qualities, even with that exaggeration, which has made 5 this prince the phenomenon of civilised ages. We admire that profound disdain of pleasures 6 and of life; that insatiable thirst 7 for glory; that extreme simplicity of manners; that astonishing intrepidity; his familiarity and kindness

care, *regarder*. 10. country, *de province*. 11. I am no more, *n'être plus*, ind. 7. 12. of what use is it, *importer*, ind. 1. 13. Care not, *se moquer de*. 14. I am not much, *être très peu de chose*. 15. I address, *parler*. 16. sense, *en avoir l'esprit*. 17. to your having less (that you should have), subj. 2. 18. self-conceit, *présomption*, f. 19. in the eyes, *devant*. 20. May I, *que je*. 21. I feel, *avoir*; in procuring you pleasure, *de vous faire plaisir*.

1. pause, *s'arrêter*. 2. people, *on*. 3. inquires into, *se demander*. 4. We, *on*. 5. made, *faire de*. 6. pleasures, *volupté*. 7. thirst for,

towards his subjects 8; his severity towards himself; his fabulous expeditions, undertaken with so much daring; that defeat of Polkova borne with so much fortitude; that captivity of Bender, where he showed so much haughtiness; and that king who commands respect to barbarians, when they have nothing more 9 to fear from him; love to his subjects, when they can no longer expect anything from him; and, although absent, obedience in those very states, where his successors present have not always been able to obtain it; and at the sight of that unique combination of qualities and events, one is tempted to apply to that prince the words of father Daniel, speaking of St. Louis; "one of the greatest and most singular men that ever lived."

D. BOWALD.

IV.

Henry IV. of France to the Assembly of Notables.

If I gloried 1 in passing for an excellent orator, I should have brought here more fine words than good will; but my ambition aims at something higher than speaking well. I aspire to the glorious title of the deliverer and restorer of France. Already, by the favour of Heaven, by the advice of my faithful servants, and by the sword of my brave and generous nobility, I have rescued 2 her from slavery and ruin. I now desire to reinstate her in her former force, and in her ancient splendour. Share, dear subjects, in this second glory, as you have shared in the first. I have not called you together, as my predecessors did, to oblige you to approve blindly of my wishes; I have summoned you to receive your advice 3, to listen to it, to follow it; in a word, to refer entirely to you, — a desire 4 which seldom seizes upon kings, grey-headed 5 and victorious like myself; but the love I bear my subjects, and the ardent 6 desire of preserving my states, make me find everything easy and honourable.

soif de. 8. his subjects, *les siens*. 9. have nothing more, *ne avoir plus rien*.

1. gloried, *faire gloire*. 2. rescued, *tirer*. 3. advice, *avis*, pl. 4. a desire which seizes upon, *envie qui prend à*. 5. grey-headed, *à barbes grises*. 6. ardent, *extrême*.

V.

Marcus Aurelius' Dream.

I WANTED 1 to meditate on pain 2; the night was already advanced; the want of sleep weighed on 3 my eyelids; I struggled for a while; at length I was obliged to yield, and I fell asleep; but in that interval I thought I had 4 a dream. It seemed to me that I saw 5 in a vast portico a multitude of men collected together; all had something majestic and noble. 6 Although I had never lived with them, their features were not unknown 7 to me; I thought I could recollect 8 that I had often contemplated their statues in Rome. I was looking on them all, when a loud and sonorous 9 voice resounded under the portico: "Mortals learn to suffer!" At the same instant, before one of them I saw a fire kindled 10, and he laid his hand on it. Poison was brought 11 to another; he drank, and offered up 12 a libation to the Gods. The third was standing 13 near a broken 14 statue of Liberty; he held a book in one hand; with the other he took a sword, the point of which he examined. Farther, I perceived a man all bloody, but calm and more unconcerned 15 than his tormentors; I ran to him, exclaiming: "O Regulus! is it thou?" I could not bear the sight of sufferings 16, and I turned my eyes away. Then I saw Fabricius in poverty; Scipio dying in exile, Epictetus 17 writhing in chains, Seneca and Thraseas with their veins opened, and composedly 18 watching their blood flow. Surrounded by all those unfortunate great men, I was shedding tears; they appeared astonished. One of them, it was Cato, approached me, and said; "Do not pity us, but imitate us; and thou also, learn to conquer pain!" However, he appeared to me ready to turn on himself the sword which he held in his hand; I wished to stop him; I shuddered, and awoke. I reflected on this dream, and conceived that these imaginary evils ought not to shake 19 my courage; I resolved to be a man, to suffer, and to do good.

1. wanted, *vouloir*. 2. pain, *douleur*. 3. weighed on, *fatiguer*. 4. I had, *inf. 1.* 5. that I saw, *inf. 1.* 6. noble, *grand*. 7. unknown, *étranger*. 8. I could recollect, *me rappeler*. 9. sonorous, *terrible*. 10. fire kindled, *s'allumer des flammes*. 11. was brought, by the active with *on*. 12. offered up, *faire*. 13. standing, *debout*. 14. broken, *brisé*. 15. unconcerned, *tranquille*. 16. sufferings, *mal*. 17. Epictetus, *Epictète*; Seneca, *Sénèque*. 18. composedly, *d'un œil tranquille*. 19. shake, *ébranler*.

VI.

A Scotch 1 Sergeant to the American Indians, whose Prisoner he is, to escape the Tortures of Death.

"HEROES and patriarchs of the western world, you were not the enemies I was seeking; but at last you have conquered. The fate of war has placed me in your hands. Use at your pleasure the right of victory. I do not dispute it. But, since it is a custom of my country to offer a ransom for one's life, listen to a proposal which is not to be rejected. 2 Know then, brave Americans, that, in the country where I was born, some men have supernatural knowledge. One of these sages, who was connected with me by blood, gave me, when I became 3 a soldier, a spell which was to make me invulnerable. You have seen how I escaped all your darts; without that spell, could I have survived all the mortal blows with which you have assailed me? For, I appeal 4 to your valour, mine has neither sought rest nor shunned peril. It is not so much 5 my life that I solicit to-day, as the glory of revealing to you a secret, important to your own preservation, and to make invincible the most valiant people in the world. Leave me only one hand free, for the ceremonies of the enchantment of which I wish to make the trial in your presence."

The Indians listened with eagerness to this speech, which at once flattered their warlike inclination and their love of wonders. After a short deliberation, they untied one of the prisoner's arms. The Scotchman begged them to give his sword to the most skilful, the most vigorous, of them; and, baring his neck, after having rubbed it, in muttering 6 few words with magic signs, he cried out in a loud voice, and with a cheerful countenance, "See now, wise Indians, an incontestible proof of my sincerity. 7 You, warrior, who hold my edged 8 weapon, strike with all your might: far from severing my head from the body, you will not even cut 9 the skin of my neck." He had hardly said 10 these words, when the Indian, striking 11 a tremendous blow, sent 12 the sergeant's head twenty yards 13 off. The astonished savages stood motionless, gazing at the bleeding body of the foreigner, then looked at each other, as if in reproach for their stupid credulity. However, admiring the artifice resorted to 14 by the prisoner, in order to escape torture by shortening his death, they paid 15 his body the funeral rites of their country.

1. Scotch, *écossais*. 2. to be rejected, *à*, with the inf. 3. I became, *se faire*. 4. I appeal, *en appeler*. 5. not so much as, *moins que*. 6. muttering, *balbutiant*. 7. sincerity, *bonne foi*. 8. edged, *tranchant*. 9. cut, *entamer*. 10. said, *prononcer*. 11. striking, *décharger*. 12. sent off, *fit voler*. 13. yards, *pas*. 14. resorted to, *employé*. 15. paid, *accorder*.

VII.

An Anecdote on Duelling.

Two Swedish 1 officers, distinguished for their long services, and who had risen 2 to considerable eminence in the army, had had a quarrel 3 upon some trivial subject, which, after many angry expressions 4, terminated 5 in direct personal insult, and a mutual challenge. As they were well aware 6 of the consequence of attempting to gratify their hostility by the violation of an express law against duelling, they adopted the somewhat bold expedient of petitioning the king to abrogate in their favour his prohibition of the only method of settling the dispute, by which both considered the wound inflicted upon 8 their honour might be redressed. 9 Gustavus, dissembling his indignation at such a request, and apparently moved by the earnestness of their representations, pretended a willingness 10 to gratify their wishes, stipulating at the same time that he himself should be present, as an eye-witness 11 to the fair termination of the quarrel. At the appointed hour, the parties 12, suitably armed and attended, presented themselves at the place assigned for their meeting 13, and were soon sensible 14 of the approach of the king, who advanced at the head of a body of infantry, which he immediately formed in a circle round the spot. 15

After the necessary preparations had been made, and the two combatants were confronting 16 each other with their swords drawn, their attention was diverted for a moment by the appearance of a sinister-looking 17 personage, who, with a heavy sabre in his hand, walked into the ring 18, and seemed ready to take an active part in the proceedings. 19 "Do not be surprised, gentlemen," said the king; "in consequence of the offence to which you have endeavoured to make me a party 20, by the laws of our country, your lives are forfeited. 21 You will therefore understand 22, that the instant either of you falls by the sword of his adver-

1. Swedish, *suédois*. 2. risen, *obtenir*. 3. had a quarrel upon some trivial subject, *se quereller pour quelque bagatelle*. 4. angry expressions, *propos injurieux*. 5. terminated in, *finir par*. 6. were aware, *savoir*. 7. somewhat, *un peu*. 8. inflicted upon, *faire à*. 9. might be redressed, *pouvoir le réparer*. 10. a willingness, *vouloir*. 11. an eye-witness to, *témoin oculaire de*. 12. parties, *champion*. 13. for their meeting, *comme rendez-vous*. 14. were sensible, *s'apercevoir*. 15. spot, *terrain*. 16. were confronting each other, *être en présence*. 17. sinister-looking, *au regard sinistre*. 18. walked into the ring, *entrer dans le cercle*. 19. proceedings, *affaire*, sing. 20. a party, *complice*. 21. your lives are forfeited, *encourir la peine de mort*. 22. understand, *savoir*. 23. struck with shame, *rempli de*

sary, the executioner, whom you perceive yonder, has orders to strike off the head of the survivor." It is recorded that the subjects of this address immediately threw themselves at the feet of Gustavus, and, struck 23 with shame at their past conduct, entreated 24 his forgiveness; which was granted, on condition of their reconciliation and solemn engagement to refrain from all similar acts for the future. The king took advantage of this opportunity to declare publicly that he would on no other occasion relax the severity of the edict against contests 25 of this description. "It is my wish," he said, "to have soldiers under my command, and not gladiators. If any man is desirous of freeing 26 his character from the imputation of cowardice in the eyes of his fellow-countrymen 27, let him do so at the expense of the common enemy."

VIII.

Gustavus Adolphus to the Chancellor Oxenstiern.

"To our trusty and well-beloved Chancellor, grace and especial favour.

"I have received your communication with respect to the operations of the war for the ensuing year, as a proof of your continued fidelity towards myself and our common country. Whoever survives 1 will see its results in our increased success, and posterity will celebrate your praises, if, to the wisdom of your counsels, you add your ordinary zeal and application in carrying them into effect. 2 It were greatly to be desired 3, that we had about us many endued 4 with the same fidelity and ability for business as yourself. The prosperity of the state and the advancement of the national interests would be the certain consequences. But, partly from the unequal manner in which the Almighty is pleased 5 to distribute his gifts, and partly in consequence of those defects to which all men are subject, as the natural effects of a sinful nature, I observe so many essential deficiencies in several of my ministers, in the management of public affairs, that I have reason to despair of their favourable issue; unless, indeed, God assists us where human succour is not to

honte. 24. entreated, *implorer.* 25. contests, *combat.* 26. freeing, *laver.* 27. fellow-countrymen, *concitoyen.*

1. whoever survives, *qui vivra.* 2. in carrying them into effect, *à les exécuter.* 3. it were greatly to be desired, *il serait bien à désirer que.* 4. endued with, *doué de.* 5. the Almighty is pleased,

be expected. 6 Continue your praiseworthy exertions, without suffering yourself to grow weary 7 in your efforts, to deserve my gratitude and that of the nation generally. Above all, endeavour to complete your proposal respecting the traffic in corn, for I have more confidence in your judgment in this matter than in that of any one else. I had abandoned all expectations of deriving any advantage from this source, not because 8 I was insensible to the benefit which might be expected from it, but because I knew no one who, after securing the grain to himself, would leave me more than the husks. 9 Now, however, that you have expressed an inclination to take upon yourself the management of this affair, I am not only rejoiced at your determination, but confident that I shall find in you an able assistant, to aid me thus far 10 in sustaining the weight of government, by which I am already too much oppressed.

"If it be God's will that we should pass the winter prosperously, I flatter myself that, with your efficient support, the summer will terminate in a manner still more to our advantage. I beseech that Almighty Being who has hitherto granted us success, although attended with much trouble and difficulty, to cause our just undertaking to triumph, and to crown it with success, to the glory of His holy name, the repose of His church, and the furtherance of our own salvation.

"I would describe to you our condition at length 11, but my hand is yet stiff with the wound received near Dirschau. Of this much 12, however, I must inform you, that the enemy, although weak both in cavalry and infantry, has a great advantage over us, since the whole of Germany is before him, to plunder as he pleases. I am assembling my forces close to the river, with the intention of attacking him speedily, and driving him from his winter quarters. Yet, although our cause is good and just, the issue of the war, in consequence of our sins, is still uncertain. It is impossible to reckon upon the continuance of the life of any man, and for this reason I now exhort you, by the love of Christ, if any untoward accident should happen to myself, not to feel disheartened on that account. 13 I conjure you, also, in such a case, to show your regard to my memory, by consulting the interests of my family, and by doing for me all which it might be your desire 14 that I should do for you, under similar circumstances; which I will assuredly perform, if it be the pleasure of God that I survive you, and that those you leave behind should stand in need 15 of my assistance.

il plaît au. 6. is not to be expected, *on ne peut attendre.* 7. without suffering yourself to grow weary, *sans vous laisser fatiguer.* 8. not because, *non parceque.* 9. the husks, *la balle.* 10. thus far, *jusqu'ici.* 11. at length, *au long.* 12. of this much I must inform you, (I must, however, inform you of this). 13. not to feel disheartened on that account, *de ne pas vous décourager pour cette raison.* 14. it might be your desire, *vous pourriez désirer.* 15. stand in need,

"I reflect at this moment, that I have already sustained the labour of government for the space of twenty years, not without many anxieties, but still, God be praised, with some reputation; cherishing and honouring the constitution, as well as all those who faithfully obey it; and having for their sakes 16 hazarded my life, and sacrificed my possessions and ease, seeking nothing in this world but to fulfil properly the duties of my station, and of that condition to which God was pleased that 17 I should be born. If that fate, which is the common lot and portion of humanity, should now be near at hand, my family are well worthy of your compassion, not only for my sake, but on every other consideration. Remember of whom it principally consists — an aged mother without a counsellor, a daughter yet in infancy; both of a sex which demands protection; unfortunate if they govern themselves, and in peril if governed by others. The affection natural to a husband and a father induces me to communicate to you freely my sentiments upon this subject — to you, whom I consider an instrument granted by God not only to sustain the burden of public business, but also to meet any emergency 18 which may take place, and of all the concerns of this world, to regulate those nearest my heart. 19 All those, however, I am ready to submit to His holy will, as well as my own life and everything I possess as the fruit of His goodness; hoping for the best in this stage of existence 20, and in the next 21 for repose, joy, and eternal salvation; and I beseech Him to grant that you may also experience the same at His own appointed 22 time. I remain 23, and shall ever remain during life, your very gracious and affectionate,

GUSTAVUS ADOLPHUS.

Golnow, 4th December, 1630.

IX.

Gustavus Adolphus to his Officers.

"THE death of my cousin, the Margrave of Baden-Durtach, — a prince the more 1 worthy of our regret as he was endued with every civil and Christian virtue, — and the danger to which I have been

avoir besoin. 16. for their sakes, *pour l'amour d'eux.* 17. God was pleased that, *il a plu à Dieu que.* 18. to meet any emergency, *faire face à tout événement.* 19. nearest my heart, *être le plus cher,* or *avoir le plus à cœur.* 20. in this stage of existence, *dans ce monde.* 21. the next, *l'autre.* 22. appointed, *marqué.* 23. remain *être.*

1. the more . . . as, *d'autant plus . . . que.* 2. reeking, *fumer.*

exposed from yonder ball, which is still almost reeking 2 before my eyes, have reminded me afresh of the important truth that I am mortal, and subject to the same casualties 3 as the lowest in rank 4 among my soldiers. Such is the ancient law of Nature, from which neither my high birth, nor my royal dignity, nor my victories can afford me any means of escape. For this reason it becomes me to be prepared for every event, and to resign myself entirely to Divine Providence. But imagine not for an instant that, if it be the will of that Providence to summon 5 me from this world, it will in consequence abandon 6 the just cause which I am armed to maintain, nor the re-establishment of the ancient liberties of Germany. God will raise up some other defender, who will acquit himself of the task far better than I have done. I am not ignorant that my success has excited the envy of many, who endeavour to persuade the credulous that I am only seeking to enrich and aggrandise myself. But both the princes whom I have re-established, and my creditors, of whom there are many in Frankfort-on-the-Maine 7, can witness 8 whether my wealth has been increased by the spoils of Germany, as my adversaries wish it to be believed. 9 If I have left my kingdom and all I hold dearest 10 in the world, it has been with no other view than to oppose 11 the tyranny of the House of Austria 12 and to bring about 13 a secure and honourable peace. For the rest, I have received thirteen wounds, some of which were considered mortal. They have indeed been cured, but they continue to remind me of my liability 14 to death, and the peril of to-day has impressed 15 it still more powerfully upon my mind.

X.

Anecdote of the Earl of Marlborough.

A CURIOUS adventure once befell 1 the Earl of Marlborough. On the evening on which the army separated, thinking it the easiest, quickest, and even safest way, Marlborough embarked, with the

3. casualties, *accidents*. 4. lowest in rank among, *le dernier de*. 5. to summon from, *de rappeler*. 6. It will abandon, subj. 1. 7. Frankfort-on-the-Maine, *Frankfort-sur-le-Mein*. 8. witness, *attester*. 9. wish it to be believed, *vouloir faire croire*. 10. I hold dearest, *avoir de plus cher*. 11. to oppose, *résister à*. 12. Austria, *Autriche*. 13. to bring about, *obtenir*. 14. my liability, *que je suis sujet*. 15. impressed upon, *graver dans*.

1. befell, *arriver à*. 2. Meuse, *f.* 3. the Hague, *la Haye*.

Dutch deputies, in a boat, with a view of descending the Meuse 2 for the Hague. 3 He had a detachment of twenty-five soldiers, commanded by a lieutenant, in the boat with him. He was joined the following day by Cohorn, at Ruremond 4, in a larger boat with sixty men, and an additional escort of fifty troopers 5 attended them along the banks of the river. Having dined at this place with the Prince of Holstein Beck, governor of the town, they continued their way 6 down the Meuse; but, in the night, the troopers having lost their way, the larger boat went on without attending 7 to its companion; and Marlborough was left with only his slender 8 guard of twenty-five men. The French had the town of Guelders still in their hands. It so happened that a party of five-and-thirty men from that town were lurking 9 among the reeds and sedges of the river, about nine miles below 10 Venloo, waiting for an adventure. Most of the company on board Marlborough's boat were asleep; when, between eleven and twelve o'clock, those who were awake felt the tow-rope 11 seized, and soon after heard a discharge of fire-arms; several soldiers were wounded, but Marlborough fortunately escaped unhurt. 12 The assailants then rushed on board, and seized the whole party before they could get in order to make resistance. Thus had a small number of men the good fortune to take, in one moment, that general prisoner, whom the whole French army had scarcely the courage to face 13 during a whole summer. The Dutch deputies had taken care to provide 14 themselves with French passes. Marlborough, however, thought it 15 beneath him to solicit such a safeguard; and he was saved only by the presence of mind of an attendant 16, named Gell, who, having in his pocket a pass, which had been granted to Marlborough's brother, General Churchill, when obliged to quit the army from ill health, slipped it into his hand unperceived 17 by every one. This passport bore date 18 some time before; and the least scrutiny 19 would have detected the deception, had not the general presented it with an undismayed 20 countenance. The calm indifference with which he offered the passport almost prevented the men from looking at it, and the night being rather dark, the adventurers contented themselves with searching 21 the trunks and baggage, emptying

4. Ruremond, *Ruremonde*. 5. troopers, *cavaliers*. 6. their way down, *à descendre*. 7. without attending to, *sans faire attention à*. 8. slender, *faible*. 9. was lurking, *être aux aguets*. 10. below, *au-dessous de*. 11. tow-rope, *le cable de remorque*. 12. escaped unhurt, *n'être point atteint*. 13. face, *regarder en face*. 14. to provide themselves with passes, *de se munir de passeports*. 15. thought it beneath, *croire au-dessous de*. 16. attendant, *domestique*. 17. unperceived, *sans être vu de*. 18. bore date, *être daté de*. 19. scrutiny, *examen*. 20. undismayed countenance, *avec assurance*. 21. search-

them of all the plate 22 and everything of value 23 that they contained, having done which, they permitted Marlborough and his fellow-voyagers 24 to proceed.

XI.

The Duke of Marlborough to Mr. Secretary Harley.

"Camp at Hochstadt, Thursday morning,
August 14th, 1704.

"SIR, I gave you an account, on Sunday 1, of the situation we were then in, and that we expected to hear the enemy would pass the Danube at Lawingen, in order to attack Prince Eugene. At eleven that night, we had an express 2 from him, that the enemy were come over 3, and desiring that he might be reinforced 4 as soon as possible; whereupon 5 I ordered my brother Churchill to advance, at one o'clock in the morning, with his twenty battalions, and, by three, the whole army was in motion. For the greater 6 expedition, I ordered part of the troops to pass over the Danube, and follow the march of the twenty battalions; and, with most of the horse 7, and the foot of the first line, I passed the Lech at Rain, and came over 8 the Danube at Donawerth; so that we all joined the Prince that night, intending to advance and take this camp at Hochstadt. In order whereunto 9, we went out, on Tuesday early in morning, with forty squadrons, to view the ground 10; but found the enemy had already possessed themselves of it. 11 Whereupon we resolved to attack them, and accordingly we marched between three and four yesterday morning from the camp at Münster, leaving all our tents standing 12; about six, we came in view of the enemy, who, we found, did not expect so early 13 a visit.

"The cannon began to play about half an hour after eight. They formed themselves into two bodies; the elector with M. Marsin and their troops on our right, and M. de Tallard with all his own on

ing, *fouiller*. 22. plate, *argenterie*. 23. things of value, *objets de valeur*. 24. fellow-voyagers, *compagnons de voyage*.

1. on Sunday, *Dimanche*. 2. we had an express, *recevoir un exprès*. 3. were come over, *passer*. 4. desiring that he might be, *demandant à être*. 5. whereupon, *sur cela*. 6. for the greater expedition, *pour plus de*. 7. most of the horse, *la plus grande partie de la cavalerie*. 8. came over, *traverser*. 9. in order whereunto, *pour le faire*. 10. to view the ground, *pour examiner le terrain*. 11. Had possessed themselves of it, *s'en emparer*, ind. 6. 12. stand-

our left, which last fell to my share. 14 They had two little rivulets, besides a morass, before them, which we were obliged to pass over in their presence, and Prince Eugene was forced to take a great compass 15 to come to the enemy : so that it was one o'clock before the battle began. It lasted with great vigour till sunset 16, when the enemy were obliged to retire, and, with the blessing of God, we obtained a complete victory. We have cut off great numbers of them 17, as well in the action as in the retreat ; besides upwards of fifty squadrons of the French, whom I have pushed into the Danube, where we saw the greatest part of them perish ; M. de Tallard, with several of his general officers, being taken prisoners at the same time ; and in the village of Blenheim, which the enemy had intrenched and fortified, and where they made the greatest resistance, I obliged twenty-six entire battalions and twelve squadrons of dragoons to surrender themselves prisoners at discretion. We took, likewise, all their tents standing, with their cannon and ammunition, as also a great number of standards, kettle-drums 18, and colours in the action. So that I reckon the greater part of M. de Tallard's army is taken or destroyed.

"The bravery of our troops on this occasion cannot be expressed ; the generals, as well as the officers and soldiers, behaving with the greatest courage and resolution ; the horse and dragoons having been obliged to charge several times. The elector and M. Marsin were so advantageously posted, that Prince Eugene could make no impression on them, till the third attack, at near seven at night 19, when he made a great slaughter of them ; but being near a wood-side 20, a large body of Bavarians 21 retired into it, and the rest of that army retreated towards Lawingen, it being too late 22, and the troops too much tired, to pursue them far. I cannot say too much in the praise 23 of the Prince's good conduct, and the bravery of his troops on this occasion. You will be pleased 24 to lay this before 25 her Majesty and his Royal Highness, to whom I send my Lord Tunbridge with the good news. I pray you will likewise inform yourself, and let me know her Majesty's pleasure, as well relating 26 to M. Tallard and the other general officers, as for

ing, *dressé*. 13. so early, *de si bonne heure*. 14. which last fell to my share, *ces dernières m'échurent en partage*. 15. to take a great compass, *de fuire un grand détour*. 16. till sunset, *jusqu'au coucher du soleil*. 17. have cut off a great number of them, *en détruire un grand nombre*. 18. kettle-drums, *timbales* ; colours, *drapeaux*. 19. at near seven at night, *vers sept heures du soir*. 20. wood-side, *le bord d'un bois*. 21. a large body of Bavarians, *un corps assez considérable de Bavarois*. 22. it being too late, *comme il était trop tard*. 23. I cannot say too much in the praise of, *ne savoir*, cond. 1. *trop louer*. 24. you will be pleased, *avoir la bonté de* (imperative). 25. lay this before, *soumettre ceci à*. 26. as well relating, *à l'égard de*.

the disposal of near twelve hundred other officers, and between eight and nine thousand common 27 soldiers, who being all made prisoners by her Majesty's troops, are entirely at her disposal. But as the charge of subsisting 28 these officers and men must be very great, I presume her Majesty will be inclined 29 to have them exchanged for any other prisoners that offer. 30 I should likewise be glad to receive her Majesty's directions 31 for the despatch of the standards and colours, whereof I have not yet the number, but guess there cannot be 32 less than one hundred, which is more than has been taken in any battle these 33 many years. You will easily believe, that in so long and vigorous an action, the English, who had so great a share in it 34, must have suffered as well in officers as in men ; but I have not yet the particulars.

"I am your most obedient, humble servant,

"MARLBOROUGH."

XII.

The Lord Keeper's 1 Address to the Duke of Marlborough, after the Victory of Hochstadt.

THE happy success that has attended 2 her Majesty's armies under your Grace's command in Germany in the last campaign, is so truly great, so truly glorious, in all its circumstances, that few instances in the history of former ages can equal, much less excel, the lustre of it. 3 Your Grace has not overthrown young unskilful generals, raw 4 and undisciplined troops ; but your Grace has conquered the French and Bavarian 5 armies—armies that were fully instructed in all the arts of war, select veteran 6 troops, flushed 7 with former victories, and commanded by generals of great experience and bravery. The glorious victories your Grace has obtained at Schellenberg and Hochstadt are very great, very illustrious, in themselves ; but they are greater still in their consequences 8 to

27. common, *simple*. 28. the charge of subsisting, *la dépense pour nourrir*. 29. will be inclined, *permettre que*. 30. that offer, *qui se présenter*. 31. directions, *ordre*. 32. be less than, *y en avoir moins de*. 33. these many years, *depuis bien des années*. 34. in it, *y*. 35. particulars, *détail*.

1. lord-keeper, *chancelier*. 2. attended ; as if it were, obtained by the armies, &c. 3. of it, *en*. 4. raw, *inexpérimenté*. 5. Bavarian, *Bavarois*. 6. select veteran troops, *corps choisis de vétérans*. 7. flushed with, *sier de*. 8. consequences, *résultat*. 9. heart of it,

her Majesty and her allies. The Emperor is thereby relieved, the empire itself freed from a very dangerous enemy in the very heart⁹ of it, the exorbitant power of France is checked, and I hope a happy step made towards¹⁰ reducing that monarch within his due bounds, and securing the liberties of Europe. The honour of these glorious victories, great as they are (under the immediate blessing of Almighty God), is chiefly, if not alone, owing¹¹ to your Grace's conduct and valour. This is the unanimous voice of England and of all her Majesty's allies.

XIII.

The Elector of Bavaria 1 to Louis XIV., after the Loss of the Battle of Ramillies, May 23, 1706.

"SIRE, if the events of the Battle of Ramillies had answered the hopes we expected from it, it would not have been the loss, but the gain of a battle, with which I should have acquainted your Majesty. There is no fault to be imputed² to the generals who have commanded, nor the troops who have fought, but to a fatality without example. I have a heart³ so full of this misfortune, that I cannot express to your Majesty the burden under which I labour. The loss, Sire, of the Battle of Ramillies, which has been as fatal as that of Höchstadt, convinces me that it is not the number of an army, nor the advantageous situation of a camp, nor the courage of soldiers, that give the victory, but God alone. When I seriously consider all that has passed in this great action (where your Majesty's household⁵ and my cuirassiers broke, no less than three times, the enemy's left), I must confess I do not comprehend the business of war. The only consolation that remains, Sire, in my misfortunes, is, that I have done nothing contrary to your orders, which Marshal Villeroy as well as all the officers of the army, who have seen me expose myself as much as the meanest⁶ soldier, cannot but acknowledge; and if the peril of my life could have purchased⁷ a victory, it would assuredly not have been my fault that your Majesty's arms were not triumphant. But the evil⁸ has befallen us, and what remains is to seek the means of remedying it. I wait, in all this chaos of confusion, for your Majesty's orders."

dans son centre même. 10. towards reducing, *pour réduire.* 11. is owing, *devoir*, ind. 1. passive voice.

1. Bavaria, *Bavière.* 2. to be imputed, *à imputer.* 3. a heart, *le cœur.* 4. the burden I labour under; as if, what I suffer. 5. household, *maison.* 6. the meanest, *le dernier.* 7. could have purchased a victory, *acheter la victoire.* 8. the evil, *malheur.*

XIV.

*The Duke of Marlborough to the King of Denmark 1
after the Battle of Ramillies.*

“ From the Camp at Grimberg, May 29th, 1706.

“ SIRE,—After the troops have had 2 a little refreshment, we shall advance again towards the enemy, without giving them time to recover themselves; relying entirely on the blessing of Heaven and the bravery of the troops; particularly those of your Majesty, who distinguished themselves so eminently, and acquired so much glory in the battle, that I cannot excuse myself 3 from writing this letter to your Majesty to do justice to the Duke of Wirtemberg, who that day gave shining proofs of his capacity and valour; as also the other generals, officers, and soldiers of your Majesty's troops under his command, who well deserve all the praises I can give them; and, if I might presume 4 to say it, all the regard 5 your Majesty can show for such brave men. I have not been wanting 6 to do them this justice to the Queen and his Royal Highness, and I hope your Majesty will excuse the liberty I take in recommending them to your favour.”

XV.

*Speech made by Prince de Talleyrand at his Audience of
Presentation to the King of England. 1830.*

“ SIRE,—His Majesty the King of the French has made choice of me as the interpreter of the sentiments with which he is animated towards your Majesty. I have accepted with joy a mission which forms so noble a termination to the last steps 1 of my long career. Sire, of all the vicissitudes which my great age has gone through; of all the various fortunes which forty years, so fertile in events, have given to my life; nothing, perhaps, so completely satisfied my desires as the choice which brings me back to this happy country. But what a difference between the periods! 2 The jealousies, the

1. Denmark, *Danemarck*, m. 2. have had, ind. 8. 3. excuse myself, *n'empêcher*. 4. I might presume, *oser*, ind. 2. 5. regard, *considération*. 9. I have not been wanting, *manquer*, ind. 4.

1. Steps, *pas*. 2. periods, *époque*.

prejudices 3 which, for so long a time, divided France and England, have given 4 place to sentiments of an enlightened and affectionate esteem. A similarity of principles now draws 5 still closer the relations of the two countries. England, in her foreign policy, repudiates, with France, the principle of intervention in the internal affairs of her neighbours, and the ambassador of a royalty voted unanimously by a great people, feels himself at ease in a land of liberty, and near a descendant of the illustrious House of Brunswick. I solicit with confidence, Sire, your kindness in the relations which I am charged to maintain with your Majesty, and I entreat you to accept the homage of my profound respect."

XVI.

Bernadotte, late King of Sweden.

BERNADOTTE, the most fortunate of all Napoleon's generals, late King of Sweden, enlisted, at the age of fifteen, as a private 1 in the royal marines. 2 With this corps young Bernadotte served in the East Indies 3, under Mr. Bussy. In a sortie at Cuddalore, being wounded and taken prisoner, his interesting appearance and manners so 4 attracted the notice of Colonel Wangenheim, who commanded the Hanoverian troops in the English service, that he had him conveyed 5 to his own tent, where he was treated with attention and kindness until his recovery and release.

Many years afterwards, when the French army, under Bernadotte, entered Hanover, General Wangenheim attended 6 his levee. "You have served a good deal," said Bernadotte, on his being presented 7, "and, as I understand, in India." "I have served there." "At Cuddalore?" "I was there." "Have you any recollection of a wounded serjeant, whom you took under your protection in the course of that service?" "I do, indeed, remember the circumstance, and a very fine young man he was; I have lost sight 8 of him ever since, but it would give me pleasure to hear of his welfare." 9 "That young serjeant," said Bernadotte, "is the person

3. prejudices, *préjugés*. 4. given place, *faire place*. 5. draws closer, *resserrer*.

1. as a private, *comme simple soldat*. 2. in the royal marines, *dans l'infanterie de la marine royale*. 3. East Indies, *Inde orientale*, pl. f. 4. so, *tellement*. 5. he had him conveyed, *le faire transporter*. 6. attended his levee, *être présent à la réception*. 7. on his being presented, *lorsqu'il fut présenté*. 8. I have lost sight of him, *le perdre de vue*. 9. welfare, *succès*.

who has now the honour of addressing you, and who is happy in this public opportunity of acknowledging the obligation."

In March, 1813, after the fatal expedition to Russia, Bernadotte thus affectionately remonstrated with Napoleon to induce him to make peace. "All the military combinations rendered it nearly certain that your Majesty would be taken prisoner. You have escaped; but your army, the flower of France, Germany, and Italy, no longer exists. There, unburied 1, lie 2 the heroes who saved France at Fleurus; who conquered Italy; who resisted the burning climate of Egypt, and who planted the standard of victory, under your command, at Marengo, Ansterlitz, Jena, and at Friedland! Let your heart be moved at this agonising 3 picture; and, if anything be yet wanting to prevail on 4 you, remember the death of more than a million of Frenchmen, left on the field of honour, victims of the wars you have undertaken. Possessor 5 of the finest monarchy in the world, would you be eternally extending its limits? The examples of history, the feeling of independence, which may be deadened 6, but cannot be effaced from the heart of nations, reject the idea of an universal monarchy. Weigh well all these considerations, and, for once 7, sincerely embrace the idea of a general peace. For myself, in this struggle between the liberty of the world and oppression, I will say to the Swedes 8, 'I fight for you, and with you, and the wishes 9 of free nations accompany your efforts.'"

XVII.

Soult, Duke of Dalmatia.

In 1794, Soult was chief of the staff 1 to General Lefebvre, who headed the advanced guard of the army of the Moselle. When the right wing under Marceau was routed, and that general himself forced to fall back 2 on Lefebvre's division, he entreated 3, in an agony of despair, a succour of four battalions, that he might recover his lost position. "Give them to me," exclaimed he, "or I will

1. unburied, *sans sépulture*. 2. lie, *être étendu*. 3. agonising, *déchirant*. 4. to prevail on, *persuader*. 5. possessor, *maître*. 6. deadened, *amortir*. 7. for once, *une fois pour toutes*. 8. Swedes, *Suédois*. 9. wishes, *vœu*.

1. chief of the staff to, *chef d'état-major de*. 2. fall back, *se retirer*. 3. entreated, *demander*. 4. I will blow my brains out, *se brûler la*

blow 4 my brains out!" Soult observed, that such a step would endanger 5 the safety of the division. Indignant that an obscure aide-de-camp should presume 6 to decide on such a subject, "And who are you?" cried Marceau. "Whoever I am," answered Soult, "I am calm, which you are not; do not kill yourself, but lead on your men to the charge, and you shall have the four battalions as soon as we can spare 7 them." The result proved the wisdom of Soult's advice. The division of Lefebvre was almost instantly assailed by the Prince of Cobourg, and a bloody conflict ensued, in which both Soult and Marceau fought like lions. Towards evening, this obstinately contested battle appeared to Lefebvre to be so much to the disadvantage of the French, that he was inclined 8 to make a retrograde movement; but the design was opposed by Soult. "If I am not mistaken," said he, "from what I can judge of the enemy's second line, the Austrians 9 are preparing to retreat." An order from Jourdan to charge, confirmed the eagle-glance 10 of this soldier. After the battle, Marceau, whose anger had given way to admiration, held out his hand to Soult: "Colonel," said he, "forgive the past; you have this day given me a lesson, which I shall never forget. It is you, in fact, who have gained the battle."

At Austerlitz Soult commanded the centre of the army. On the night preceding 1 that memorable day, when the marshals surrounded Napoleon to receive his instructions: "As for you, Soult," said he, "I have only to say, act as you always do!" In the heat of this battle an aide-de-camp arrived with an order, that he should instantly gain the heights of Pratzen. "I will obey the Emperor's commands as soon as I can," answered the Marshal; "but this is not the proper 2 time." Napoleon, enraged, dispatched another aide-de-camp with a more peremptory mandate. He arrived just as Soult was putting his column in motion. The manœuvre had been delayed, because the Russians 3 were extending their line to the left, and so weakening their centre, which was in possession 4 of the heights. Complete success attended the marshal's attack. Napoleon, who, from his eminence, perceived at once the reason of the delay, and the brilliancy of the movement, rode 5 up to Soult, and, in presence of the whole staff 6, who shortly before had heard him exclaim 7 against his disobedience, said "Marshal, I account 8 you the ablest tactician in my empire."

cervelle. 5. endanger the safety, *compromettre la sûreté.* 6. should presume, *oser*, subj. 2. 7. spare, *donner.* 8. inclined, *disposé.* 9. Austrians, *Autrichiens.* 10. eagle-glance, *le coup d'œil d'aigle.*

1. On the night preceding, *la nuit qui précéda.* 2. the proper time, *le moment.* 3. Russians, *Russe.* 4. was in possession, *occuper.* 5. rode up to, *courir à.* 6. staff, *état-major.* 7. exclaim against, *se récrier contre.* 8. I account, *considérer.*

On re-establishing his relations with the army in the month of November, 1830, Soult issued a circular, detailing the principles of his administration.

"In succeeding," says the Marshal, "a minister who has added to the lustre of his splendid military career, by the noble part he took in our glorious revolution, it is my intention to imitate him in his acts, his ardent patriotism, his respect for the laws, his love of public liberty, and the sentiment of French greatness. Like him I felt, that, in the first moments of agitation, which the miraculous liberation of France necessarily produced, discipline must have experienced some relaxation in a few of the corps. At present, the least irregularity can no longer be excused. The generals, the chiefs, and officers of every rank, would be responsible for it, and could not remain unpunished. Rallied round the standard which, for twenty-five years, shed lustre upon France, we should all feel, that obedience to the laws is our first duty; submission, and the observance of discipline, the rule of our conduct. Under the eyes of these principles, the army may be assured, that impartial justice will protect its rights, repel favour, and ensure to merit alone its reward."

THE END.

LONDON:
SPOTTISWOODES and SHAW,
New-street-Square.

LONDON: 39, PATERNOSTER ROW:
MARCH 30, 1850.

**A Select Catalogue of
BOOKS ON EDUCATION,**
PRINTED FOR
LONGMAN, BROWN, GREEN, & LONGMANS.

ELEMENTARY GREEK WORKS.

Yonge: An English-Greek Lexicon;

Containing all the Greek Words used by Writers of good authority; citing the Authorities in Chronological Order for every Word used; explaining the Construction; and giving the Declension or Conjugation of each word when irregular; and marking the Quantities of all doubtful Syllables. By C. D. YONGE, B.A. Post 4to. 21s. cloth.

"This Lexicon is compiled on a most admirable plan, and will be found a most important, we will add an indispensable, assistant to the student seeking to perfect himself in Greek composition. Mr. Yonge furnishes a complete English vocabulary so far as there are equivalent and equipollent words in Greek to render the English term. The authorities are invariably given; and the lexicographer has displayed both taste and judgment, with infinite zeal to boot, in the selection of illustrative quotations. It is decidedly a work of rare merit." *Church and State Gazette.*

Brasse's Greek Gradus.

A Greek Gradus; or, a Greek, Latin, and English Prosodial Lexicon: containing the Interpretation, in Latin and English, of all words which occur in the Greek Poets, from the Earliest Period to the time of Ptolemy Philadelphus. By the late Rev. Dr. BRASSE. With a Synopsis of the Greek Metres, by the Rev. J. R. Major, D.D. New Edit. revised by the Rev. F. E. J. Valpy, M.A. 8vo. 15s. cloth.

Giles's Greek and English Lexicon.

A Lexicon of the Greek Language, for the use of Colleges and Schools: containing —1. A Greek-English Lexicon, combining the advantages of an Alphabetical and Derivative Arrangement; 2. A copious English-Greek Lexicon. By the Rev. J. A. GILES, LL.D. New Edition 8vo. 21s. cloth.

*. The English-Greek Lexicon, separately. 7s. 6d. cloth.

Dr. Kennedy's Greek Grammar.

Græcæ Grammaticæ Institutio Prima Rudimentis Etonensibus quantum potuit immutatis Syntaxis de suo addidit B. H. KENNEDY, S.T.P. New Edition. 12mo. 4s. 6d. cloth.

Kühner's Elementary Greek Grammar.

An Elementary Grammar of the Greek Language. By Dr. Raphael Kühner, Co-Rector of the Lyceum at Hanover. Translated by J. H. Millard, St. John's College, Cambridge. 8vo. 9s. cloth.

Valpy's Greek Grammar.

The Elements of Greek Grammar: with Notes. By R. VALPY, D.D. New Edit. 8vo. 6s. 6d. boards; bound, 7s. 6d.

Pycroft's Greek Grammar Practice.

Three Parts: 1. Lessons in Vocabulary, Nouns, Adjectives, and Verbs in Grammatical order; 2. Greek, made out of each column for translation; 3. English for re-translation. By the Rev. J. PYCROFT, B.A. 12mo. 3s. 6d. cl.

Moody's Eton Greek Grammar in English.

The New Eton Greek Grammar; with the Marks of Accent, and the Quantity of the Penult: containing the Eton Greek Grammar in English, and the Syntax and Prosody as used at Eton: with numerous Additions. By the Rev. CLEMENT MOODY, A.M. New Edition. 12mo. 1s. cloth.

Valpy's Greek Delectus, and Key.

Delectus Sententiarum Græcarum, ad usum Tironum accommodatus: cum Notulis et Lexico. Auctore R. VALPY, D.D. Editio Nova, eademque aucta et emendata. 12mo. 4s. cloth.

KEY to the above, being a Literal Translation into English. 12mo. 2s. 6d. sewed.

Valpy's Second Greek Delectus.

Second Greek Delectus; or, *New Analecta Minora*: intended to be read in Schools between Dr. Valpy's Greek Delectus and the Third Greek Delectus: with English Notes, and a copious Greek and English Lexicon. By the Rev. F. E. J. VALPY, M.A. New Edition. 8vo. 9s. 6d. bound.

Valpy's Third Greek Delectus.

The Third Greek Delectus; or, *New Analecta Majora*: with English Notes. In Two Parts. By the Rev. F. E. J. VALPY, M.A. 8vo. 15s. 6d. bound.

*. * The Parts may be had separately.

PART 1. PROSE. 8vo. 8s. 6d. bound. — PART 2. POETRY. 8vo. 9s. 6d. bound.

Valpy's Greek Exercises, and Key.

Greek Exercises; being an Introduction to Greek Composition, leading the student from the Elements of Grammar to the higher parts of Syntax. By the Rev. F. E. J. VALPY, M.A. New Edition. 12mo. 6s. 6d. cloth.

KEY, 12mo. 3s. 6d. sewed.

Neilson's Greek Exercises, and Key.

Greek Exercises, in Syntax, Ellipsis, Dialects, Prosody, and Metaphrasis. To which is prefixed, a concise but comprehensive Syntax; with Observations on some Idioms of the Greek Language. By the Rev. W. NEILSON, D.D. New Edition. 8vo. 5s. boards. — KEY, 3s. boards.

Howard's Introductory Greek Exercises, and Key.

Introductory Greek Exercises to those of Huntingford, Dunbar, Neilson, and others; arranged under Models, to assist the learner. By N. HOWARD. New Edition. 12mo. 5s. 6d. cloth. — KEY, 12mo. 2s. 6d. cloth.

Donaldson's Theatre of the Greeks.

The Theatre of the Greeks; or, a Series of Papers relating to the History and Criticism of the Greek Drama. Sixth Edition, revised and improved. With an Original Introduction and Notes by JOHN WILLIAM DONALDSON, B.D. Head Master of King Edward's School, Bury St. Edmunds; and formerly Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge. 8vo. with Frontispiece and Wood Engravings, 15s. cloth.

Dr. Major's Guide to the Greek Tragedians.

A Guide to the Reading of the Greek Tragedians; being a series of articles on the Greek Drama, Greek Metres, and Canons of Criticism. Collected and arranged by the Rev. J. R. MAJOR, D.D. New Edition, enlarged. 8vo. 9s. cloth.

Viger on the Greek Idioms.

Translated and abridged, with original English Notes, by the Rev. J. SEAGREN, Editor and Translator of "Bos on the Greek Ellipsis," "Hermann's Doctrine of Metres," "Hoogeveen on the Greek Particles," and "Maittaire on the Greek Dialects." 8vo. 9s. 6d.

ELEMENTARY LATIN WORKS.**Mr. C. D. Yonge's New Latin Gradus.**

A Gradus ad Parnassum of the Latin Language; containing every Word used by the Poets of good authority; and in which the words are classed according to their age, their different Meanings carefully distinguished, the Phrases selected solely from the purest Authors, and the Authorities accurately cited. For the use of

Eton, Westminster,
Winchester, Harrow, and
Charterhouse Schools.

King's College, London,
and
Marlborough College.

By C. D. YONGE, B.A., Author of "An English-Greek Lexicon."
Post 8vo. 9s. bound.

"The plan adopted in this gradus is a pleasing proof of the strides which true scholarship has made in the inferior grades of classical study. Instead of the old gradus, which seemed expressly constructed for the purpose of teaching the pupil to string words together with respect to the number and quantity of their syllables, without the least regard to sense or fitness, the present manual of metrical reference has the character of a critical apparatus which, while it supplies him with copious examples from the best authors, forces him at the same time to pay attention to the sense, and guides him moreover in the selection of such terms only as appertain to the age of pure Latinity."

John Bull.

The Illustrated Companion to the Latin Dictionary and Greek Lexicon: forming a Glossary of all the words representing Visible Objects, connected with the Arts, Manufactures, and Every-day Life of the Ancients. With Representations of nearly Two Thousand Objects from the Antique. By ANTHONY RICE, Jun. B.A. late of Caius College, Cambridge. Post 8vo. with 2,000 Wood Engravings, 21s. cloth.

"This is a work of great originality and research: almost every word being illustrated, and the illustrations taken from the things themselves as they now exist, or from representations in painting, sculpture, &c. It has been carefully and laboriously compiled, by a scholar of no ordinary attainments; and the alphabetical arrangement and classed indices open to the reader at once the information contained in its pages." *Journal of Education.*

Riddle's large Latin-English Lexicon.

A copious and critical Latin-English Lexicon, founded on the German-Latin Dictionaries of Dr. William Freund. By the Rev. J. E. RIDDLE, M.A. of St. Edmund Hall, Oxford. Uniform with "Yonge's English-Greek Lexicon." Post 4to. 80s. cloth.

Riddle's Complete Latin Dictionary.

A Complete Latin-English and English-Latin Dictionary. For the use of Colleges and Schools. By the Rev. J. E. RIDDLE, M.A. New Edition, corrected and enlarged. 8vo. 31s. 6d. cloth.

Separately { The English-Latin Dictionary, 10s. 6d. cloth.
The Latin-English Dictionary, £1. 1s. cloth.

Riddle's Young Scholar's Latin Dictionary.

The Young Scholar's Latin-English and English-Latin Dictionary; being Mr. Riddle's Abridgment of his larger Dictionary. New Edition, corrected and enlarged. Square 12mo. 12s. bound.

Separately { The Latin-English Dictionary, 7s. bound.
The English-Latin Dictionary, 6s. 6d. bound.

Riddle and Arnold's English-Latin Lexicon.

A Copious English-Latin Lexicon, founded on the German-Latin of Dr. C. E. Georges. By the Rev. J. E. Riddle, M.A. Author of "A Complete Latin-English Dictionary," &c.; and the Rev. T. K. Arnold, M.A., Rector of Lyndon, late Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge. New Edition. 8vo. 25s. cloth.

Riddle's Latin Vocabulary.

A Progressive Latin-English Vocabulary: being a List of Common Latin Words, with their principal Meanings in English: distinguished according to their comparative importance or frequency of use. By the Rev. J. E. RIDDLE, M.A. 12mo. 2s. cloth.

Riddle: Questions on Latin Style;

So far as relates to the Use and Quality of Words. Constructed with special reference to the Critical Remarks contained in Riddle and Arnold's "English-Latin Lexicon." By the Rev. J. E. RIDDLE, M.A. 12mo. 2s. cloth.

Zumpt's Grammar of the Latin Language.

Translated from the Enlarged Edition of the original, and adapted for the use of English students, by L. SCHMITZ, Ph. D. Rector of the High School of Edinburgh; with new Additions and Corrections, communicated to Dr. SCHMITZ by Professor ZUMPT. New Edition. 8vo. 14s. cloth.

Zumpt's School Grammar of the Latin Language.

Translated and adapted for use in English Schools. By Dr. L. SCHMITZ, F.R.S.E. Rector of the High School of Edinburgh. With a Preface, written expressly for this Translation, by Professor ZUMPT. 12mo. 4s. cloth.

Pycroft's Latin Grammar Practice.

Latin Grammar Practice: 1. Lessons in Vocabulary, Nouns, Adjectives, and Verbs, in Grammatical Order; 2. Latin, made out of each column, for Translation; 3. English, for re-translation. By the Rev. JAMES PYCROFT, B.A. New Edition. 12mo. 2s. 6d. cloth.

Valpy's Latin Grammar.

The Elements of Latin Grammar: with Notes. By R. VALPY, D.D. New Edition, with numerous Additions and Corrections. 12mo. 2s. 6d. bound.

Kennedy : The Child's Latin Primer;

Or, First Latin Lessons: Extracted (with Model Questions and Exercises) from "An Elementary Latin Grammar," by the Rev. B. H. KENNEDY, D.D. Head Master of Shrewsbury School. 12mo. 2s. cloth.

Dr. Kennedy's Latin Vocabulary.

A Latin Vocabulary, arranged on Etymological Principles, as an Exercise-Book, and first Latin Dictionary for the use of the Lower Classes in Schools. By the Rev. B. H. KENNEDY, D.D. Head Master of Shrewsbury School. 12mo. 2s. 6d.

Dr. Kennedy's First Latin Reading Book.

Tirocinium; or, a First Latin Reading Book. Adapted to the Author's "Child's Latin Primer." By the Rev. B. H. KENNEDY, D.D. Head Master of Shrewsbury School. 12mo. 2s. cloth.

Dr. Kennedy's Second Latin Reading Book.

Palæstra Latina; or, a Second Latin Reading Book. Adapted to the Author's "Elementary Latin Grammar." By the Rev. B. H. KENNEDY, D.D., Head Master of Shrewsbury School. 12mo. 5s. cloth.

"A selection of progressive passages and pieces from Latin writers, divided into two courses, each course preceded by exercises on points of grammar. Notes and questions on the lessons are also added." *Spectator.*

Dr. Kennedy's Latin Grammar.

An Elementary Grammar of the Latin Language, for the use of Schools, by the Rev. B. H. KENNEDY, D.D. Head Master of Shrewsbury School. New Edition. 12mo. 3s. 6d. cloth.

Moody's Eton Latin Grammar in English.

The New Eton Latin Grammar, with the Marks of Quantity and the Rules of Accent; containing the Eton Latin Grammar as used at Eton, and its Translation into English: with Notes and Additions. By Rev. CLEMENT MOODY, M.A. New Edition. 12mo. 2s. 6d. cloth. The Accidence, separately, price 1s.

Graham's First Steps to Latin Writing.

First Steps to Latin Writing: intended as a Practical Illustration of the Latin Accidence. To which are added, Examples on the principal Rules of Syntax. By G. F. GRAHAM. New Edition, considerably enlarged. 12mo. 4s. cloth.

Valpy's Latin Delectus, and Key.

Delectus Sententiarum et Historiarum; ad usum Tironum accommodatus cum Notulis et Lexico. Auctore R. VALPY, D.D. New Edition. 12mo. 2s. 6d. cloth. KEY. New Edition, carefully revised. 12mo. 3s. 6d. cloth.

Valpy's Second Latin Delectus.

The Second Latin Delectus; designed to be read in Schools after the Latin Delectus, and before the *Analecta Latina Majora*: with English Notes. By the Rev. F. E. J. VALPY, M.A. New Edition. 8vo. 6s. bound.

Valpy's First Latin Exercises.

First Exercises on the principal Rules of Grammar, to be translated into Latin: with familiar Explanations. By the late Rev. R. VALPY, D.D. New Edition, with many Additions. 19mo. 1s. 6d. cloth.

Valpy's Second Latin Exercises.

Second Latin Exercises; applicable to every Grammar, and intended as an Introduction to Valpy's "Elegantie Latine." By the Rev. E. VALPY, B.D. New Edition. 12mo. 2s. 6d. cloth.

Valpy's *Elegantie Latine*, and Key.

Elegantie Latine; or, Rules and Exercises illustrative of Elegant Latin Style: With the Original Latin of the most difficult Phrases. By Rev. E. VALPY, B.D. New Edition. 12mo. 4s. 6d. cloth.

KEY, being the Original Passages, which have been translated into English, to serve as Examples and Exercises in the above. 12mo. 2s. 6d. sewed.

An Introduction to the Composition of Latin Verse;

containing Rules and Exercises intended to illustrate the Manners, Customs, and Opinions, mentioned by the Roman Poets, and to render familiar the principal Idioms of the Latin Language. By the late CHRISTOPHER RAPIER, A.B. New Edition, revised by the Rev. T. K. ARNOLD, M.A. 12mo. 3s. 6d. cloth.—KEY, 2s. 6d. sewed.

Walford's Latin Verse Book.

Progressive Exercises in Latin Elegiac Verse. Adapted, with References throughout, to the Syntax of Dr. Kenne's Latin Grammar; and accompanied by Marginal References to the Works of the best Latin Poets. By the Rev. E. WALFORD, M.A. Scholar of Balliol College, Oxford, and Assistant-Master of Tunbridge School. New Edition, corrected. 12mo. 2s. 6d. cloth.

Howard's Introductory Latin Exercises.

Introductory Latin Exercises to those of Clarke, Ellis, Turner, and others: designed for the Younger Classes. By NATHANIEL HOWARD. New Edition. 12mo. 2s. 6d. cloth.

Howard's Latin Exercises extended.

Latin Exercises Extended; or, a Series of Latin Exercises, selected from the best Roman Writers, and adapted to the Rules of Syntax, particularly in the Eton Grammar. To which are added, English Examples to be translated into Latin immediately under the same rule. Arranged under Models. By NATHANIEL HOWARD. New Edition. 12mo. 3s. 6d. cloth.—KEY, 12mo. 2s. 6d.

Bradley's Latin Prosody, and Key.

Exercises in Latin Prosody and Versification. New Edition, with an Appendix on Lyric and Dramatic Measures. 12mo. 3s. 6d. cloth.—KEY, 12mo. 2s. 6d.

EDITIONS OF GREEK CLASSIC AUTHORS.**Valpy's Homer.**

Homer's Iliad, complete: English Notes, and Questions to first Eight Books. Text of Heyne. By the Rev. E. VALPY, B.D. late Master of Norwich School. New Edition. 8vo. 10s. 6d. bound.—Text only, New Edit. 8vo. 6s. 6d. bound.

Major's Euripides.

Euripides. From the Text, and with a Translation of the Notes, Preface, and Supplement, of Porson; Critical and Explanatory Remarks, original and selected; Illustrations and Idioms from Matthiæ, Dawes, Viger, &c.; and a Synopsis of Metrical Systems. By Dr. MAJOR. 8vo. 24s. cloth.
* The Five Plays separately, price 5s. each.

Linwood's Sophocles.

Sophocles Tragicæ superstites. Recensuit et brevi Annotatione instruxit G. LINWOOD, M.A. Alumnus Oxoniensis. 8vo. 16s. cloth.

Brasse's Sophocles.

Sophocles, complete. From the Text of Hermann, Erfurdt, &c.; with original Explanatory English Notes, Questions, and Indices. By Dr. BRASSE, Mr. BURGESS, and Rev. F. VALPY. 2 vols. post8vo. 34s. cloth.
* The Seven Plays separately, price 5s. each.

Balfour's Xenophon's Anabasis.

The Anabasis of Xenophon. Chiefly according to the Text of Hutchinson. With Explanatory Notes, and Illustrations of Idioms from Viger, &c., copious Indexes, and Examination Questions. By F. C. BALFOUR, M.A. Oxon. F.R.S. LL.D. New Edition. Post8vo. 8s. 6d. boards.

Hickie's Xenophon's Memorabilia.

Xenophon's Memorabilia of Socrates. From the text of Kuhner. With Notes, Critical and Explanatory, from the best Commentators, and by the Editor; Questions for Examination; and Indices. By D. B. HICKIE, LL.D. New Edition. Post8vo. 8s. 6d. cloth.

Barker's Xenophon's Cyropædia.

The Cyropædia of Xenophon. Chiefly from the text of Dindorf. With Notes, Critical and Explanatory, from Dindorf, Fisher, Hutchinson, Poppo, Schneider, Sturtz, and others, accompanied by the editor's. With Examination Questions, and Indices. By E. H. BARKER. Post8vo. 9s. 6d. bds.

White's Edition of Xenophon's Anabasis.

Xenophon's Expedition of Cyrus into Upper Asia: principally from the Text of Schneider. With English Notes, for the use of Schools. By the Rev. J. T. WHITE, M.A. C.C.C. Oxon; Junior Upper Master of Christ's Hospital, London. 12mo. 7s. 6d. bound.

Stocker's Herodotus.

Herodotus; containing the Continuous History alone of the Persian Wars: with English Notes. By J. C. Rev. C. W. STOCKER, D.D. Vice-Principal of St. Alban's Hall, Oxford. New Edition. 2 vols. post 8vo. 18s. cloth.

Barker's Demosthenes.

Demosthenes—Oratio Philippica I., Olynthiaca I. II. and III., De Pace, Machinæ contra Demosthenem, De Corona. With English Notes. By E. H. BARKER. New Edition. Post 8vo. 8s. 6d. boards.

EDITIONS OF LATIN CLASSIC AUTHORS.**Girdlestone and Osborne's Horace.**

The Works of HORACE. Adapted to the Use of Young Persons, by the Omission of Offensive Words and Passages; and illustrated by original English Notes, embodying the most recent Philological Information, together with occasional Strictures on Sentiments of an unchristian tendency. By the Rev. CHARLES GIRDLESTONE, M.A. and the Rev. WILLIAM A. OSBORNE, M.A. 12mo. 7s. 6d. bound.

Valpy's Horace.

Q. Horatii Flacci Opera. Ad fidem optimorum exemplarium castigata; cum Notulis Anglicis. Edited by A. J. VALPY, M.A. New Edition. 18mo. 6s. bound; without Notes, 3s. 6d. bound.

Virgil with 6,000 Marginal References, by Pycroft.

The *Æneid*, *Georgics*, and *Bucolics* of Virgil: with Marginal References, and concise Notes from Wagner, Heyne, and Anthon. Edited from the Text of Wagner, by the Rev JAS. PYCROFT, B.A. Trin. Coll. Oxford. Fcp. 8vo. 7s. 6d. bound; without Notes, 6s. 6d. bound.

Valpy's Edition of Virgil.

P. Virgilio Maronis *Bucolica*, *Georgica*, *Æneis*. Accedunt, in gratiam Juventutis Notæ quædam Anglicæ scriptæ. Edited by A. J. VALPY, M.A. New Edition. 18mo. 7s. 6d. bound; the Text only, 3s. 6d. bound.

Bradley's Ovid's Metamorphoses.

Ovidii *Metamorphoses*; in usum Scholarum expurgatæ: quibus accedunt Notulæ Anglicæ et Quæstiones. Studio C. BRADLEY, A.M. Editio Nova. 12mo. 4s. 6d. cloth.

Valpy's Ovid's Epistles and Tibullus.

Electa ex Ovidio et Tibullo: cum Notis Anglicis. By the Rev. F. E. J. VALPY, M.A. Master of Burton-on-Trent School. New Edition. 12mo. 4s. 6d. cloth.

Bradley's Phædrus.

Phædri Fabulæ; in usum Scholarum expurgatæ: quibus accedunt Notulæ Anglicæ et Quæstiones. Studio C. BRADLEY, A.M. Editio Nova. 12mo. 3s. 6d. cl.

Reinhardt's Terence, by Dr. Hickie.

P. Terentii Afri Comædiæ Sex. Ex Editione Th. FRID. GOD. REINHARDT. With English Explanatory Notes, a Life and Chronology of Terence, and Excursions. By D. B. HICKIE, LL.D. New Edition. 12mo. with Portrait, 9s. 6d. cloth.

Valpy's Tacitus, with English Notes.

C. Cornelii Taciti Opera. From the Text of Broter; with his Explanatory Notes, translated into English. By A. J. VALPY, M.A. 3 vols. post 8vo. 24s. bds.

Hickie's Livy.

The First Five Books of Livy: with English Explanatory Notes, and Examination Questions. By D. B. HICKIE, LL.D. New Edit. Post 8vo. 8s. 6d. boards.

C. Julii Cæsaris Commentarii de Bello Gallico

Ex recensione FR. OUDENDORPII. With Explanatory Notes, and Historical, Geographical, and Archaeological Indexes. By CHARLES ANTHON, LL.D. New Edition. 12mo. 4s. 6d. cloth.

C. Crispi Sallustii Opera.

With an English Commentary, and Geographical and Historical Indexes. by CHARLES ANTHON, LL.D. New Edition. 12mo. 5s. cloth.

Bradley's Cornelius Nepos, improved by White.

Cornelius Nepos: with English Notes and Questions. By the Rev. C. BRADLEY, M.A. A New Edition, corrected and considerably enlarged by the addition of Explanatory and Grammatical Notes, by the Rev. J. T. WHITE, M.A., Junior Upper Master of Christ's Hospital, London; Editor of "Xenophon's Anabasis," &c. 12mo. 3s. 6d. cloth.

"It is in the Notes that this new and improved edition of Bradley's Nepos will be found most to differ from those which preceded it. The Notes have been entirely re-written; and a very large amount of classical information has been embodied in them, from the best and most recent sources, respecting matters in the text of Nepos, upon which the original work was altogether silent.

Bradley's Eutropius, improved by White.

Eutropii Historiæ Romanæ Libri Septem. The First Seven Books of Eutropius's Epitome of the History of Rome: with English Notes and Questions, and a copious Vocabulary. By the Rev. C. BRADLEY, M.A. New Edition, corrected and considerably enlarged, by the Rev. J. T. WHITE, M.A.; Junior Upper Master of Christ's Hospital, London; Editor of "Xenophon's Anabasis," &c. 12mo. 2s. 6d. cloth.

M. Tullii Ciceronis Orationes Selectæ.

Ex recensionibus Jo. AUG. EMMERT. With an English Commentary, and Historical, Geographical, and Legal Indexes. By CHARLES ANTHON, LL.D. New Edition. 12mo. 6s. cloth.

Valpy's Cicero's Twelve Orations.

Twelve Select Orations of M. Tullius Cicero. From the Text of Jo. Casp. Orellius; with English Notes. Edited by A. J. VALPY, M.A. New Edition. Post 8vo. 7s. 6d. boards.

Barker's Cicero de Amicitia, &c.

Cicero's Cato Major, and Lælius: with English Explanatory and Philological Notes; and with an English Essay on the Respect paid to Old Age by the Egyptians, the Persians, the Spartans, the Greeks, and the Romans. By the late E. H. BARKER. New Edition. 12mo. 4s. 6d. cloth.

WORKS BY THE REV. S. T. BLOOMFIELD, D.D. F.S.A.**Bloomfield's New Greek Vocabulary.**

Lexilogus Scholasticus; or, a Greek and English Vocabulary on a new and improved plan: comprising all the Primitives, with some select Derivatives; and presenting a brief Epitome in outline of the Greek Language. 18mo. 3s.

Bloomfield's Epitome of the Greek Gospels.

Epitome Evangelicæ; or, First Step to Greek Construing: being Selections from the Four Greek Gospels: with a Clavis and Grammatical Notes. Intended as a Companion to the Author's "Lexilogus Scholasticus," and as an Introduction to his "College and School Greek Testament." 18mo. 4s. cloth.

Bloomfield's Greek Lexicon to the New Testament.

Greek and English Lexicon to the New Testament; especially adapted to the use of Colleges and the higher Classes in the Public Schools, but also intended as a convenient Manual for Biblical Students in general. New Edition, enlarged and improved. Fcp. 8vo. 10s. 6d. cloth.

Bloomfield's College and School Greek Testament.

The Greek Testament: with brief English Notes, Philological and Explanatory. Especially formed for the use of Colleges and the Public Schools, but also adapted for general purposes, where a larger work is not requisite. New Edition, enlarged and improved. Fcp. 8vo. 10s. 6d. cloth.

Bloomfield's Greek Testament.

The Greek Testament: with copious English Notes, Critical, Philological, and Explanatory. New Edition, enlarged and improved. 2 vols. 8vo. with Map of Palestine, £2. cloth.

Bloomfield's Greek Thucydides.

The History of the Peloponnesian War, by THUCYDIDES. A New Recension of the Text; with a carefully amended Punctuation; and copious Notes, Critical, Philological, and Explanatory; with full Indices, both of Greek Words and Phrases, explained, and matters discussed in the Notes. 2 vols. 8vo. with Maps and Plans, 36s. cloth.

Bloomfield's Translation of Thucydides.

The History of the Peloponnesian War. By THUCYDIDES. Translated into English, and accompanied by copious Notes, Philological and Explanatory, Historical and Geographical. 3 vols. 8vo. with Maps, &c. £2. 6s. boards.

HISTORY, CHRONOLOGY, AND MYTHOLOGY.**Eccleston: An Introduction to English Antiquities.**

Intended as a Companion to the History of England. By JAMES ECCLESTON, B.A. late Master of Sutton Coldfield Grammar School. 8vo. with numerous Engravings on Wood, 21s. cloth.

Mr. Farr's Elementary History of England.

A School History of England, from the Earliest Period, to the Eleventh Year of the Reign of Queen Victoria; containing a Narrative of Civil and Military Transactions, and exhibiting a view of the Religion, Government and Laws, Literature, Arts, Commerce, Manners and Customs, &c. of the different Periods. By EDWARD FARR, Esq. F.S.A. New Edition. 12mo. 5s. 6d. bound.

The Rev. B. G. Johns's History of the Jews.

A Sketch of the History of the Jews, from the end of the captivity to the coming of the Messiah: with an Appendix of the Names of remarkable Persons and Places mentioned. By the Rev. B. G. JOHNS, Head Master of the Grammar School, College of God's Gift, Dulwich; late Normal Master of St. Mark's College, Chelsea. 12mo. with Map, 1s. 6d. cloth.

The Rev. J. Sedgwick's School History of France.

A History of France; from the Earliest Period to the Revolution of 1789. For the use of Young Persons and Schools. Edited by the Rev. JOHN SEDGWICK, M.A. Demy of Magdalen College, Oxford; and one of the Masters in the Ordnance School, Carshalton. Fcp. 8vo. 3s. 6d. cloth.

Lempriere's Classical Dictionary, abridged

For Public and Private Schools of both Sexes. By the late E. H. BARNER, Trinity College, Cambridge. New Edition, revised and corrected throughout. By J. CAUVIN. 8vo. 12s. bound.

Blair's Chronological and Historical Tables.

From the Creation to the Present Time: with Additions and Corrections from the most Authentic Writers; including the Computation of St. Paul, as connecting the Period from the Exode to the Temple. Under the superintendence of Sir HENRY ELLIS, K.H. Imp. 8vo. 31s. 6d. half-bound morocco.

Mrs. Slater's School Chronology, and Chart.

Sententiae Chronologicae; or, a Complete System of Ancient and Modern Chronology, contained in Familiar Sentences: intended for the use of Schools and Private Students. By MRS. JOHN SLATER. New Edition, corrected to the present time. 12mo. 3s. 6d. cloth.—Also,

A Chronological Chart, designed to accompany the "Sententiae Chronologicae," and corrected to correspond with the New Edition of that work. On large sheets, coloured, price 6s.; or mounted on linen on a roller, 5s. 6d.

Mangnall's Questions.—THE ONLY GENUINE AND COMPLETE EDITION.

Historical and Miscellaneous Questions, for the Use of Young People; with a Selection of British and General Biography, &c. &c. By R. MANGNALL. New Edition, with the Author's last Corrections, and other very considerable Additions and Improvements. 12mo. 4s. 6d. bound.

Corner's Sequel to Mangnall's Questions.

Questions on the History of Europe: a Sequel to Mangnall's Historical Questions; comprising Questions on the History of the Nations of Continental Europe not comprehended in that work. By JULIA CORNER. New Edition. 12mo. 6s. bound.

Hort's Pantheon.

The New Pantheon; or, an Introduction to the Mythology of the Ancients, in Question and Answer: compiled for the Use of Young Persons. With an Accented Index, Questions for Exercise, and Poetical Illustrations of Grecian Mythology, from Homer and Virgil. By W. J. HORT. New Edition, enlarged. 18mo. with 17 Plates, 6s. 6d. bound.

Hort's Chronology.

An Introduction to the Study of Chronology and Ancient History: in Question and Answer. By W. J. HORT. New Edition. 18mo. 6s. bound.

School Chronology; or, the Great Dates of History.

Drawn up for the use of the Collegiate Schools, Liverpool. New Edition. Square 12mo. 1s. stitched.

Valpy's Poetical Chronology.

Poetical Chronology of Ancient and English History: with Historical and Explanatory Notes. By R. VALPY, D.D. New Edition. 12mo. 2s. 6d. cloth.

Mathematical Works, by Mr. J. R. Young, Professor of Mathematics in Belfast College.

An Elementary Treatise on Algebra, Theoretical and Practical: with an Appendix on Probabilities and Life Annuities. Fourth Edition, enlarged. 12mo. 6s. cloth.
K^{ET}, by SPILLER, 12mo. 6s.

The Analysis and Solution of Cubic and Biquadratic Equations: forming a Sequel to the Elements of Algebra. 12mo. 6s. cloth.

Theory and Solution of Algebraical Equations of the Higher Orders. Second Edition, enlarged. 8vo. 16s. cloth.

Elements of the Differential Calculus: comprehending Curve Surfaces and Curves of Double Curvature. Second Edition, enlarged. 12mo. 9s. cloth.—An Edition in 8vo. 12s. cloth.

Elements of Geometry: with Notes. 8vo. 8s. cloth.

The Elements of Mechanics; comprehending Statics and Dynamics: with a copious Collection of Mechanical Problems. 12mo. with Plates, 10s. 6d. cloth.

Analytical Geometry:

Comprising the Theory of Conic Sections, and of Curves and Surfaces of the Second Order. Second Edition. 3 vols. 12mo. 16s. cloth. Separately—
Part I. Conic Sections, 6s. 6d.
Part II. Curves and Surfaces, 7s. 6d.

Mathematical Dissertations, for the Use of Students in the Modern Analysis. 8vo. 9s. 6d. cloth.

Euclid's Elements;

the first Six, and the Eleventh and Twelfth Books: with Corrections from Simson and Playfair's Texts, and an improved Vth Book. Fifth Edition. 18mo. 5s. cloth.

Elements of Plane and Spherical Trigonometry: with their Applications to the Principles of Navigation and Nautical Astronomy. Second Edition. 12mo. 6s. cloth.

Mathematical Tables:

Comprehending the Logarithms of all Numbers, from 1 to 30,000; also the Natural and Logarithmic Sines and Tangents, &c. New Edition. 12mo. 6s. 6d. cloth.

An Elementary Essay on the Computation of Logarithms: with the most expeditious Methods of constructing a Table of those Numbers. Second Edition. 12mo. 5s. cloth.

Researches respecting the Imaginary Roots of Numerical Equations: being a Continuation of Newton's investigations on that subject. 8vo. 3s. 6d. sewed.

Three Lectures on some of the Advantages of Mathematical Study: with an Examination of Hume's Argument against Miracles. 12mo. 2s. 6d. cloth.

GEOMETRY, ARITHMETIC, LAND-SURVEYING, ETC.**Sandhurst College Arithmetic and Algebra.**

Elements of Arithmetic and Algebra. By W. SCOTT, Esq. A.M. and F.R.A.S. Examiner in Mathematics of Candidates for Commissions in Her Majesty's Service, and Professor of Mathematics in Sandhurst Military College. New Edition. 8vo. 16s. bound.

* * * "Scott's Elements of Arithmetic and Algebra," and "Narrien's Elements of Geometry," are recommended (as useful to Candidates for Commissions in the Army) in the Instructions issued by the Commander-in-Chief.

Sandhurst College Elements of Euclid.

Elements of Geometry : consisting of the first four, and the sixth, Books of Euclid, chiefly from the Text of Dr. Robert Simson ; with the principal Theorems in Proportion, a Course of Practical Geometry on the Ground, &c. By JOHN NARRIN, F.R.S. and R.A.S. Professor of Mathematics, &c. in Sandhurst Military College. New Edition. 8vo. 10s. 6d. bound.

Sandhurst College Trigonometry.

Plain Trigonometry and Mensuration. By W. SCOTT, Esq. A.M. and F.R.A.S. 8vo. 9s. 6d. bound.

Sandhurst College Astronomy and Geodesy.

Practical Astronomy and Geodesy : including the Projections of the Sphere and Spherical Trigonometry. For the use of the Royal Military College, Sandhurst. By JOHN NARRIN, F.R.S. and R.A.S. 8vo. 14s. bound.

Sandhurst College Analytical Geometry.

Analytical Geometry : with the Properties of Conic Sections : and an Appendix, containing a Tract on Descriptive Geometry. For the use of the Royal Military College, Sandhurst. By J. NARRIN, F.R.S. and R.A.S. 8vo. 8s. 6d.

Professor Thomson's Elementary Algebra.

An Elementary Treatise on Algebra, Theoretical and Practical. By JAMES THOMSON, LL.D. Professor of Mathematics in the University of Glasgow. New Edition. 12mo. 5s. cloth.—KNT, 4s. 6d. cloth.

Nesbit : a Complete Treatise on Practical Land

Surveying. For the use of Schools and Students. With 250 Practical Examples. By A. NESBIT. New Edition, corrected and greatly enlarged. To which are now added, Plane Trigonometry, including the use of the Theodolite and Railway Surveying ; and Railway Engineering, including the Principles and Practice of Levelling, Planning, Laying out Curves, Cutting and Embanking, Tunnelling, Viaducts, &c. By T. BAKER, Land-Surveyor and Civil Engineer. 8vo. with woodcuts, plates, and an engraved field-book, 12s. cloth.

Nesbit's Mensuration, and Key.

A Treatise on Practical Mensuration : containing the most approved Methods of drawing Geometrical Figures ; Mensuration of Superficies ; Land Surveying ; Mensuration of Solids ; the Use of the Carpenter's Rule ; Timber Measure, &c. By A. NESBIT. New Edition. 12mo. with 300 Woodcuts. 6s. bound. KNT. New Edition. 12mo. 5s. bound.

Keith's Treatise on the Use of the Globes.

New Edition, greatly enlarged and improved, by ALFRED S. TAYLOR, F.R.S. Lecturer on Chemistry, &c. in Guy's Hospital ; R. A. LE MESURIER, B.A. Scholar of Corpus Christi College, Oxford ; and J. MIDDLETON, Esq. Professor of Astronomy. 12mo. with Plates and Diagrams, 6s. 6d. bound. KNT. Adapted to the New Edition, by Prof. MIDDLETON. 12mo. 2s. 6d. cloth.

Keith's Trigonometry.

An Introduction to the Theory and Practice of Plane and Spherical Trigonometry, and the Stereographic Projection of the Sphere, including the Theory of Navigation. By THOMAS KEITH. New Edition, corrected by S. MAYNARD. 8vo. 14s. cloth.

Crocker's Land Surveying.

Crocker's Elements of Land Surveying. New Edition, corrected throughout, and considerably improved and modernised, by T. G. BURY, Land-Surveyor Bristol. To which are added, Tables of Six-figure Logarithms, superintended by RICHARD FARLEY, of the Nautical Almanac Establishment. Post 8vo. with Plans, Field-book, &c. 12s. cloth.

Moseley : Illustrations of Practical Mechanics.

By the Rev. H. MOSELEY, M.A. Professor of Natural Philosophy and Astronomy in King's College, London. New Edit. Fep. 8vo. with Woodcuts, 8s. cloth.

Tate's Elements of Euclid.

The First Three Books of Euclid's Elements of Geometry ; from the Text of Dr. Simson : together with various useful Theorems and Problems, as Geometrical Exercises on each Book. By THOMAS TATE, late Mathematical Professor and Lecturer on Chemistry in the National Society's Training College, Battersea. 12mo. 1s. 6d. cloth.

Tate : Principles of Geometry, Mensuration, Trigonometry, Land-Surveying, and Levelling : containing familiar Demonstrations and Illustrations of the most important Propositions in Euclid's Elements ; Proofs of all the useful Rules and Formulas in Mensuration and Trigonometry, with their application to the Solution of Practical Problems in Estimation, Surveying, and Railway Engineering. By THOMAS TATE, late Mathematical Professor and Lecturer on Chemistry in the National Society's Training College, Battersea. New Edition. 12mo. with 317 Diagrams and Woodcuts, 2s. 6d. cloth.

Tate's Algebra made Easy.

Algebra made Easy. Chiefly intended for the use of Schools. By THOMAS TATE, late Mathematical Professor and Lecturer on Chemistry in the National Society's Training College, Battersea. New Edition. 12mo. 2s. cloth.

Tate : The Principles of the Differential and Integral

Calculus simplified and applied to the Solution of various Useful Problems in Practical Mathematics and Mechanics. By THOMAS TATE, late Mathematical Professor and Lecturer on Chemistry in the National Society's Training College, Battersea. 12mo. 4s. 6d.

Tate : Treatise on the First Principles of Arithmetic,

after the method of Pestalozzi. Designed for the use of Teachers and Monitors in Elementary Schools. By THOMAS TATE, late Mathematical Professor and Lecturer on Chemistry in the National Society's Training College, Battersea. New Edition, with additions and improvements. 12mo. 1s. 6d. cloth.

Tate : Exercises on Mechanics and Natural Phi-

losophy ; or, an easy introduction to Engineering ; containing various Applications of the Principle of Work ; the Theory of the Steam Engine with Simple Machines ; Theorems and Problems on Accumulated Work, &c. By THOMAS TATE, late Mathematical Professor and Lecturer on Chemistry in the National Society's Training College, Battersea. New Edition. Fcp. 8vo. 2s. cloth.

Hunter : Exercises in the First Four Rules of Arith-

metic : constructed for the application of New Artificial Tests, by which the Teacher may expeditiously ascertain the Correctness of the Results. By the Rev. JOHN HUNTER, M.A. Vice-Principal of the National Society's Training College, Battersea. Second Edit. remodelled and enlarged. 12mo. 6d. sewed.

Colenso's School Arithmetic.

Arithmetic, designed for the use of Schools. By the Rev. J. W. COLENSO, M.A. Rector of Forncett St. Mary, Norfolk ; and late Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge. New Edition. Fcp. 8vo. 4s. 6d. boards.

Maynard's Key to Colenso's School Arithmetic.

Solutions to all the Unworked Examples in the Rev. J. W. Colenso's "Arithmetic for Schools." By SAMUEL MAYNARD, Editor of Keith's and Bonycastle's Mathematical Works, &c. 12mo. 6s. boards.

Taylor's Arithmetic, and Key.

The Arithmetician's Guide ; or, a complete Exercise Book : for Public Schools and Private Teachers. By W. TAYLOR. New Edition, revised by S. MAYNARD. 12mo. 2s. 6d. bound.

KEY. By W. H. WHITE. 12mo. 4s. bound.

Molineux's Arithmetic, and Key.

An Introduction to Practical Arithmetic ; in Two Parts : with various Notes, and occasional Directions for the use of Learners. By T. MOLINEUX, many years Teacher of Accounts and the Mathematics in Macclesfield. In Two Parts. Part 1. 12mo. 2s. 6d. bound.—Part 2. 12mo. 2s. 6d. bound.

KEY to Part 1, 6d.—KEY to Part 2, 6d.

Joyce's Arithmetic, and Key.

A System of Practical Arithmetic, applicable to the present state of Trade and Money Transactions : illustrated by numerous Examples under each Rule. By the Rev. J. JOYCE. New Edition, corrected and improved by S. MAYNARD. 12mo. 3s. bound.

KEY. 18mo. 3s. bound.

Walkingame's Arithmetic and Key, by Crosby.

The Tutor's Assistant; being a Compendium of Arithmetic, and a complete Question-Book; containing Arithmetic in Whole Numbers, Vulgar Fractions, Decimals, Duodecimals, the Mensuration of Circles, a Collection of Questions, &c. By FRANCIS WALKINGAME. A New Edition, corrected by T. CROSBY. 12mo. 2s. cloth.

KEY. 12mo. 3s. 6d. cloth.

Morrison's Book-Keeping, and Forms.

The Elements of Book-keeping, by Single and Double Entry; comprising several Sets of Books, arranged according to Present Practice, and designed for the use of Schools. By JAMES MORRISON, Accountant. New Edition, considerably improved. 8vo. 6s. half-bound.

Sets of Blank Books, ruled to correspond with the Four Sets contained in the above work: Set A, Single Entry, 3s.; Set B, Double Entry, 9s.; Set C, Commission Trade, 12s.; Set D, Partnership Concerns, 4s. 6d.

Morrison's Commercial Arithmetic, and Key.

A Concise System of Commercial Arithmetic. By J. MORRISON, Accountant. New Edition, revised and improved. 12mo. 4s. 6d. bound.

KEY. New Edition, corrected and improved by S. MAYNARD, Editor of "Keith's Mathematical Works." 12mo. 8s. bound.

Nesbit's Arithmetic, and Key.

A Treatise on Practical Arithmetic. By A. NESBIT. New Edition. 12mo. 5s. bd.

A KEY to the same. 12mo. 5s. bound.

PART II. of Nesbit's Practical Arithmetic; containing Fractions, Decimals, Logarithms, Chain-Rule, &c.

KEY to part II. 12mo. 7s. bound.

Thomson : School Chemistry ;

Or, Practical Rudiments of the Science. By ROBERT DUNDAS THOMSON, M.D. Master in Surgery in the University of Glasgow; Lecturer on Chemistry in the same University; and formerly in the Medical Service of the Honourable East India Company. Fcp. 8vo. with Woodcuts, 7s. cloth.

Peschel's Elements of Physics.

The Elements of Physics. By C. F. PESCHEL, Principal of the Royal Military College, Dresden. Translated from the German, with Notes, by E. WERR 3 vols. fcp. 8vo. with Woodcuts and Diagrams, 31s. cloth.

{ Part 1. The Physics of Ponderable Bodies. Fcp. 8vo. 7s. 6d.

Separately { Part 2. Imponderable Bodies (Light, Heat, Magnetism, Electricity, and Electro-Dynamics). 2 vols. fcp. 8vo. 13s. 6d.

Mrs. Lee's Natural History for Schools.

Elements of Natural History; or, First Principles of Zoology: comprising the Principles of Classification, interspersed with amusing and instructive Original Accounts of the most remarkable Animals. By MRS. R. LEE. New Edit. revised and enlarged. 12mo. with numerous additional Woodcuts, 7s. 6d. bound.

GEOGRAPHY AND ATLASES.**S. Hall's First School Atlas—Price Eighteen-pence.**

A First or Elementary Atlas, for the use of Schools. Containing Ten Maps, engraved by S. Hall. Oblong 4to. 1s. 6d. coloured.

1. Canaan as divided among the Tribes.

2. Palestine in the time of Our Lord.

3. The World, in Two Hemispheres.

4. The British Isles.

5. Europe.

6. Asia.

7. Africa.

8. North America.

9. South America.

10. Australia, &c.

The first two Maps are adapted, that of Canaan for the reading of the Old Testament, and that of Palestine for the New Testament.

* * The expression of a general desire for an Elementary Atlas of moderate price, comprehending all the great divisions of the Globe, and maps to accompany the study of the Old and New Testament, has induced Messrs. Longman and Co. to publish this work. In the hope that it will be found of practical utility. It has been compiled from the best and most recent authorities, and engraved with the greatest care by S. Hall. In the selection of the Maps, the Publishers have been guided by the advice of gentlemen of experience in the teaching of Geography connected with the Committee of Council on Education

Dr. Butler's Ancient and Modern Geography.

A Sketch of Ancient and Modern Geography. By SAMUEL BUTLER, D.D. late Bishop of Lichfield, formerly Head Master of Shrewsbury School. New Edition, revised by his Son. 8vo. 9s. boards; bound in roan, 10s.

Dr. Butler's Ancient and Modern Atlases.

A General Atlas of Ancient and Modern Geography: consisting of Forty-five coloured Maps, and Indices. New Edition, corrected. 4to. 54s. half-bound.

An Atlas of Modern Geography; consisting of Twenty-three Coloured Maps; with a complete Index. New Edition, corrected. 8vo. 12s. half-bound.

An Atlas of Ancient Geography; consisting of Twenty-two Coloured Maps, with a complete Accentuated Index. New Edition, corrected. 8vo. 12s.

Abridgment of Butler's Geography.

An Abridgment of Bishop Butler's Modern and Ancient Geography: arranged in the form of Question and Answer, for the use of Beginners. By MARY CUNNINGHAM. New Edition. Fcp. 8vo. 2s. cloth.

Dr. Butler's Geographical Copy-Books.

Outline Geographical Copy-Books, Ancient and Modern: with the Lines of Latitude and Longitude only, for the Pupil to fill up, and designed to accompany the above. 4to. each 4s.; or together, sewed, 7s. 6d.

The Geography of Palestine or the Holy Land,

Including Phœnicia and Philistia: with a Description of the Towns and Places in Asia Minor visited by the Apostles. By W. M'Leod, Head Master of the Model School, Royal Military Asylum, Chelsea; late Master of the Model School, Battersea. New Edition. 12mo. with Map, 1s. 6d. cloth.

Dowling's Introduction to Goldsmith's Geography.

Introduction to Goldsmith's Grammar of Geography: for the use of Junior Pupils. By J. DOWLING. New Edition. 18mo. 9d. sewed.

By the same Author,

Five Hundred Questions on the Maps in Goldsmith's Grammar of Geography. New Edition. 18mo. 8d.—KEY, 9d.

Goldsmith's Geography Improved.

Grammar of General Geography: for the Use of Schools and Young Persons. By the Rev. J. GOLDSMITH. New Edition, improved. Revised throughout and corrected by Hugh Murray, Esq. Royal 18mo. with New Views, Maps, &c. 3s. 9d. bound.—KEY, 9d. sewed.

Goldsmith's Popular Geography.

Geography on a Popular Plan. New Edit. including Extracts from recent Voyages and Travels, with Engravings, Maps, &c. By Rev. J. GOLDSMITH. 12mo. 14s. 6d.

Mangnall's Geography, revised.

A Compendium of Geography: for the use of Schools, Private Families, &c. By J. MANGNALL. A new Edition, revised and corrected throughout. 12mo. 7s. 6d. bound.

Hartley's Geography, and Outlines.

Geography for Youth. By the Rev. J. HARTLEY. New Edition, containing the latest Changes. 12mo. 4s. 6d. bound.—By the same Author, Outlines of Geography: the First Course for Children. New Edit. 18mo. 9d. ed.

THE FRENCH LANGUAGE.**Tarver's Eton French Grammar:**

Introduction à la Langue usuelle et aux Éléments de la Grammaire Française. By J. C. TARVER, French Master, Eton College. New Edition. 12mo. 3s. 6d.

Tarver's Eton French Exercises:

Familiar and Conversational French Exercises, for Writing and viv-voce Practice. By J. C. TARVER, French Master, Eton College. New Edition. 12mo. 3s. 6d. bound.—KEY, 12mo. 3s. bound.

Tarver's French Phraseology.

Phraseologie Expliquée et comparée: in explanation of Idiomatical Phrases, and to serve as Conversational Lessons. By J. C. TARVER, French Master, Eton College. New Edition. 12mo. 3s. bound.

Tarver's Eton French Reading Book.

Choix en Prose et en Vers: suivi de la Phraseologie expliquée et comparée; et précédé de Remarques sur la Construction des Vers Français. By J. C. TARVER, French Master, Eton College. New Edition. 12mo. 7s. 6d. bound.

Separately, { Part I. Choix en Prose, 3s. 6d. bound.
 { Part II. Choix en Vers, 3s. 6d. bound.
 { Part III. Phraseologie, 3s. bound.

Tardy's French Dictionary, improved by Tarver.

Tardy's Explanatory Pronouncing Dictionary of the French Language, in French and English; wherein the exact Sound and Articulation of every Syllable is distinctly marked, according to the Principles of the French Pronunciation, developed in a short Treatise. New Edition, corrected and much enlarged. By J. C. TARVER, French Master, Eton. Fcp. 8vo. 7s.

Miss Rowan's Modern French Reading Book.

Morceaux Choisis des Auteurs Modernes, à l'usage de la Jeunesse. With a Translation of the New and Difficult Words and Idiomatic Phrases which occur in the Work. By F. M. ROWAN. Foolscep 8vo. 6s. bound.

Hamel's French Grammar and Exercises, by Lambert.

Hamel's French Grammar and Exercises. A New Edition, in one volume. Carefully corrected, greatly improved, enlarged, and re-arranged, By N. LAMBERT. 12mo. 6s. 6d. bound.

Hamel's French Grammar (the Original Edition).

A New Universal French Grammar; being an accurate System of French Accidence and Syntax. By N. HAMEL. New Edit. improved. 12mo. 4s. bound.

Hamel's French Exercises, Key, and Questions.

French Grammatical Exercises. By N. HAMEL. New Edition, carefully revised and greatly improved. 12mo. 4s. bound.
 KEY, 12mo. 3s. bound.

THE ENGLISH LANGUAGE.

Grammars, Reading Books, and Miscellaneous Works.

Lessons on Industrial Education.

For the use of Female Schools. By a Lady. 12mo. 2s. 6d. cloth.

"A work of humble pretensions, but of real and great value, calculated to assist in making good servants and housewives and thus in promoting domestic comfort in no ordinary degree. Although intended for persons in humble life, it will supply much useful information to those who have had the advantage of receiving a finished education. It is as important to know how to be a good mistress, as how to be a good servant."—*Methodist Magazine*.

The Rev. John Hunter's English Grammar.

Text-Book of English Grammar: a Treatise on the Etymology and Syntax of the English Language; including Exercises in Parsing, Punctuation, and the Correction of Improper Diction; an Etymological Vocabulary of Grammatical Terms, &c. For the use of Students in Training Colleges, and the Upper Classes in National and other Elementary Schools. By Rev. J. HUNTER, M.A. Vice-Principal of the Training College, Battersea. 12mo. 2s. 6d. cloth.

Hunter: Exercises in English Parsing:

Progressively arranged. New Edition, remodelled and enlarged; and adapted to the Author's Text-book of English Grammar. With Questions, suggesting a Course of Oral Instruction for Junior Pupils; and an Appendix of Rules and Observations on the Paraphrasing of English Poetry, with Examples and Exercises. By the Rev. JOHN HUNTER, M.A., Vice-Principal of the National Society's Training College, Battersea. 12mo. 6d. sewed.

Progressive Exercises in English Composition.

By the Rev. R. G. PARKER, A.M. New Edition. 12mo, 1s. 6d. cloth.

Graham's Art of English Composition.

English; or, The Art of Composition explained in a series of Instructions and Examples. By G. F. GRAHAM. New Edition. Fcp. 8vo. 6s. cloth.

Carpenter's Spelling-Book.

The Scholar's Spelling Assistant; wherein the Words are arranged according to their principles of Accentuation. By T. CARPENTER. New Edition, corrected throughout. 12mo. 1s. 6d. bound.

Mavor's Spelling Book.

The English Spelling-Book; accompanied by a Progressive Series of easy and familiar Lessons, intended as an Introduction to the Reading and Spelling of the English Language. By Dr. MAJOR. New Edition. 12mo. with Frontispiece, and 44 Wood Engravings, 1s. 6d. bound.

Lindley Murray's Grammatical Works.

*. THE LATEST AND ONLY GENUINE EDITIONS, WITH THE AUTHOR'S FINAL CORRECTIONS AND IMPROVEMENTS.

First Book for Children. 18mo. 6d.

English Spelling-Book. 18mo. 18d.

Introduction to English Reader. 2s. 6d.

The English Reader. 12mo. 3s. 6d.

Sequel to ditto. 12mo. 4s. 6d.

English Grammar. 12mo. 3s. 6d.

English Grammar—abridged. 18mo. 1s.

English Exercises. 12mo. 2s.—Key. 2s.

Exercises and Key. 12mo. 3s. 6d.

Introductory French Reader. 3s. 6d.

Library Edition of Grammar, Exercises, and Key. 2 vols. 8vo. 21s.

First Lessons in English Grammar. 18mo. 9d.

Questions, adapted to Murray's Grammar. 12mo. 2s. 6d.

Murray's English Grammar, by Dr. GILES, enlarged. 18mo. 1s. 6d.

Ross: An Elementary Etymological Manual of the

English Language, for the use of Schools. To which are prefixed, Practical Observations on Teaching Etymology. By William ROSS, Inspector of Schools for the Manchester Education Society. New Edition. 18mo. 6d. sewed.

Mr. M'Leod's Elementary Reading Book.

A First Reading Book: for the use of Families and Schools. By W. M'LEOD, Head Master of the Model School, Royal Military Asylum, Chelsea. New Edition. 18mo. with Woodcuts, 8d. sewed.—Or, as Reading Lessons, for Children's Schools; in 30 Broadside Sheets, printed from a very bold type, with Woodcuts, price 3s.

Mr. M'Leod's Second Poetical Reading-Book.

The Second Poetical Reading-Book. Compiled for the use of Families and Schools; with Introductory Descriptions, Explanatory Notes, and Exercises in Spelling and Etymology. By WALTER M'LEOD, Head Master of the Model School, Royal Military Asylum, Chelsea. 12mo. 1s. 8d. sewed in cloth.

The Rev. F. C. Cook's Select School Poetry.

Poetry for Schools, intended to serve as an Introduction to the Study of the Great Classical Poets of England. Selected from Beattie, Collins, Cowper, Goldsmith, Gray, Milton, Shakspeare, and Spenser: with a few brief foot-Notes. By the Rev. F. C. COOK, M.A., one of H.M. Inspectors of Church Schools. 12mo. 2s. cloth.

The Rev. F. C. Cook's First School Poetry.

A First Book of Poetry; for Elementary Schools. By the Rev. F. C. COOK, M.A., one of Her Majesty's Inspectors of Church Schools. 18mo. price 9d. sewed.

The Modern Poetical Speaker:

A Collection of Pieces adapted for Recitation, carefully selected from the English Poets of the Nineteenth Century. By Mrs. FALLISER. Dedicated, by permission, to the Right Hon. the Dowager Lady Lyttelton. 12mo. 6s. bound.

Sewell: The New Speaker and Holiday Task-Book.

Selected from classical Greek, Latin, and English writers.—Demosthenes, Thucydides, Homer, Sophocles, Cicero, Livy, Virgil, Lucretius, Shakspeare, Milton, Burke, Bacon, &c. By the Rev. W. SEWELL, B.D. Fellow and Tutor of Exeter College, Oxford. 12mo. 6s. bound.

Maunder's Universal Class-Book :

A New Series of Reading Lessons (original and selected) for Every Day in the Year: each Lesson recording some important Event in General History, Biography, &c., or detailing, in familiar language, interesting facts in Science. With Questions for Examination. By SAMUEL MAUNDER, Author of "The Treasury of Knowledge," &c. New Edition, revised. 12mo. 5s. bound.

Mrs. Marcet's Mary's Grammar.

Mary's Grammar: interspersed with Stories, and intended for the use of Girls. By JANE MARCET. New Edition. 18mo. 2s. 6d. cloth.

Mrs. Marcet's Willy's Grammar.

Willy's Grammar: interspersed with Stories, and intended for the use of Boys. By JANE MARCET. New Edition. 18mo. 2s. 6d. cloth.

Graham's Helps to English Grammar.

Helps to English Grammar: or, Easy Exercises for Young Children. Illustrated by Engravings on Wood. By G. F. GRAHAM. New Edition. 12mo. 3s. cloth.

Graham's English Spelling-Book.

English Spelling: with Rules and Exercises. Intended as a Class-Book for Schools or Home Teaching. By G. F. GRAHAM, Author of "English, or the Art of Composition," &c. Helps to English Grammar," &c. 12mo. 1s. 6d. cloth.

English Synonymes classified and explained :

With Practical Exercises, designed for Schools and Private Tuition. By G. F. GRAHAM. Fcp. 8vo. 7s. cloth.

Stow's Training System.

The Training System, the Moral Training School, and the Normal Seminary. By DAVID STOW, Esq., Honorary Secretary to the Glasgow Normal Free Seminary; Author of "Moral Training," &c. Eighth Edition, corrected and enlarged. Post 8vo. with Plates and Woodcuts, 6s. cloth.

English and Latin School Books by Mr. Richard Hiley, Head Master of the Leeds Collegiate School.

The Child's First English Grammar: divided into Easy and Progressive Lessons, to each of which are appended copious Questions and Exercises. 18mo. 1s. sewed.

The Child's First Geography.

For the use of Elementary Classes. Being the First Two Courses of "Lessons in Geography:" to which it is intended as an Introduction. New Edition. 18mo. 9d.

Abridgment of Hiley's English Grammar;

together with appropriate Questions and Exercises, progressively arranged. New Edition, considerably improved. 18mo. 1s. 6d. cl.

Practical English Composition.

Part I., or Junior Series: consisting of Four Courses of Exercises, progressively arranged, and divided into appropriate Lessons. New Edition. 12mo. 1s. 6d. cloth.

English Grammar, Style, Rhetoric, and Poetry

to which are added, Preparatory Logic, and Advice to the Student on the Improvement of the English Language. New Edition. 12mo. 1s. 6d. cloth.

Progressive Geography,

Consisting of Four Courses, divided into appropriate Lessons; with numerous Exercises appended to each. The whole adapted to the Junior Classes in Classical and Commercial Schools. New Edition. 18mo. 2s. cl.

Questions and Exercises

adapted to Hiley's English Grammar, progressively arranged. New Edition, considerably improved, and adapted to the Last Edition of the Grammar. 12mo. 2s. cloth.—KEY. 12mo. 3s. cl.

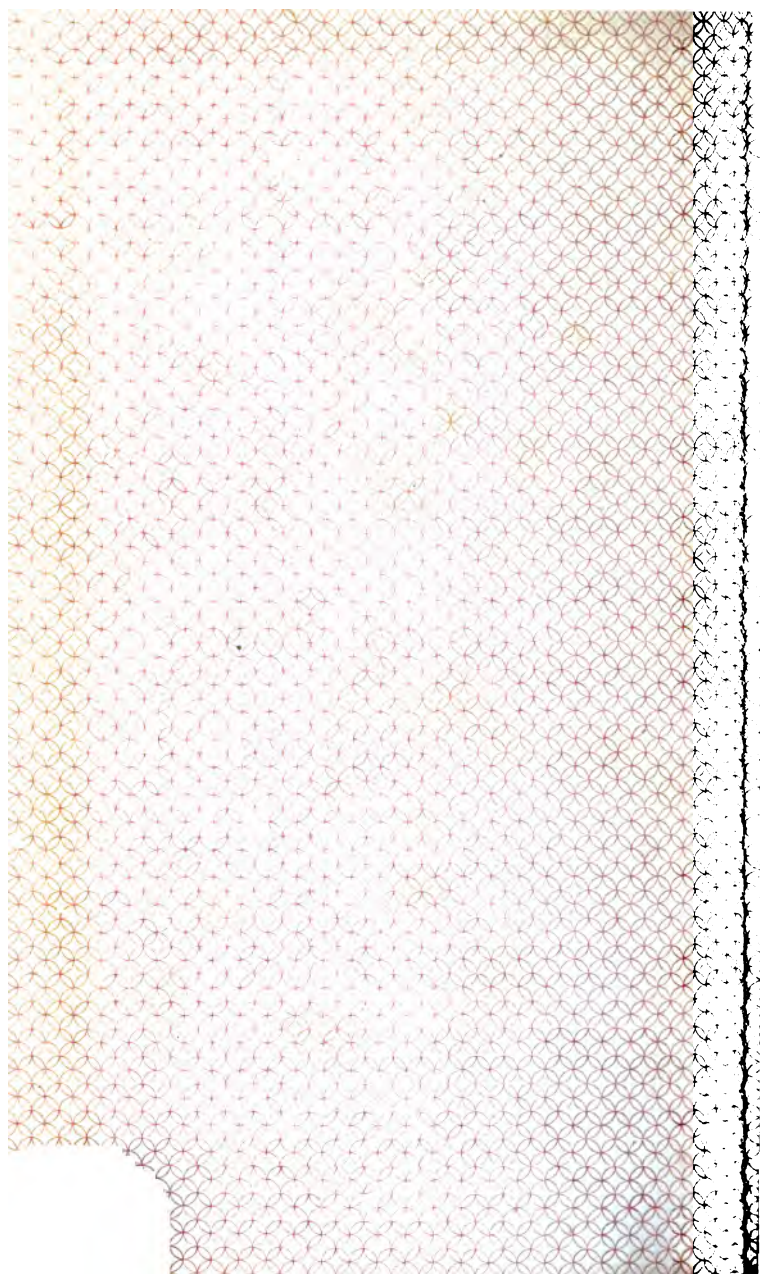
The Arithmetical Companion:

Intended, by miscellaneous Examples, to perfect the Pupil in a knowledge of Arithmetic. New Edition, considerably improved. 18mo. 1s. 6d. cloth.—KEY. 18mo. 1s. 6d. cloth.

The Elements of Latin Grammar,

for the use of Schools. New Edition, considerably improved, with selections from Zumpt, Kühner, Teils, Schiller, Ruddiman, and Adams, of the most important rules and observations required by advanced students. 12mo. 3s. cloth.





APPROVED ELEMENTARY SCHOOL-BOOKS.

I.

THE Rev. J. HUNTER's TEXT-BOOK of ENGLISH GRAMMAR. 12mo. 2s. 6d.

II.

THE Rev. J. HUNTER's EXERCISES in ENGLISH PARSING, adapted to his English Grammar. 12mo. *price* 6d.

III.

MR. W. ROSS's ELEMENTARY ETYMOLOGICAL MANUAL of the ENGLISH LANGUAGE. 18mo. *price* 6d.

IV.

MR. G. F. GRAHAM's NEW ENGLISH SPELLING-BOOK: with Rules and Exercises. 12mo. 1s. 6d.

V.

MR. W. McLEOD's FIRST READING-BOOK, for Families and Schools. 18mo. *price* 3d.

VI.

MR. MAUNDER's NEW UNIVERSAL CLASS-BOOK: a Series of Reading-Lessons for Every Day in the Year. 12mo. 5s.

VII.

MRS. PALLISER's MODERN POETICAL SPEAKER, selected from the Poets of the XIXth Century. Dedicated to Lady Lyttelton. 12mo. 6s.

VIII.

THE Rev. W. SEWELL's SCHOOL SPEAKER and HOLIDAY TASK-BOOK: consisting of Greek, Latin, and English Selections. 12mo. 6s.

IX.

MISS ROWAN's NEW FRENCH READING-BOOK
—Morceaux choisis des Auteurs Modernes, à l'usage de la Jeunesse. Fcp. 8vo. 6s.

X.

MRS. LEE's NATURAL HISTORY for SCHOOLS:
interspersed with Amusing and Instructive Original Anecdotes. Fcp. 8vo. Woodcuts, 7s. 6d.

LONDON: LONGMAN, BROWN, GREEN, AND LONGMANS.

